A

BASQUE

COURSE

A COMPLETE INITIATION TO THE STUDY
OF THE BASQUE LANGUAGE

SECOND DRAFT, December 1982

Alan R. King
Los Angeles etxea, Alto de Errondo, Donostia, Gipuzkoa,
Basque Country ["Spain"]
NOTE

Following is the promised second draft, much revised and expanded, of A Basque Course, the first or preliminary draft of which was completed and presented to a few people for evaluation and criticism some eighteen months ago. It is hoped that a final version, not differing greatly from that presented now, will be printed and published in the United States in the near future.

All comments and suggestions will be most gratefully accepted (at the earliest date possible please, so as not to slow down publication). Photocopies of this material for that purpose may be made with permission of the author.

A.R.K., Donostia, 1982

CHARRA


Edozein eritzi eta sugerentzia esker onez onartuko da (ahalik eta lasterren, otoi, argitaratzea ez atzeratzeko). Helburu honetarako gai hau fotokopia daiteke, egilearen baimena emanik.

A.R.K., Donostia, 1982
TO THE USER OF THIS BOOK

The purpose of this book is to teach Basque to people who know English. It is assumed that most such people will not only be living outside the Basque Country, but will not have access to an organized Basque class or a teacher, and their needs have been kept in mind throughout the book. This is not to say that it might not also be used with a teacher, of course, if no more suitable course material is found. In such cases, the teacher will need to supplement the book in various ways as demanded by the dynamic of the classroom, while utilizing as he sees fit the structural and lexical progression, reading and practice sections, and reference material that form the basis of what follows. But in these lines we wish to address in particular the student working on his or her own. Self-teaching is certainly not the most recommendable way of learning a language, except in certain special circumstances, in which the learner, besides knowing how he should go about the task, has at his ready disposal at least one native speaker who can serve as a model and a guide. Otherwise, the choice of this course ought to be the result of necessity.

Let it be said from the outset, then, that anyone wishing to teach himself a language by means of a book must be prepared to work hard and conscientiously for a considerable period in order to obtain worthwhile results. This is not intended to discourage the potential student before he begins, but we certainly wouldn't want to deceive him with a mendacious title such as "Basque Without Bother" or "Basque in a Week". The present book can take the successful student up to the point where he is able to express his needs and hold intelligent conversations in Basque (with some practice, which is essential), start reading Basque literature and other writing, or undertake serious study of the Basque Country or its language with a firm linguistic basis. Consider that, attending classes, it would normally take from two to four years to attain this level. The learner working on his own is free to decide his own rhythm of progress, and accordingly this time may be varied to anything from one year or so (working very intensively) to as long as is wished. But in any event, he can only expect to get out of the course what he puts into it.

Is Basque an easy or a difficult language to learn? This is a typical question to be asked about Basque or any other language. The answer is, of course, relative. Indeed, we cannot deny that it is more common to hear the claim that Basque is difficult than easy; probably this idea both contributes to and is supported by the atmosphere of mystery that often surrounds the language or its speakers. But it would also be fair to ask what the grounds are for this assertion. Bearing in mind that many other languages—no doubt most languages, in fact, other than the few most familiar
to the modern western world—are just as widely claimed to be very
difficult, and given that there is hardly a language that is genuinely
easy anyway, probably the best answer is to say that Basque is about
as difficult as other languages.

In a more scientific vein, we can remark that the most
important consideration for an adult learner of a foreign language
is not its intrinsic difficulty, but rather its degree of similarity
to or difference from any language he already knows; and the languages
likely to be known by English speakers, other than English itself,
are those most similar to it: French, German and other Romance and
Germanic languages. Now it happens that Basque is a non-Indo-European
language. That means that it is more distant from the languages
just mentioned than even Russian, Welsh, Greek or Sanskrit.

Distant, that is, from one point of view, the genetic.
Basque belongs to a different language family; it has other roots.
And this has necessary consequences for the structural typology of
Basque, its vocabulary, and even to a certain extent its pronunciation,
in relation to "our" languages. Yet there are other factors that
have something to say too, and one of these is geography. In the
geographical sense, Basque is anything but distant from our western
culture and languages, for it is spoken in a country completely em-
bedded in Romance-speaking Western Europe. And not only that: since
Basque boasts of far greater antiquity as a western European tongue,
it has in fact coexisted since prehistoric times with Celtic, Italic,
Germanic and other linguistic groups that are known to us in this
familiar part of the world. The Basque heritage is a western European
one if anyone's is! Looking out from their homeland towards the
Atlantic, the Basques and their language have even spread to and
interacted with the western hemisphere, the other focus of our fam-
iliar "western" culture.

Now these contacts, which have been maintained since
before the beginning of history with each of the peoples and languages
that has arrived in the neighborhood of the ancient Basque language,
have left many marks on it as it has evolved throughout this time.
Some of the more recent influences are obvious at first sight, whereas
other older ones can only be hypothesized if recognized at all, but
their cumulative effect must have been enormous. And since these
sources of influence have been the same ones that have produced our
familiar western languages, English included, the effect is inevi-
tably to bring Basque closer to us, partly, though not fully, neutral-
izing the genetic gap that separates us.

It follows that the English-speaking learner of Basque
is entitled to expect to find some very unfamiliar things and some
other very familiar ones in his path, and this is precisely what
he will encounter. He should thus bring to the study of this language
an especially open mind, ready for the unexpected, which is a ben-
eficial attitude in studying any foreign language. But if he takes
this approach, the surprise will in fact sometimes be that Basque behaves quite predictably after all!

HOW TO USE THE COURSE

The demands made on the self-taught language learner are greater than those made on the student in a class, since he must in a way play the roles of both teacher and student. This fact determines some of the qualities that the successful learner of this kind requires. But to make progress, he is also very dependent on efficacy of the book or books at his disposal. In fact, most of the many books in existence in the world intended to teach people foreign languages are so unhelpful in this respect as to discourage even the best learner; and indeed, it may be left to the ingenuity of the teacher in him to distill from such works a course of study that the original author hadn't even hinted at.

To be fair, it is no easy task to produce a really good language course for use without a teacher, as the present author has had opportunity to discover. There are perhaps too many elements to be coordinated. For one thing, the book must make available the right information or linguistic content in the right form, at the right time, in the right quantity and in the right order, while integrating it properly into the fabric of the course as a whole. And there are of course various types of such content to be properly coordinated: grammar, vocabulary, idiom, pronunciation. At the same time, all this content must be fleshed out and reinforced with substance (texts, exercises and so on) without which it is not assimilable.

In this book at least we have attempted to add a third dimension by relating the language in a natural way to the social, cultural, geographical and historical framework in which it belongs, and also emphasizing the practical applications of the language learned, in line with modern ideas about language teaching in general.

Add to all these requirements the strict limitation of space that must apply to a book of the present type, so that all the elements enumerated have to be condensed as much as possible into something approaching a kind of shorthand. Many things that might have been added to aid the progress of the student have to be omitted, and others mentioned with the greatest brevity. This results in a very compact work which it is up to the student to "reconstitute", so to speak, as he works through it. Thus, four pages of the book may well contain the material for four hours of careful study, and the amount of study time called for by each of the book's units must not be underestimated.

The user must say whether we have finally achieved our object of providing a book that it is really possible to learn Basque with. Perhaps the answer will differ for different students. Like-
wise, not everyone who uses this book will follow exactly the same study procedure; in a sense, each person who teaches himself with a book creates his own course. Nonetheless, at least some users will doubtless appreciate being given a suggested method for them to follow or at least use as a guide.

The book, it will be seen, is made up of the following components: an initial section on pronunciation; a series of forty units constituting the course proper; a grammar summary section for reference; and a general vocabulary. Each of the forty units brings together a variety of material: a study text (ST), which in the first five units is labelled "Conversation"; language notes (LN) referring to the ST; drills based on the LN's; a grammar section; a vocabulary; translation exercises; and so on.

At the beginning of the book we have expanded the units somewhat to give a more explicit idea of how these materials ought to be exploited by the learner; as the units progress, they become more compact in format in order to save space, not because they have less content. It is felt that once the student has used the first units to get into a proper study rhythm, he will know how to keep this up using the later materials even though we stop "marking the time" for him. Therefore, the first ten units are divided into three "Lessons". The first lesson, the most important, includes the ST, the LN's and drills. The second contains the grammar section, vocabulary and exercises based on these. The third is a sort of supplement which can add some variety and give an opportunity to learn some essential vocabulary such as the numbers, days of the week, names of the months, and the basic elements of Basque geography.

The kernel of each unit is the ST. Thus it is the first lessons of the initial units that the learner should concentrate on most. For example, if he were to spend five hours on each unit, we would suggest devoting three of them (more than half the time!) to the first lesson, and an hour each to the remaining two lessons. How should this time be structured? Here is a suggested procedure which can be applied step-by-step in the first few units, and then gradually adapted as the units progress.

Our strategy will be as follows:

- initial study of the ST (1 hour);
- completion of the first lesson (1 hour);
- work through second lesson (1 hour);
- review first lesson (½ hour);
- work through third lesson (1 hour);
- review first lesson (½ hour).

Needless to say, the times given are merely to provide a rough idea. Initial study of the ST will be undertaken in the following steps. (As explained in the section on pronunciation, the student may or may not decide to learn the indications for Gipuzkoan pronunciation given in the lessons. Steps involving this are given in parentheses here.)
1. Read straight through the ST, trying to understand as much as possible at first sight.

(1'. Read the phonetic transcription of the ST out loud, where given.)

2. Read the translation through once, where given.

3. Now repeat step 1 (and 1').

4. Reread the ST carefully up to the first break. (Note: The texts are separated into segments by small gaps or breaks between the segments. It is recommended that intensive study of the ST's be carried out piecemeal, segment by segment.)

5. Read the corresponding segment of the translation, where given. Where no translation is given, the student must deduce the meaning, with the help of the vocabularies and language notes.

6. Reread the same segment of the ST.

(6'. Read out loud the corresponding segment of the phonetic transcription, where given. If not given, the student should reconstruct it orally.)

7. Compare in detail the first line of the segment being studied with the corresponding line of the translation.

8. On the basis of this comparison, note mentally or in writing both the meanings of individual words and the structural patterns that you observe.

9. Repeat steps 7 and 8 for each line of the segment being studied.

10. After working through the whole first segment of the ST in the way described, read through the complete segment again, trying to understand everything now without reference to the translation.

(10'. Read out loud once more the phonetic transcription of this segment.)

11. Go through steps 4-10 for each successive segment of the ST, always stopping at the breaks.

12. Having worked through the whole ST in this manner, read through the whole ST once more, trying to understand everything without reference to the translation.

(12'. If a phonetic transcription is given, read through this, out loud as always, without looking at the "original" ST and trying to understand everything.)

(12". Looking only at the "original" ST, see if you can repeat the pronunciation out loud from memory.)

(12"'. Looking only at the phonetic transcription, try to write down the "original" ST from memory.)

Completion of the first lesson will involve systematic study of the LN's (or review of them if they were already consulted in the first stage), working through the drills, and finally a review of the ST. Here again, for the benefit of those who may find it useful, we will spell out step by step a possible procedure for this.
1. Most LN's begin with or include some examples taken directly from the ST, with reference to line number in the earliest units. Begin by looking up each of these examples mentioned in the first LN in the ST. Do you understand the sentences in which they occur? If not, check up their meanings before continuing.
2. Read the first LN carefully, making sure you understand what it is saying.
3. It is often possible to invent more examples on the basis of what is said in the LN. In the first unit there are even substitution tables provided to help to do this. If possible, invent some examples of your own to illustrate the point of the LN.
4. Repeat steps 1-3 for each LN.
5. Now attempt the first drill. The drills can be done either orally or in writing:
   (a) If orally: Where a key is given (Unit 1 only), check your answers one by one. Otherwise you can consult the LN's to make sure your answers are right if in doubt.
   (b) If in writing: Do the whole drill first, then check your answers as above.
   Note: The drills are intended to be easy, once the ST and LN's have been assimilated. So if you make more than one or two mistakes in a drill, review the appropriate LN's; then try the drill again.
6. Repeat step 5 with the remaining drills, until you get through them all. Generally, each drill has a specific purpose, so don't miss any out.
7. Review the ST by reading through it. You now ought to understand everything and be familiar with most of the grammatical structures and vocabulary used in it. (There will, however, always be one or two things that have not been clarified in the explanatory material. Do not let these worry you; you will come to understand them a little later.)

Working through the second lesson: This involves studying the grammar section and the unit's vocabulary list, and doing the translation exercises based on these two as well as on the points covered in the first lesson. The LN's touch on particular points that arise directly in the ST and which the learner needs to get some immediate grasp of. The grammar sections take a more general, overall view of the basic parts of Basque grammar, and will help the learner to systematize some of his knowledge. They will also introduce some new points that the student hasn't met with previously but should now learn. The grammar section should therefore be read through slowly, and everything in it understood.

We have tried to make all the information in the grammar sections relevant to the learner at the time when he first reads it. However, when some points are mentioned that can be considered less
important at the outset, though pertinent and necessary later and for reference purposes, such points are given in paragraphs in smaller print. Such information may be optionally be read through when first encountered, but full assimilation is not required until some later time.

As the learner progresses through the course, he will also start to make of the grammar summary section located at the end of the units. This section comprises reference material such as paradigms which cannot, or should not, be committed to memory in one "shot", but need to be assimilated little by little with the reinforcement of considerable practice. The student's attention will be brought to this reference material as appropriate.

The word lists, like the grammar sections, will mostly present items that have previously been encountered in the ST's etc., but with the addition of a few new words in each case. The words given should be learned thoroughly, for they have been chosen and ordered so as to provide the student with a basic vocabulary of about a thousand words in the whole course which will fill most of his practical communication needs and constitute a good foundation for whatever kind of further studies he might wish to undertake afterwards. The vocabulary has been carefully graded and integrated into the lessons to provide sufficient reinforcement of the items accumulated.

The exercises, for translation, are specifically designed to reinforce and help assimilation both of grammar and of vocabulary, and so must not be passed over. They are also a good test of whether the lessons so far have been taken in and the student is ready to go on to the next unit. Like the drills, they can be used either orally or in writing, or even both. It is also possible to reverse them and work from the Basque back to the English, which is easier than from English to Basque, and might be used if the student is having some difficulty. But he should always end up by putting them back into Basque again, for if he is not capable of doing this it is advisable for him to go back and do some review work before continuing.

Review of the first lesson means going back over the ST and the drills. By this time both of these should be well enough learned that it is unnecessary to look up the meaning of any sentence in the ST, and no wrong answers are given in the drills. But learning a language means attaining the ability to speak fluently and clearly and give immediate, automatic responses. This results from much practice and repetition.

Read, out loud, through the ST as fluently and correctly as you can manage. If you can get hold of a native speaker, get him to read it out to you, or better yet, to tape it, reading fluently and at normal speed, and imitate what you hear as exactly as you can. An alternative method is to have the native speaker listen to you
and correct your pronunciation. If there is no speaker available, of course, one must simply do the best one can.

The object of the drills is to learn to answer them rapidly, unhesitatingly, just as when we answer a simple question in English straight off, without stopping to think about it; you must also answer correctly, needless to say. Here too a Basque speaker or a friend learning with you can help by feeding you the stimulus sentences in rapid fire while you respond to each one, as if playing pingpong.

As for the third lesson, we shall give no rules. It's main object is to learn the specific vocabulary it introduces, using the drills entitled "Practice" to help assimilation. In a real communication situation it is often very important to respond quickly and accurately to numbers, days of the week and the like.

The final review of the first lesson will take the same form as that already described.

This should give a good idea of just how much can be got out of each unit in this course, and consequently of how much work it will take to get through the whole book and attain an intermediate level of knowledge of the Basque language. There will be stages at which it is necessary to review previous units before going on any further; the intelligent learner will sense this need when it arises, and should not hesitate to go back and refresh his memory, while at the same time becoming a little bit surer of the things he already knew. If, when he starts having difficulty, he merely plods on further, he will soon feel as if he has got lost and have to retrace his steps. The units of this book are organized so tightly—due to considerations of space, as already explained—that it does not leave much room for such aimless wandering, which is both unproductive and demoralizing. In fact, the units already incorporate into them as many "leaps and bounds" as the student will be able to keep up with, so take it step by step through the units all the way to the end.

SUPPLEMENTARY AND FURTHER READING AND MATERIALS

This course is specifically designed to be able to give the student outside the Basque Country as full as possible a command of the language even without the help of other materials, since it is foreseen that these will not be easily available to many of its users. Nevertheless it is always a good thing to supplement any language course with heterogeneous readings and other material, which there was no room to include in the present book anyway. It is also hoped that the student who has worked his way to the end of this course will want to go on further, and he will require orientation. Fortunately, today there is a greater proliferation of all kinds
of Basque reading and listening matter being published in the Basque Country than at any time before.

The final version of A Basque Course will contain at this point a selection of suggested readings.
# TABLE OF CONTENTS

Note on the Second Draft of *A Basque Course* / Oiharra *A Basque Course-ko bigarren borradoreari buruz* ii

To the User of This Book iii

How to Use the Course v

Supplementary and Further Reading and Materials x

Abbreviations Used in the Vocabularies xvi

Basque Pronunciation
  The Basque Alphabet 1

I: A 'Standard' Pronunciation
  Vowels 2
  Consonants 2
  Accent 3
  Assimilation and Sandhi 3
  A Text for Assimilation Practice 4

II: Mid-Gipuzkoan Pronunciation
  Notes 7

Lesson Zero 11

Unit One
  The Ordinary Article 18
  The Verb *IZAN* (Present) 18
  Numbers 22

Unit Two
  Pronouns 24
  Numbers (ctd.) 30

Unit Three
  Adjectives 31
  Determiners 35
  Numbers (ctd.) 36

Unit Four
  The Absolutive and Inessive Cases 42
  Numbers (ctd.) 47

Unit Five
  The Verb *EGON* 54
  Some Syntax 59
  Numbers (ctd.) 60
  Numbers (ctd.) 67
Unit Six
- The Verb JOAN
- The Verb ETORRI
- The Verb IBILI
- The Allative Case
- The Ablative Case
- Euskal Herriko Probintzia

Unit Seven
- The Present Continuous Tense
- The Days of the Week
- Two Popular Songs: Nortxoa noro zoroa?, Albergaren ostea

Unit Eight
- The Verb UKAN
- The Ergative Case
- The Possessive-Genitive Case
- The Local-Genitive Case
- Euskal Herriko Geografia

Unit Nine
- The Verb EDURI
- The Verb JAKIN
- The Comitative Case
- The Instrumental Case
- Dates
- A Patriotic Song: Eusko gudartak

Unit Ten
- The Dative Case
- Compound Verbs
- Euskara Euskal Herrion
- Literary Dialects

Review

Unit Eleven
- Compound Tenses: The Present Habitual

Unit Twelve
- Gerunds and the Verbal Noun

Unit Thirteen
- The Present Perfect

Unit Fourteen
- The Supine and Participle
- The Infinitive
Unit Fifteen
   The Future Tense
      AHAL UKAN
      EZIN
   165
   168
   169
   169
Unit Sixteen
   The Full Present of UKAN
   172
   174
Unit Seventeen
   Intransitive-Dative Conjugation of IZAN (Present Tense)
   179
   180
Unit Eighteen
   Transitive-Dative Conjugation of UKAN (Present Tense)
   183
   186
Unit Nineteen
   Postpositions
   189
   192
Unit Twenty
   The Past of IZAN and UKAN
   196
   198
Unit Twenty-One
   The Past Perfect
   202
   204
Unit Twenty-Two
   The Past Habitual
   Comparison
   206
   207
   207
Unit Twenty-Three
   The Hypothetic Tense
   210
   213
Unit Twenty-Four
   The Potential Mood
   217
   218
Unit Twenty-Five
   The Hypothetic Perfect
   The Future-in-the-Past
   223
   226
   227
Unit Twenty-Six
   The Relative Clause
   229
   231
Unit Twenty-Seven
   234
Unit Twenty-Eight
   The Aorist Potential Tenses
   238
   240
Unit Twenty-Nine
   The Subjunctive, Optative and Aorist Conditional
   244
   246
Unit Thirty
   The Imperative
   249
   251
Key to Translations (Units 21-30)
   254
Unit 31: Jean-Pierre eta Morltxuren azken ogurra 259
Unit 32: Ines 265
Unit 33: Irillordegi eta euskara 270
Unit 34: Euskaldunaren defintzioga 276
Unit 35: Probintzietako berritak 281
Unit 36: Probintzietako berritak (jarrera) 284
Unit 37: Kolpea 289
Unit 38: Amurizak eta Enbaltak altzai buruz kontatutako bertsioak 293
Unit 39: Markesaren Alaba 297
Unit 40: Sautrelo 298
Grammar Summary I: Declension 305
Grammar Summary II: Present Tense of IZAN and UKAN 307
Grammar Summary III: Past Tense of IZAN and UKAN 310
Grammar Summary IV: Other Tenses of IZAN and UKAN 313
Grammar Summary V: The Aorist Auxiliaries "EDIN" and "EZAN" 315
Grammar Summary VI: Synthesis of the Tense System 319
Grammar Summary VII: Modes of Subordination 324
Basque-English Vocabulary 326
English-Basque Vocabulary 355
Grammar Index 371
ABBREVIATIONS USED IN THE VOCABULARIES

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Abbreviation</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>obl.</td>
<td>ablative</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>adj.</td>
<td>adjective</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>adjl.</td>
<td>adjectival</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>adv.</td>
<td>adverb</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>all.</td>
<td>allative</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>aux.</td>
<td>auxiliary</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bizk.</td>
<td>Bizkaian</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>c.a.</td>
<td>continuous adverb</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cf.</td>
<td>compounding form</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cj.</td>
<td>conjunction</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>coll.</td>
<td>colloquial</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>com.</td>
<td>comitative</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>comp.</td>
<td>compound</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>conj.</td>
<td>conjugated</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dat.</td>
<td>dative</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>der.</td>
<td>derivational</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dim.</td>
<td>diminutive</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dt.</td>
<td>determiner</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>East.</td>
<td>Eastern (dialect)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Eng.</td>
<td>English</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>erg.</td>
<td>ergative</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>esp.</td>
<td>especially</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>exp.</td>
<td>expression</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>f.</td>
<td>from</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fr.</td>
<td>French</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>gen.</td>
<td>gerund</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gtp.</td>
<td>Gipuzkoan</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>gov.</td>
<td>governing</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Imp.</td>
<td>imperative</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ines.</td>
<td>inessive</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Inst.</td>
<td>instrumental</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Int.</td>
<td>interjection</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Inter.</td>
<td>interrogative</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mp.</td>
<td>modal particle</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>n.</td>
<td>noun</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>neg.</td>
<td>negative</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pl.</td>
<td>plural</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pn.</td>
<td>proper name</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pos.</td>
<td>possessive</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pos-gen.</td>
<td>possessive-genitive</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>post.</td>
<td>postpositive</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pp.</td>
<td>postposition</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pr.</td>
<td>prepositive</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>prep.</td>
<td>preposition</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pron.</td>
<td>pronoun</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ps.</td>
<td>present simple</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ref.</td>
<td>reflexive</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sp.</td>
<td>Spanish</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>suf.</td>
<td>suffix</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sup.</td>
<td>supine</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>syn.</td>
<td>synonym</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>U.</td>
<td>Unit</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>usu.</td>
<td>usually</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>v.</td>
<td>verb</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>vi.</td>
<td>intransitive verb</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>vtd.</td>
<td>transitive verb</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>vtn.</td>
<td>verbal noun</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>vt.</td>
<td>transitive-dative verb</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>vtG.</td>
<td>intransitive-dative verb</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>with</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
A BASQUE COURSE
BASQUE PRONUNCIATION

Like all living languages, Basque varies in certain details from place to place, while nonetheless constituting a single language. Unlike some other nationalities, however, the Basques have until now lacked the conditions that are necessary for the creation and divulgation of a generally recognized linguistic standard. Indeed a unified system of spelling is emerging at the present time, and to the extent that it has yet been determined will be followed in this book. On the other hand, one cannot realistically talk of any standard spoken Basque today that would be considered as such by most speakers.

This is a fact that learners of Basque must face. There are two obvious courses open to the student. One is the acquisition of some regional variety. The other is to study a form of Basque that aims at a kind of standard; but then it must be borne in mind that the status of such a standard is rather more theoretical than practical.

With regard to pronunciation, the user of this book is allowed to choose for himself between two options:

(1) He may pronounce Basque according to a very simple 'standard' system based directly on the modern spelling (and actually coming closest to Lapurian pronunciation). This pronunciation is described in the first section below.

(2) He may (with a little more effort) acquire one of the various 'authentic' pronunciations of Basque, namely that which we shall denominate Mid-Gipuzkoan. In this case he should work through both of the following sections, and take note of the indications of pronunciation encountered in the course of the lessons.

Note that the description given in the first section amounts to no more than a rough-and-ready guide, addressed principally to the nonspecialist student.

The Basque Alphabet

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>A</th>
<th>(a)</th>
<th>J</th>
<th>(iota)</th>
<th>R</th>
<th>(erre)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>B</td>
<td>(be)</td>
<td>K</td>
<td>(ka)</td>
<td>S</td>
<td>(ese)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>C</td>
<td>(ze)</td>
<td>L</td>
<td>(ele)</td>
<td>T</td>
<td>(te)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D</td>
<td>(de)</td>
<td>M</td>
<td>(eme)</td>
<td>U</td>
<td>(u)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>E</td>
<td>(e)</td>
<td>N</td>
<td>(eme)</td>
<td>V</td>
<td>(uve)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>F</td>
<td>(efc)</td>
<td>N</td>
<td>(eme)</td>
<td>W</td>
<td>(uve bikoitzu)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>G</td>
<td>(ge)</td>
<td>O</td>
<td>(o)</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>(ixa)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>H</td>
<td>(hatxe)</td>
<td>P</td>
<td>(pe)</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>(i grekoa)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I</td>
<td>(i)</td>
<td>Q</td>
<td>(ku)</td>
<td>Z</td>
<td>(zeta)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

C, Q, V, W and Y are only found in foreign words and proper names.
I: A 'STANDARD' PRONUNCIATION

Vowels

A, E, I, O and U are pronounced approximately as in Spanish.
Examples: ana, bat; ere, den; ipi, min; oro, on; ukatu, mundu.

If the second of two vowels is I or U, they form a diphthong:
AI [ai], EI [ei], UI [ui] or [ui]; AU [au], EU [eu].
Examples: gai, aita; sci, deitu; doi, golko; higgin; gau, naute; nez, euskara.

If I or U stands between two vowels, it is pronounced as
a semivowel: [y], [w].
Examples: gain [gaya], gaua [gawa].

Other contiguous vowels are pronounced individually.
Examples: mendia [men'di'a], atea [a'te'a], mundua [mun'du'a], mendistan
[men'di'tan], ateekin [a'te'kin]; mendici [men'di'ei], ateci
[a'te'ei].

Consonants

The following consonants sound roughly as in English:
B, D, F, H, K, L, M, P, T.
Examples: bai, gabe; denda, adin; familia, alfer; bemen, nahi; kafe,
meskatu; lore, mutil; maite, uma; polit, aupa; toki, aita.

G is pronounced as in "give".
Examples: garbi [garbi], gero [gero], egun [egun].

J is pronounced like "y" in "yes".
Examples: jan [yan], laranja [laranya].

N is pronounced [n] (as in "camp") before P, B, M; [ŋ] (like "m" in "rank") before K, G; otherwise, as in "man".
Examples: kampo [kampo], lan bat [lambat]; emango [emango]; nola
[nola], lan [lan], ondo [ondo].

Ñ is pronounced [ny] as in "canyon".
Example: andereño [anderenyo].

R is sounded as a weak tongue-flap, [r], when between
two vowels inside a word; otherwise, and when written
double, it is a strongly rolled "r", [ɾ].
Examples: ere [ere], Miren [miren]; erre [erre], hor [hófr], hartu
[hafr], gramatika [gramatika].

S represents a sound roughly halfway between "s" in "so"
and "sh" in "show": [ʃ].
Examples: su [šu], osu [oʃu], aste [aʃte].
X is pronounced like "sh" in "show": [ʃ].
Examples: xeđe [xeđe], kaixo [kaixo].

Z is sounded like "s" in "so" energetically pronounced: [s].
Examples: zu [zu], pozik [pozik], gazte [gaste].

In foreign words etc.: C is equivalent to K or Z; Q(U) is equivalent to K; V and W are equivalent to B; and Y is equivalent to J or I.

TS, TX and TZ are affricates corresponding to S, X and Z. Thus, TX sounds like "ch" in "church", [tʃ]; TZ like "ts" in "lots" but more energetic, [ts]; and TS is roughly halfway between "ts" and "ch", [tʃ].
Examples: etxe [etxe], txiki [txiki]; hotz [hotz]; hots [hotʃ].

DD, LL and TT are used to represent palatalized sounds (8 is also a palatalized sound—see above): [dy], [ly], [ty].
Examples: ondolo [ondolo]; Pello [pelyo]; batto [batyo].

Accent

It is difficult to make any remarks about Basque accent or stress of general applicability; it is a subject still poorly understood by Basque linguists. In many varieties of spoken Basque a difference between stressed and unstressed syllables may be discerned, but not normally such a marked difference as in English. Some words appear to be stressed on different syllables by the same speaker from one utterance to another. The placement of stress does not seem to be free, and yet the conditioning factors have not been clearly determined. What is more, patterns of word stress apparently differ from region to region.

In consequence, no standard stress indications can be given, and unless a model is available, it is as well to give equal weight to every syllable. However, some stress indications will be given for Mid-Gipuzkoan pronunciation below.

Assimilation and Sandhi

There are various rules of assimilation between contiguous consonants operating in Basque both within words and across word boundaries. (There are also rules of vowel assimilation and dissimilation, but these are more subject to regional and stylistic variation.) The importance of these rules is diminished by the fact that they are not often applied consistently by Basque speakers, while some are more widely observed than others. Thus they will not be enumerated here; but a couple of them are illustrated in the following text, where they are drawn attention to by an asterisk in the phonetic transcription.
A Text for Pronunciation Practice

Translation: The parish priest once invited Fernando for lunch. But his son wanted to go with the father. He gave him no peace: he should take him and he should take him. Fernando didn't need to trouble his head much to satisfy his son's desire.

The two arrived at the door of the parson's house and the father said to the son:
"You stay behind the door until I call you."
Fernando went in. The parson was waiting at the table to eat. Anticipating the priest, Fernando started to say grace, that is, to say the before-lunch prayer:
"In the name of the Father and the Holy Ghost, Amen."
"Fernando, you're doing it wrong. Have you forgotten how to say the prayer, then? Come on, start again."
Fernando knew what he was doing, and he repeated the prayer just as before.
"In the name of the Father and the Holy Ghost, Amen...."
"And the Son?" asked the priest with a harsh look over his spectacles.
Fernando had his answer well prepared:
"Oh, yes. You're right. He's downstairs. I'll call him right away. Hey, son!" he called. "They say they need the son here. Come quickly!"
The son ran to his father and sat down next to him. Since where two can eat three can eat, the father and son had a fine lunch at the parson's expense.²

Notes: ¹ Fernando of Amezketa (Amezketa is a village near Tolosa in Gipuzkoa) is a semi-legendary character (probably real) of whom many stories of this type are popularly told.
² This account is taken from J. Ormazabal, Pernando Amezketoorro, Elkar, Donostia, 1981, p. 16-17.

Erretore jaunak konbidatu zuen behin Pernando bazkaltzera. efetore yellow konbidatu suem behin peñando baskaltsera
Baina semeak aitarekin joan nahi zuen. Ez zion pakerik baina semeak aitarekin yoan nahi suen *etsio pakerik ematen: eramateko hura eta eramateko. ematen: eramateko hura eta eramateko
Pernandok ez zuen burua asko nekatu beharrik izan semearen peñankok *etsuem burua aško nekatu beharrik isan semearen kutixa betetzeko. kutixa betetzeko
Iritsi ziren biak erretorearen etxe atarirako eta aitak iriti ziren biak efetorearen etxe atarirako eta aitak
esan zion semearia:
*eantsioz semearia
—Hi ate atsean egon hazi nik deitu arte.
hi ate atsean egon hazi nik deitut aste
Pernando barrura sartu zen. Erretorea bazkaltzeko
peñando bafura šaťtu sen efetorea basaltseko
gain zeukan mahaian. Apaizari aurrea hastuz, Pernando
saintseukak mahayan apaízari aųfe haštu pefnando
bera hasi zen mahaia bedeinkatzen; hau da, bazkal aurreko
bera hasi sem mahaya bedeįnkašten hau da baskal aųfeko
erreza egiten:
efeosa egiten

—Aitaren eta Espiritu Santuaren izenean, Amen.
aitaren eta ešpiritu šantuaren isenean amen
—Pernando, gaižki ari zara. Aitaren egiten ahaztu
peñando gaiški ari sara aítaren egiten ahastu
egin įl zaizu ala? Ea, has zaitez berriro.
egin "altsaisu ala" ea haš saïtes befiro
Pernandok bazekien zertan ari sen eta berriro ere lehen
*peñandopasekiien seftan ari sen eta befiro ere lehem
bezalaxe egin zuen Aitaren.
besalafe egintsuei aítaren

—Aitaren eta Espiritu Santuaren izenean, Amen...
aitaren eta ešpiritu šantuaren isenean amen
—Eta Šeeva? —galdetu zion apaizak betaurrekoea gainetik
eta Šeeva —galdetu sion apaízak betaųfekoen gainetik
gorrotz begiratuz.
sofoz begiratux
Pernandok așpalditik pentsatuta zeukan erantzuna:
peñandok așpalditik pentsatuta seyka erantsuna
a bai aľaśoja duzu hořťe behean dago šegituan
deiťuko diot. Hi, seme! —deituz Zion—. Hemen semea behar
deiťuko diot hi šeme deiťu sion hemen.šemea behar
omen diate. Hator azkar!
omen diate hatoŕ askaŕ
Laster joan zen semea aitarengana eta bere ondoan lesteñ yoantsen semea aitarengana eta bere ondoan eseri. Bik jaten duten lekuaren hiruk ere jaten dutela eta eseri bik yaten duten lekuaren hiruk ere yaten dutela eta

bapo baskaldu zuten aita-semek erretorearen kontura.
bapo baskaldu suten aita-semek efetorearen kontura
II: MID-GIPUZKOAN PRONUNCIATION

Spoken Basque is classified into at least six main dialects, known as (from west to east) Bizkaian, Gipuzkoan, High Navarrese, Lapurdian, Low Navarrese and Zuberoan. But all of these dialect areas merge into each other, sometimes almost imperceptibly, and each area consists of a number of subdialects that are themselves no easier to delimit exactly. Therefore, if a book claims to teach a dialect such as Gipuzkoan, Lapurdian etc., this is itself a simplification, for it will surely in fact only present one variety of the dialect in question.

This is the reason why we have coined the term Mid-Gipuzkoan, rather than simply claiming to present 'Gipuzkoan'. The 'Gipuzkoan' forms given in this book represent no more than one kind of Gipuzkoan, and that kind has been chosen in the belief that it will be the most useful for the average student who makes use of the information. Thus, if the student is so lucky as to have a Basque speaker on hand (in which case he should make the fullest use possible of his help, of course), even if the informant is a Gipuzkoan he is unlikely to coincide in every detail of pronunciation with that given here, but this fact should not disconcert the learner in the least. Rather, the two sources of information—the native speaker and the book—should be looked on as complementing each other, so as to give the student a rounder picture of the language as it really is. This is not only true of Basque but of any other language.

By Mid-Gipuzkoan we do not mean to say, in a geographical sense, the form of Gipuzkoan spoken in the middle of the Gipuzkoan dialect area, but rather that type of Gipuzkoan that constitutes more or less a common denominator of all its varieties, and which is therefore recognized and used by Gipuzkoan as a kind of 'standard Gipuzkoan' in reality. It is not, therefore, the 'broad Gipuzkoan' of a given place, and in practice stands somewhere in between such forms of 'broad Gipuzkoan' and the hypothetical standard spoken Basque that is lacking.

Here, as an introduction to the pronunciation of Mid-Gipuzkoan, is the text already given, transcribed into it, and followed by some notes. In addition, the student should note that, since the 'standard' pronunciation described in the previous section requires no further comment, all observations in the rest of this book concerning pronunciations refer to Mid-Gipuzkoan, and so can be ignored by those using the 'standard'.
Erretore jaunak konbidatu zuen behin Fernando bazkaltzera.

Baina semek aitarekin joan nahi zuen. Ez zion pakerik banya ŝe'meak 'aîtarekin ŝwan nai suen 'etsiom pa'kerik ematen: eramateko hura eta eramateko.

Pernandok ez zuen burua asko nekatu beharrik izan pef'namok 'etsuem bu'rue aško nekatu ŝe'afik i'san semearen kutixia betetzeko.

Iritis ziren biak erretorearen etxe atarira eta i'ritzi siram 'biak e'etorearen e'txe atarira ta aitak esan zion semeari:

'aîtak e'santsion ŝe'meari

—Hi ate atzean egon hadi nik deitu arte.
'i a'te atsean e'yon aši nik 'deit(y)u atfe

Pernando barrura sartu zen. Erretorea bazkaltzeko pef'nando ŝa'fur a'sa'tu sam e'etorea ŝas'kaltseko zain zeukan mahaiian. Apaizari aurrea hartuz, Fernando 'saj se'ukam 'mayan a'pa'sari ay'fe a'sa'tu pef'nando bera hasi zen mahai bedeinkatzen, hau da, bazkal aurreko 'sera a'ši sam 'maya ŝe'heinkatsen ay ŝa ŝas'kal ašuku errezoa egiten:

e'fesoa e'yiten

—Aitaren eta Espiritua Santuaren izenean, Amen.

—Pernando, gaizikari zara. Aitaren egiten pef'nando 'gaizki a'ri sera a'litaren e'yiten

ahaztu egin al zaizu ala? Ea, has zaitez berriro. 'astu e'yiny atsaisu ala 'ea a'ši saite ŝe'firo

Pernandok bazekien zertan ari zen eta berriro ere pef'nandopase'kien seft'an ari san da ŝe'firo e're lehen bezalaxe egin zuen Aitaren.

—Aitaren eta Espiritua Santuaren izenean. Amen...

Aitaren eta e'spiritu ŝan'tuaren i'senean a'men
—Eta Semea? —gal'detu zion apaizak betaurrekoko
ta še'me ga'l'detu sion a'pa'sak be'ta'y'ekoen
gainotik zorrotx begiratuz. ga'nyetik so'f os be'giratuz
Pernandok aspalditik pensatuta zeukan erantzuna:
peñ'ndok as'palditik pen'tsatuța segkan e'rantsuna
a 'añj a'fásoya še'su 'ořtše šean da'yö
Segituan deltuko diot. Hi, seme! —deitu
še'yit(y)uan 'dei(y)uko šiot 'i še'me 'dei(y)u
zion—. Hemen semea behar omen diate. Hator azkar:
sion e'men še'me še'ař omen di'tek a'toś as'kař
Laster joan zen semea aitarengana eta bere ondoan
laistş 'xwant'šan še'me aitarengana ta šere on'doan
eseri. Bik jaten duten lekuan hiruk ore jaten dutela eta
e'seri 'bik 'xaten duten le'kuan 'iruk e're 'xaten 'dutela
eş displea bako zuten aita-someek erretorearen kontura.
'bashakaldu suten 'aitaše'meak eřtorearen 'kontura
Phonetic symbols not appearing in the first section:
[ŋ], [ŋ] and [ŋ] are weak, fricative variants of [b], [d] and [g]
respectively, such as are also used in Spanish etc.
[ŋ] is like the "ch" in "loch", or Spanish "ch".
' indicates stress on the following syllable.

Notes
The differences between the above transcription and that in the previous
section can be classified into the categories of phonological, morpho-
logical, syntactic and lexical. (Line numbers are given in parentheses.)

Phonological differences.
• H is silent in all the south: hura [ura] (3), beharrik [beafik] (4),
etc.
• Two vowels coming together due to nonpronunciation of h form a
diphthong in the same conditions specified in the first section:
bekin [bein] (7), nahi [naj] (2), etc. When the two vowels are
alike they contract: mahaian [mayan] (10), ahaztu [astu] (15),
lehen [len] (17), etc.
• J is pronounced [ŋ] rather than [y]: jaunak [jaŋnak] (1), joan
[yian] (2), etc.
• N in a certain environment is pronounced [ŋ] (like ņ); it must
follow i in the same word, and precede a vowel: egin [aŋ] [eŋny]
(15); but egin (zuen) [eŋin] (17). In the same environment,
1 is pronounced [ly] (like lñ).
• With less consistency, t, s/z, ts/tz preceded by i in the same word may be pronounced [ty], [ʃ] and [tʃ] respectively (i.e., as if they were tt, x and tx): iritsi [iritsi] (6), deitu [deitu] or [deitu] (8), segitu [segitu] (23).
• I, when it would be pronounced [i] (i.e., forming a diphthong), becomes silent preceding a palatalized consonant ([ny], [ly], [ty], [ʃ] or [tʃ]); however, it is often conserved before [ty]: bain [bain] (2), gainetik [ganyetik] (20), but deitu [deitu] (7).
• B, d and g, in most Basque dialects, are pronounced [b], [d] and [g] except at the beginning of a phrase and following certain consonants: kombidatu [kombidatu] (1), (o) bazkaltzera [baskaltzera] (1), egon [egon] (8), etc.

Concerning accent, see remark in the first section. A tendency can be seen in the above transcription to stress the second syllable, but there are many exceptions.

Morphological differences.
The most notable differences are in conjugated verb forms: ziren [siran] (6), zen [zan] (9), zara [sera] (14), zaitez [saitze] (15), duzu [desu], [desu] (22), diate [dite] (24).

Differences in declension forms are minor: aita-semeek [aitaśemeak] (27).

Eta "and" has three pronunciations: [eta], [ta] (used especially after vowels) and [da] (used especially after n) (Aitaren) eta [eta] (13), (hura) eta [ta] (3), (zen) eta [da] (16).

Syntactic differences.
These are hardly noticeable in the text because the original is already Gipuzkoan in idiomatic flavor. But we can note the replacement of the infinitive has "start" of the standard version by the supine hasi [asal] as a typical trait of western dialects.

Lexical differences.
Again, the mainly Gipuzkoan lexical character of the original text has made it unnecessary to adapt it lexically. Instead, we could remark on some of the words and word forms for which there are current alternatives that differ from the text, such as bake(rík) for pake(rík) (2) "peace", anitz for asko (4) "much", heldu for iritsi (6) "arrive" (allegatu [allegatu] is another word typical of spoken Gipuzkoan), gibelean for atzean (8) "behind", barne(r) for burre(r) (9) "inside", mahain(a) for mahai(a) (11) "table", aitzin(eko) for aurre(eko) (11) "before, in front", ahantzi for abantzu (15) "forget", behatu(z) or so egin(e) for begiratu(z) (20) "look", ihardetsi(a) for erantzun(a) (21) "answer", bera(e) for segitu (23) "right away", etc.

Nonetheless one or two lexically determined phonological discrepancies can be noted: zain (10) "waiting" pronounced [saj]; beza(e) (17) "like" pronounced [basela].
LESSON ZERO

CONVERSATION

The pronunciation given in the second line and in all subsequent lessons represents Mid-Sipuxkoan only (see the section on pronunciation). A free and a word-for-word translation are given on the right of the page.

Aupa!
't'upa
can be pronounced with a "k"

t'up'ka

Egun on.
ey'ken

Bai eta zuri ere.
ba'itasu'riche

Zez moduz?
se'mozus

Hil

Good morning.
"day gooo"

Good morning.
"Yes and to-you too"

How are you doing?
"what gooo?"

Fine, and you?
"well, and you?"

Oh, pretty good.
"well, say must"

Where's you're friend?
"Where's your friend"

He's (or she's) at home.
"in-house is"

Where are you going now?
"Where-to (you)'re-going now?"

Home. And you?
"to-house. and you?"

I'm going to class.
"me to-class (i)'m-going"

Where is your class?
"Where's your class"

In Gros.
"in-Gros"

Your house is in Gros too,
"isn't it?"

"your house too in-Gros is, not is?"

Ondo, eta zu?
'ondo t'a'su

Ondo, esan beharko.
'ondo e'akheark'ko

Non dago zure lagoon?
'mundayo surela'guna

Etxean dago.
'e'txeanda'yoo

Nora zoaz orain?
'nora' o'az o'ra'in

Etxera. Eta zu?
'e'tjera e'ta'su

Ni klasera noa.
'n'i'klasera noa

Non dago zure klasea?
'mundayo sure'kla'zaa

Grosen.
'gro'sen

Zure etxea ere Grosen dago, ez da?
suree'she'aare' gro'senda'yo es'ta
'ba̱i
Zurekin joango naiz.  
su'rekin 'xvangonaïs
Kotxearekin etorri al zara?  
kotxearekiny e'tosialtsera
Ez, oinez.  
es 'onyes
Elkarrekin joango gara, bada.  
el'kañeñin 'xvangoyera ña
Ederki!  
e'ñefki
Yes.
I'll go with you.
"with-you will-go (I)-on"
Have you come with the car?
"with-the-car come int. (you)-are?"
No, on foot.
"no, by-foot"
We can go together, then.
"with-each-other will-go (we)-are, then"
Great!
"beautifully"
UNIT ONE: FIRST LESSON

CONVERSATION

All indications of pronunciation (here on the right of the page) are for Mid-Sipuzkoan.

Begira!
Hau Monte Igeldo da.
Hori itsasoa da...
eta hura Donostia da.

be'yira
'ta montei'yeıdoa
'o ri i'tsiıdoa
'ta u'ra 60'nostiaa

7 Zer da hori?
Zer?
Hori?
Antiguo da.

'sef' o're
'sef
'o ri
an'tiywoa

8 Hura Parte Zaharra al da?
Bai, horixe.

u'ra paffe'safalda
'baj 'orife

9 Eta mendia?
Zer da?
A, mendia;
mendia Urgull da.

eta men'dia
'sef 'sa
'a men'dia
men'dia uf'uyidydz

10 Eta hau Gros al da?
Zer, hau?
Ez, ez.
Hau ez da Gros.

eta 'ay 'yroalda
'sef 'ay
'es 'es
'ay esta 'yrosh

12 Begira hor;
ez, hor ez, han.
Gros, hura da.

be'yira 'o f
'es 'of 'es
'an
'grosh 'uroa

13 Orain, etorri.
Begira hemen.

'o'any e'toʃi
be'yira e'men
i'yeıdoko e'fiaa

15 Hauek baserriak dira.
Bai eta halek ere.

'avek ba'seʃiaikdira
bajta 'ayeke e're

16 Mendiak, eta basoak.
Zer dira horiek?
Baserriak?
Ez, ez dira baserriak;
etxeak dira.

'esf' dıra 'oyek
ba'seʃia\k
'cs es'tiʃa bə'seʃia\k
e'tʃeakdira
Translation

Look!
This is Monte Igeldo.
That's the ocean...
and that over there's San
Sebastian.
What is that?
What?
That?
It's Antiguo.
Is that the Old Part?
Yes, that's right.
And the hill?
What is it?
Ah, the hill;
the hill is Urgull.
And is this Gros?
What, this?

No, no.
This isn't Gros.
Look there;
no, not there,
over there.
Gros is that.
Now come here.
Look here.
It's the village of Igeldo.
These are farmhouses.
And so are those over there.
Hills, and forests.
What are those?
Farmhouses?
No, they're not farmhouses;
they're (simple) houses.

Culture Notes

* (Line 2: Hau Monte Igeldo da.)
  Monte Igeldo is a hill just outside San Sebastian commanding a
  fine view of the area.
* (Line 4: eta hura Donostia da.)
  Donostia, or San Sebastian, is the capital of the province of
  Gipuzkoa.
* (Line 8: Antiguo da.)
  Antiguo is a neighborhood of San Sebastian at the foot of Monte
  Igeldo.
* (Line 9: Hura Parte Zaharra al da?)
  The "Old Part" (Parte Zaharra) is the oldest district of San
  Sebastian, near the modern downtown area. As in other Basque
  cities, the old town is a focal point of social life, where
  many local people go to drink wine with their friends on evenings
  and weekends.
* (Line 14: Urgull da.)
  San Sebastian has three hills overlooking the ocean: Igeldo;
  Urgull, behind the Old Part; and Ulia, near the Gros district.
* (Line 15: Eta hau Gros al da?)
  Gros is another San Sebastian neighborhood.
* (Line 25: Igeldoko herria da.)
  Igeldo is a little village, made up mainly of baserriak, located
  beyond the hill of the same name.
* (Line 26: Hauek baserriak dira.)
  'The baserri (the word is derived ultimately from boso "forest,
  wild place" and herri "village") represents the traditional
Basque lifestyle. Today this rural lifestyle is inevitably threatened by rapid industrialization and urbanization. Thus the baserkale is a nostalgic symbol, as well as the great reserve of Basque folklore and language. Basque life today is characterized by the contrast between the two coexistent worlds of the "baserriko" and the "kolea" ("the street", and by extension, the town or city).

Language Notes

Notes on parentheses refer to lines in the conversation.

a. Hau (2) this, hori (3) that, hura (4) that (over there) form Basque's threefold system of demonstratives. The plural forms of these pronouns are hauek (26) these, horiek (29) those, hadiek (27) those (over there). Note also the three corresponding place adverbs: hemen (24) here, hor (19) there, han (21) (over) there.

b. Da (2) is; dira (26) are. Since the pronoun need not be overtly expressed, da can translate he is, she is, it is (8), and dira can translate they are (32). Isn't and aren't = ez da (18), ez dira (31).

c. In the text singular common nouns end in -a (itsasoa (3), mendia (11), etc.), and plural common nouns end in -ak (baserriak (26), mendiak, basoa (28), etc.). In Basque grammar we call suffixes such as -a, -ak "articles"; their precise function will be studied later. Most proper nouns, on the other hand, take no article: Monte Igeldo (2), Donostia (4), Antiguo (8), etc.; but: Parte Zaharra (9).

d. Note the affirmative sentence pattern of Hau Monte Igeldo da (2), Mendia Urgull da (14), Hauek baserriak dira (26) etc.: 

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Hau</th>
<th>Monte Igeldo</th>
<th>dira.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Horri</td>
<td>Igeldoko herria</td>
<td>da.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mendia</td>
<td>Urgull</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Herria</td>
<td>Donostia</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Hauek</th>
<th>baserriak</th>
<th>dira.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Horiek</td>
<td>etxekak</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mendiak</td>
<td>Urgull</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>eta Ulia</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The subject may be omitted in Basque (cp. note b): Antiguo da (8), Etxeak dira (32), etc.

e. Contrast the pattern of negative sentences, such as Hau ez da Gros (18), Ez dira baserriak (31):

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Hau</th>
<th>Monte Igeldo</th>
<th>dira.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Horri</td>
<td>ez da</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mendia</td>
<td>Igeldoko herria</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Herria</td>
<td>Urgull</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Donostia</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Hauek</th>
<th>baserriak</th>
<th>dira.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Horiek</td>
<td>ez</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mendiak</td>
<td>Urgull</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>eta Ulia</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Again the subject may be omitted, as in Ez dira baserriak (31).

f.

Questions of the yes/no type have the same word order as the corresponding noninterrogative sentences. In Gipuzkoan dialect the particle al is placed before the conjugated verb form, but may be omitted:

Hura Parte Zaharra (al) da? (9), Hau Gros (al) da? (15):

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Hau</th>
<th>Monte Igeldo</th>
<th>Hauek</th>
<th>baserriak</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Horia</td>
<td>Urgull</td>
<td>Horiek</td>
<td>etxeak</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mendia</td>
<td>Herria</td>
<td>Mendik</td>
<td>Urgull</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Donostia</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>eta Ulia</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The subject once again may be omitted: Monte Igeldo (al) da? Is it Monte Igeldo?

g.

In questions containing a question word such as zer what (Zer da hori? (5), Zer dira horiek? (29), etc.), the question word is placed before the conjugated verb form:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Zer</th>
<th>da</th>
<th>hau?</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>hori?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>mendia?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>herria?</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Here too the subject may be left out: Zer da? (12).

DRILLS

Drill 1: Make the sentences negative, e.g.
Hau Monte Igeldo da (This is Monte Igeldo)
1. Hau ez da Monte Igeldo (This is not Monte Igeldo)

Drill 2: Make questions out of the above sentences, and answer positively and negatively, e.g.
Hau Monte Igeldo da (This is Monte Igeldo)
- Hau Monte Igeldo (al) da? (Is this Monte Igeldo?)
  - Bai, Monte Igeldo da. (Yes, it’s Monte Igeldo)
  - Ez, ez da Monte Igeldo. (No, it isn’t Monte Igeldo)

Drill 3: From the above sentences make questions with zer, and answer, e.g.
Hau Monte Igeldo da (This is Monte Igeldo)
- Zer da hau? (What is this?)
  - Monte Igeldo da. (It is Monte Igeldo)
Drill 4: Make the following sentences plural, e.g.
Hau baserria da (This is a farmhouse/This is the farmhouse)
→ Hauek baserriak dira (These are farmhouses/These are the farmhouses)

KEY
1.

2.

3.

4.
10. Zer dira hauek?
UNIT ONE: SECOND LESSON

GRAMMAR

Indications of pronunciation are for Mid-Gipuzkoan. Language notes (see pp. 15-16) are referred to by the unit number followed by a letter, such as 1:b (Language Note b in Unit 1); grammar paragraphs by the unit number followed by a number, such as 1:2 (= Grammar Paragraph 2 in Unit 1).

§1 THE ORDINARY ARTICLE

Common nouns (and certain proper nouns too) are usually accompanied by a suffixed article (see 1:1). There are several articles, but that used most frequently is the ordinary article, which, in the absolutive case, takes the forms -a (singular) and -ak (plural). The article is suffixed onto the noun stem, which may end in a vowel or a consonant. Note that number (singularity or plurality) is not expressed in the stem itself, only in the article.

E.g. herri, mendi, etxe, ikasle, baso, amerikan, mutil, euskaldun become with the article: sing. herria, mendia, etxe, ikaslea, basoa, amerikanoa, mutila, euskalduna; plur. herriak, mendiak, etxeak, ikasleak, basoak, amerikanoa, mutilak, euskaldunak.

But neska and other words ending in a lose the o when the article is added: sing. neska, plur. neskak.

Words like donostiar (inhabitant or native of San Sebastian) ending in r, double the r when a suffix beginning with a vowel is added, thus donostiarra, donostiarra

This is merely a spelling convention necessary to indicate that in all cases the final consonant of the stem is pronounced [r] and not [r]. A few words are exceptions and have a single r, pronounced [r], before the vowel of a suffix, e.g. paper [papēr] (paper), but papera [pa'pera], papera [pa'pera]; such words will be marked by a star in the vocabularies, thus: paper*.

§2 THE VERB "IZAN" (PRESENT)

We shall indicate person in pronouns and verbs with the symbols 1 "I", 2 "thou"*, 3 "he/she/it", 4 "we", 5 "you"*, 6 "they". The persons with a star require comment. Person 2, the familiar second person singular, entails the use of a special mode of speech, involving the modification of verb forms according to a complicated system, and so is best avoided by the beginner.
Person 5 is in function the non-familiar second person singular, although in origin a second person plural; it is less markedly formal or polite than French vous, Spanish usted etc. Person 5' expresses plurality in the second person; formally it is derived from person 5.

In both pronouns and conjugated verb forms, person 1 is associated with the initial letter n-; person 2, with h-; person 4, with g-; and persons 5 and 5', with z-. This is seen, for instance, in the present tense of IZAN, "to be":

Person 1  naiz  [nais]  "am"
(Person 2  haiz  [ais]  "art")
Person 3  da  [ða], [ða]  "is"
Person 4  gara  [gera], [yera]  "are"
Person 5  zara  [sera]  "are"
Person 5' zarete  [serate]  "are"
Person 6  dira  [dira], [šira]  "are"

Since subject pronouns can be left out of the sentence (cf. 1:6), these verb forms can also be translated as follows: naiz "I am", da "he is", "she is", "it is", gara "we are" etc.

Negation is effected by placing ez directly before the conjugated form: ez naiz, etc. These sequences undergo special phonological changes, not indicated in the standard spelling, by which: ez + b- = [esp-]; ez + d- = [esd-]; ez + g- = [esk-]; ez + n- = [esn-]; ez + l- = [esl-]; ez + h- = [esh-]; ez + z- = [esz-] (these are the only initials with which ez has the opportunity to so interact).

However, these changes are not always observed; and this gives rise to other phonetic results, as follows: ez b- [ezβ-]; ez d- [ezd-]; ez g- [ezg-]; ez n- [ezn-]; ez l- [ezl-]; ez h- [ezh-]; ez z- [ezs(s)-]. (Note that sibilants are voiced in Basque before a voiced sound, as in esne [ezne], ikasle [ikαsle].)

In Gipuzkoan usage, the modal particle al can be used to signal a yes/no question (see 1:6). Such modal particles immediately precede the conjugated verb form, even in preference to ez, so that negative questions have ez al naiz, etc. Gipuzkoan pronunciation of the interrogative paradigm: [alnaiz], [alais], [alda], [alyera], [altsera], [altserate], [aldira], in line with regular sandhi rules.

To fulfill the same function as the Gipuzkoan al, in eastern dialects (i.e. Low Navarrese and Zuberoan) -a is suffixed to the conjugated verb, e.g. naiza. The remaining dialects use neither al nor -a to indicate yes/no questions.
VOCABULARY

Mid-Gipuzkoan pronunciations are only given when requiring special attention. Examples of "regular" words: al [al]: bai [bai]: begira [be'yi-ra]; horri [efi]; ikasle [ika-sle]; Parte Zaharra [paft'e-safa]. Regular palatalization of n and l will not be specified: mutil [mu-til], [mu-tily]; matila [mu-tilya]. Recommended place for stress is indicated where possible, e.g. be'gira. In nouns (and adjectives), the syllable indicated is that stressed when a suffix is added (thus, e'txe is for [e't'e-ca], [e't'e-ak], etc.); the unsuffixed stem (e.g. [e't/e]) may be stressed otherwise.

al: see 1:2
ameri'kano n., adj. American
bai yes
ba'serri n. farmhouse, farm
ba'so n. forest, wild place
be'gira! look!
Do'nostia pn. San Sebastian
ero [(er)e] too, also
ceta [cet], [ta] cj. and
e'txe n. house, building
eus'kaldun n., adj. Basque
ez': see 1:2; ez' no
hauk [a(y)e]k] dt., pron. those
hau dt., pron. this

hauk [a(y)e]k], [oek] dt. pron.
these
he'rrri n. town, village; country
hori dt., pron. that
horiek [o(y)ek] dt. pron. those
hura dt., pron. that
i'kasle n. student
i'tsaso [itSa-so] n. sea, ocean
men'di n. mountain, hill
mutil n. boy, fellow
noska n. girl
Parte 'Zaharr-a pn. the Old Part
u'me n. child
zer pron. what

EXERCISES:

Exercise 1: (Translate:).
1. She's a student. 2. He's a student. 3. I'm a student. 4. You're a student. 5. They're students. 6. We're students. 7. You're students. 8. I'm an American. 9. You're a boy. 10. We're girls. 11. You're children. 12. She's a Basque.

Exercise 2:
1. He's not an American; he's a Basque. 2. They're not students. 3. I'm not a Basque. 4. You're not a child! 5. We're not Americans. 6. You're not girls. 7. The boy is a student. 8. The girl is a student too (lit. "The girl too is a student"). 9. The children are not students. 10. I'm not a student.

Exercise 3:
Exercise 4:
1. Look, what's that? 2. What are you, an American? 3. What are
the boys? They're Americans. 4. These are Basques, and those are
Americans. 5. The children are Basques too. 6. The house is Basque-
speaking (euskaldun). 7. Are the villages Basque-speaking? Yes,
they (hola) too are Basque-speaking. 8. The boy and the girl are
Basque speakers. 9. Look, that's San Sebastian over there. 10.
What are you? We're students.

KEY
1.
1. Ikaslea da. 2. Ikoslea do. 3. Ikaslea naiz. 4. Ikaslea zara.
dun da.

2.
1. Ez da amerikangoa; euskalduna da. 2. Ez dira ikosleak. 3. Ez naiz
euskalduna. 4. Ez zara umea! 5. Ez gara amerikangoak. 6. Ez zorete
ez dira ikosleak. 10. Ez naiz ikaslea.

3.
1. Ikasleo (al) zara? Bal. 2. Neska euskalduna (al) da? Ez, ame-
rikangoa da. 3. Hura Ikasleo (al) da? 4. Amerikangoa (al) zara?
Parte Zaharra (al) da? Ez, hort euskar da. 10. Euskaldunak (al) zorete?
Bal, euskaldunak gara.

4.
Amerikangoak dira. 4. Hauak euskaldunak dira, eta horteak amerikangoak
Hortak euskaldunak (al) dira? Bal, horteak ere euskaldunak dira.
UNIT ONE: THIRD LESSON

NUMBERS

Zenbat?  'zenbat  How many?
bat, bi, hiru  bat bi 'iru  one, two, three
hiru, lau, bost  'iru lay bošt  three, four, five
sei, zazpi, zortzi  šeį 'saspi 'softsí  six, seven, eight
zortzi, bederatzi,  'softsí be'deratsí  eight, nine, ten
hamar  a'mař
hamar, hamaika, hamabi  a'mař a'maĩka a'maɓi  ten, eleven, twelve

Orduak:  of'luak  Times:
ordubata  of'luɓata  one o'clock
ordubiak  of'luɓiak  two o'clock
hiruak  i'ruak  three o'clock
lauak, bostak  'laʋak 'boʃtak  four o'clock, five o'clock
eta abar  etas'ɓaɓ  and so on

Zer ordua da ordain?  se'oʃuạ a'raın  What time is it now?
Ordubata da.  oʃuɓataʃa
Ordubiak dira.  oʃuɓiakdira
Hiruak dira.  i'ruakdira
Zazpiak dira.  sas'piakdira
Hamarrak dira.  a'maʃaikeɗa
Hamalkak dira.  a'maʃaɗkeɗa

VOCABULARY

'zenbat  dt. how many, how much
or'du  n. hour; time
bat  one
bi  two
hi'ru  three
lau  four
bost  five
sei  six
zaz'pi  seven
zor'tzi  eight
be'deratzi  nine
ha'mar  ten
ha'maika  eleven
ha'mabi  twelve

1 Another word for "time" as in "What time is it?" is tenore: Zer tenore da?

PRACTICE

Practice 1: Read these numbers:
1, 3, 2, 4, 5; 1, 3, 5, 2, 4, 6, 7; 4, 6, 8, 5, 7, 9; 5, 6, 7, 8, 9;
10, 11, 12; 2, 4, 6, 8, 10; 3, 6, 9, 12; 7, 8, 9, 10, 11.
Practice 2:
Zer ordu da? 1.00; 2.00; 3.00; 4.00; 5.00; 6.00; 7.00; 8.00; 9.00; 10.00; 12.00; 5.00; 8.00; 10.00; 12.00; 4.00; 6.00; 11.00; 9.00; 7.00; 3.00; 2.00; 1.00.

Notes on telling the time:
(1) An r is often inserted in hirupak, laurak, and less often in seirak, zazpirak, zortzirak, boderatzirak; never in the other numerals.
(2) Ways of telling the time vary by region. Instead of ordu-bata, some say ordubatak; and for ordubak others say bi orduak. In these expressions ordu means "hour"; but elsewhere "hour" is oren, thus bi orenak. To ask the time, one may say Zer ordu da?, Zer tenore da?, or Zenbatak dira?
UNIT TWO: FIRST LESSON

CONVERSATION

Ikusi al duzu Parte Zaharra?  i'kuśialdesu partesafa
Ez.  ez
Joango al gara gaur?  'xwangoalyera rayf
Hola, ikusiko duzu.  'ola i'kuśiko'yesu
Ondo.  'ondo
Parte Zaharra atsegina al da?  partesafa a'tšeyinya aldada
Bai, oso atsegina da.  'baj oso a'tšeyinya'ada
Goazen gaur, bada.  'gwasen 'gayf şa
Zer ordutan?  se'ofşutan
Zortzietan?  'softsietan
Ondo, zortzietan.  'ondo 'softsietan
Gero arte, bada.  gero'afte şa
Bai, gero arte.  'baj vero'afte

(Zortzi t'erdia dira orain.)  sof'tsi 'teśiakdire o'rajin

Kaixo!  'kajfo
Barkatu, berandu da.  bať'katu be'randuşa
Lasai,  lašaj
berdin da.  beť'šin 'da
Goazen, bada.  'gwasembə

(Parte Zaharrean.)  partesafən
Hau Kale Nagusia da.  'a xu kalenayašia
Kale hau?  'kalc 'aç
Baina oso txikia da!  banya o'so tʃi'kiaʃa
Bai. Zaharra da.  'baj 'safaʃa
Kale hauek, txikiax eta zaharrak dira.  kalə dek, tʃi'kiax eta 'safakdirə
Baina politak.  banya po'litak
Eta orain, noria?  ta o'rajin 'nora
Taberna batera.  ta'беña'batera
Hori taberna bat da, ez da?  o'ri ta'беña'batera es'tə
Bai,  'baj
bai eta haiek ore.
Ama! zenbat taberna!
Taberna asko, bai.

Taberna hori ona al da?
Bai. Goazen barrura.

'tbaj 'gwasem bəfura
Zer nahi duzu?
Ardoa?
Beltza, gorria ala zuria?
Gorria, mesedez.
(Barran:)
Beltza eta gorria!
Tori.
Eskerrik asko.
Bederatzieta, lagun batzuek etorriko diera. Ederki.

Translation
Have you seen the Old Part?
No.
Shall we go today?
That way, you'll see it.
Okay.
Is the Old Part nice?
Yes, it's very nice.
Let's go today, then.
At what time?
At eight o'clock?
Okay, at eight.
See you later, then.
Yes, see you later.
(It's eight thirty now.)
Hi!
I'm sorry, it's late.
Never mind,
it's all right.
Let's go, then.
(In the Old Part.)
This is Main Street.
This street?
But it's very small!
Yes. It's old.

These streets
are small and old.
But pretty.
And now, where to?
To a bar.
That's a bar,
Isn't it?
Yes,
and those over there too.
Goodness! what a lot of bars!
A lot of bars, yes.
Is that bar good?
Yes. Let's go in.
What do you want?
Wine?
Red, rosé or white?
Rosé, please.
(At the bar:)
A red and a rosé!
Here you are.
Thank you.
At nine o'clock,
some friends will be coming.
Great.

Language Notes

a. Observe that predicate adjectives can take the ordinary article (sing. -a, plur. -ak; cf. 1:1): atsegina (6), (7), txikia (23), zaharra (24), txikiak, zaharrak (26), politak (27), etc. As a result, there is number agreement between noun and adjective.
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Herria</th>
<th>atsegina</th>
<th>da.</th>
<th>Herriak</th>
<th>atsegina k</th>
<th>dira.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Kalea</td>
<td>txikia</td>
<td></td>
<td>Kaleak</td>
<td>txikiak</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Taberna</td>
<td>zaharra</td>
<td>naiz.</td>
<td>Tabernak</td>
<td>zaharrak</td>
<td>gara.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(Hura)</td>
<td>polita</td>
<td></td>
<td>(Haiet)</td>
<td>politak</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(Ni)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>(Ga)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(Zu)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>(Zuek)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Ni, zu, go and zuek are personal pronouns, meaning respectively "I", "you" (sing.), "we" and "you" (plur.). As we have learned in Unit 1, such subject pronouns as these and hura, haiet etc. can be omitted from the sentence: Atsegina da, Zaharrak gara, etc.

b.
Consider the noun phrases kale hau (22), kale haiet (25), taberna bat (30), taberna asko (35), taberna hori (36), lagan batzuek (47). Hau this, haiet these, bat one, go, asko many, hori that, batzuek some, are called determiners; they determine the nouns kale, taberna, lagan. Note that with a determiner the noun does not take an article: the determiner replaces the article. Conversely, when there is none of these determiners, the article is added:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>kale</th>
<th>hau</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>taberna</td>
<td>haiet</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>etxe</td>
<td>bat</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>neska</td>
<td>batzuek</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>matil</td>
<td>asko</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>lagan</td>
<td>-A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>amerikano</td>
<td>-AK</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>etc.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

All the demonstratives (see 1:a) can be used as determiners as well as pronouns.

c.
Joango al gara? (3), etorriko dira (47): joango naiz, joango da,... I'll go, he'll go, etc.; etorriko naiz, etorriko da,... I'll come, he'll come, etc.

d.
Learn these expressions: Ondo Oko!, Fine; Gauzaen ['gauzən] Let's go; Gero arte [gero'arte] See you later; Kaixo! Hi!; Barkatu I'm sorry; Excuse me; Lasai Never mind, Don't worry; Zer nahi duzu? ['sef 'naidezul] What do you want? What would you like?; Mersedez Please; Ekerrik asko Thank you; Ederki Greet, Wonderful. Note also Berandu da It's late; Berdin da It doesn't matter (lit. "It's the same").

e.
Beltza, gorria ala zuria? (40): beltz, gorri and zurri are the colors "black", "red" and "white". Thus, Basques refer to red wine as black (beltz-a), and rosé as red (gorri-a).
DRILLS

Drill 1: Substitution drill; replace the element in italics with the items given, e.g.
Baserria txikia da: atsegind/zahar/ekskaldun.
+ Baserria atsegina da.
  + Baserria zaharra da.
  + Baserria euskalduna da.

Drill 2: Make the following sentences plural, e.g.
Baserria txikia da.
+ Baserriak txikiak dira.

Drill 3: Substitution drill:

Drill 4: Make the following sentences plural, e.g.
Baserri hau zuria da.
+ Baserri hauek zuria dira.
Lagun bat amerikasoa da.
+ Lagun batzek euskaldunak dira.
UNIT TWO: SECOND LESSON

GRAMMAR

11 PRONOUNS

In Basque pronouns differ from common nouns in that they take no article (compare 1:1).

The demonstratives hau "this", hori "that", hura "that (over there)", plur. hauek, horieek, haieek, which are determiners, can be used pronominally (see Unit 1). The same is true of other determiners; e.g. Batzuek ikasleak dira, Some are students; Nahi duzu bat? Do you want one?; Asko etorriliko dira, Many will come.

Among the pure pronouns in Basque are the personal pronouns:

Person 1 ni "I, me"  (Person 2 hi "thou, thee")
Person 4 gu "we, us"  Person 5 zu "you"
Person 5 zu "you"

Note that the initial letters of these pronouns, n-, h-, g-, z-, correspond to those of the verb (see 1:2).

There are no true third-person personal pronouns. If necessary a demonstrative pronoun may be used: Hura (hori, hau) ikaslea da, He/She is a student. Another possibility is to use the form bera (plur. berak), whose basic meaning is "he himself/she herself", "they themselves".

Since a pronoun expressing the subject can be omitted (see 1:2), it is only used to achieve contrast or emphasis, e.g. Zu euskalduna zara, baina ni ez naiz euskalduna, You're Basque, but I'm not Basque (contrast); Ni joango naiz, I'll go (emphasis).

VOCABULARY

ar'do n. wine
asko dt. a lot, many, much
aitsegin adj. pleasant, nice
bada [ba] well, then
baina [banya], [banyan], [banyo] conj. but
ba'rikatu exp. I'm sorry, excuse me
bat dt. one; a
batzuek [batsuk] dt. some (plur.)
beltz adj. black; red (wine)
berrandu adv. late
ber'din adj., adv. same
e'derki adv. fine, great | me'sedez please ²
es'karrik 'as'ko exp. thank you | nahi duzu ['na isEqual] (do) you want
e'torriko naiz I will come on ad. good
gero 'arte exp. see you later 'ondo adv. well
goazan ['gwaIsen] let's go o'rain adv. now
go'rri adj. red, rosé (wine) ono adv. very, really
joango naiz ['xvango], ['xvango] polit adj. pretty
I will go taberna n. bar
'kaixo (lt. hi, hello) (informal) txi'ki adj. small, little
ka'le n. street 'zahar adj. old
la'gun n. friend zu'ri ['surI], [tsurI] adj. white
lasai adv. calm, untroubled

¹ "Thank you" is, according to region, eskerrir asko, esker anitz,
esker mila, mila esker.
² "Please" is, according to region, mese dez, faborez, arren, otoi.

EXERCISES

Exercise 1:
1. She's Basque, but we're not Basque. 2. I'm American; and you?
3. You and me. 4. Me too. 5. Are you Americans too? (Ltt. "Are you too...") 6. We're going to go now.
7. They're very pretty. 8. I'm not Basque. 9. What is he? 10. Some friends will be coming, but not us (Ltt. "but us no").

Exercise 2:
1. What time is it now, please? 2. It's seven o'clock, look! 3. Thank you, but I'm not going to go. 4. Excuse me, is this Main Street?
9. Don't worry, he'll come now. 10. Okay then.

KEY

1. Hura euskalduna do, balna gu ez gara euskaldunak. 2. NL amerikanoa
naiz; eta zu? 3. Zu eta nl. 4. NL era. 5. Zuak era amerikanoak
2. doa, balna gu ez.

asko, balna ez naiz joango. 4. Barkatu, hau Kole Nagusia et da?
do. 10. Ondo bada.
UNIT TWO: THIRD LESSON

NUMBERS (ctd.)

hamaiika, hamabi  a'maika a'mabì
hamahiru, hamalau a'mairu a'malau
hamabost, hamasei a'mašöst a'masei
hamazazpi, hamazortzi ama'saspi c'me'sortsi
hemeretzzi, hoged cme'retsi o'rej
hogetatabat oyeita'bat
(- hogedi eta bat)
oyteita'bi oyeita'iru twenty-two, twenty-three
hogetimalau, hogetabost oyeita'lay oyeita'bošt twenty-four, twenty-five

Seiak dira. 'h'eyàk'dìra It's six o'clock.
Sei t'erdiak dira. 'še'I tef'sæk'dìra It's six thirty.
Sei eta bostak. 'šeI eta'boštak It's six five.
Sei eta hanarrak. 'šeI eta'ma'fak It's six ten.
Sei eta laurdenak. 'šeI eta'lauf'denak It's six fifteen.
Sei eta hogeiak. 'šeI eta'o'yejak It's six twenty-
Sei eta hogetabostak. 'šeI eta'bye'ja'ta'boštak It's six twenty-five.

VOCABULARY

er'dì adj., n. half
laurden adj., n. quarter
ha'mahiru thirteen
ha'malau, ha'malau fourteen
ha'mabost, ha'mabost fifteen
ha'masei, ha'masei sixteen
ha'mazazpi seventeen
ha'mazortzi, hemezortzi eighteen
hemeretzzi nineteen
ho'goi twenty

PRACTICE

Practice 1:
Zenbat? 2, 4, 6, 8, 10, 12, 14, 16, 18, 20; 1, 3, 5, 7, 9; 11, 13,
15, 17, 19; 21, 22, 23, 24, 25:

Practice 2:
Zer ordu da? 1.30; 2.30; 3.30; 4.30; 5.30; 6.30; 7.30; 8.30; 9.30;
10.30; 11.30; 12.30; 1.15; 2.15; 3.15; 4.15; 5.05; 6.05; 7.10; 8.10;
9.20; 10.20; 11.25; 12.25.
UNIT THREE: FIRST LESSON

CONVERSATION

Zer ordutan etorriko dira zurue lagunak?
Bederatziaren.
Eta zer ordu da orain?
Bederatziak bost guti dira.
Goazen orain.
Non egongo dira?
"Josetxo" tabernan.

(Tabernan.)

Hemen daude.
Gau on!
Berdin!
Aupa, Xabier!
Hau Mike da,
etta hauek nere lagunak dira:
Joseba, Itziar eta Xabier.
Aupa!
Kaiixo!
Pozten naiz!

Barkatu, zer da zure izena?
Nere izena? Mike.
Hori "Mikel" da euskarak, ez da?
Bai, Mikel.
Mikel, ez?
Izen ona da hori!
Izen euskalduna!

Ea, Iñaki. Zer nahi duzu?
Nik ardo beltza nahi dut.
Eta zuk, Mikel?
Ardo gorria, mesedez.
Itziar?
Nik ere gorria.
Beltza eta bi gorri...
Xabier, zuk zer?
Nik beltza.
Bai eta nik ere. Orduan...
Adizu!
Bi gorri eta hiru beltz!
Ardo ona!
Ona, ez!
Hau ez da ardo ona.
Ardo txarra da, baina....
Zer moduz hemen Donostian?
Ondo.
Zer ikusi duzu hemen?
Monte Igeldo?
Bai,
gaur egon gara Monte Igeldon.
Handik,
Donostia guztia ikusi dut.
Donostia toki polita da, e?
Bai, oso polita.
Asko gustatzen zait.
Mendi berdeak, itsasoa....
Zer, ardoa bukatu al duzu?
Goazen!
Beste toki batera!

Translation
What time are your friends coming?
At nine o'clock.
And what's the time now?
It's five to nine.
Let's go now.
Where will they be?
In the "Josezte" Bar.
(In the bar.)
Here they are.
Good evening!
Good evening!
Hi, Xabier!
This is Mike,
and these are my friends:
Joseba, Itziar and Xabier.
Hi there!
Hi!
Glad to meet you!
Sorry, what's your name?
My name? Mike.
That's "Mikel" in Basque, isn't it?
Yes, Mikel.

af'ño o'na
'ona 'es
'ag 'esta 'af'ño o'na
'af'ño 't'aja da 'baby
'sef mo'èus e'men do'no'tion
'ondo
'ser i'ku'usišu e'men
monteiz'eldo
'baĩ
'gauf e'yonger a monteiz'eldo
'andik
do'nošti yu's'tia i'kušišet
do'nošti 'toki po'lista da e
'baĩ, 'eso po'lista
af'ko yu's'tatentsajt
'mendi šef'šeak i'tšašo
'ser af'ñoa bu'katualdesu
'gwasen
'bešte 'toki šatera

Mikel, huh?
That's a good name!
A Basque name!
Well, Iñaki. What do you want?
I want red wine.
And you, Mikel?
Rosé wine, please.
Itziar?
Rosé for me too.
A red and two rosés...
Xabier, what about you?
Me, red.
And me too. So...
I say!
Two rosés and three reds!
Good wine!
Not really.
This isn't good wine.
It's bad wine, but....
How you doing here in San Sebastian?
Pine.
What have you seen here?
Monte Igeldo?
Yes,
today we've been on Monte Igeldo. Yes, very pretty.

From there, I like it a lot.

I saw all San Sebastian. Green hills, the sea....

San Sebastian's a pretty place, What, have you finished your wine?
huh? Let's go!

To another place!

Language Notes

a. Note that attributive adjectives are placed after the noun they qualify. Note also that if an article is used, it is added to the last word in the noun phrase only, namely the adjective: izen ona (26), izen euskaldun-a (27), ardo heltza (29), ardo gorri-a (31), ardo ona (40), ardo txar-(r) a (43), Donostia gatzia (51), tok di polit-a (52), mendia berdeak (55), Parte Zahar-(r) a. But there is no article in Egan on Good morning (Lesson 0), Gau on [ga' Lon] Good evening, Good night (11), Arratsalde on Good afternoon; these are exceptional.

b. Possessive adjectives: nere my, gure our, zure your 5, zuen your 5'. These precede the noun they qualify. The article is again added to the last element in the noun phrase, but now this is the noun: zure lagunak (2), nere lagunak (15), zure izena (20), nere izena (21). Unless, of course, an adjective should follow the noun, e.g. nere lagun ona "my good friend".

c. The cardinal numbers are determiners; they are therefore used without an article. But unlike the determiners mentioned in 2:b, the numerals bi, hiru, lau etc. precede the noun: bi gorri, hiru heltza (contrast kale hau, taberna asko, etc. Yet the number bat "one" differs from other cardinals in that it is placed after the noun. We thus count: etxe bat, bi etxe, hiru etxe, lau etxe "one house, two houses, three houses, four houses".


e. Note also that the pronominal subject of nahi/ikusi/bukatu/... dut, if expressed, is nik (29, 33, 36, 37) "I"; while that of nahi/ikusi/ bukatu/... duzu is zuk (30, 35).

f. Learn these expressions: Egan on Good morning; Arratsalde on Good
afternoon; Gau on [ga'fon] Good evening, Good night (concerning these cf. J:a); normal replies to any of these greetings are Berdin lit. "Same" or Bai eta zuri ere [bai'tau'riere] lit. "And to you too"—the latter is more courteous than the former; Zer moduz? How are you doing? (informal), to which one can answer Ondo or Ederki (usually adding ...eta zu?), or Ondo esan beharko, something like "Oh, not too bad I suppose"; Aupa! Hey there! is very informal, as is Kaixo Hl; Adizu! ['a:zu] Hey! (lit. "Listen!") is used to call someone's attention; Pozten naiz lit. "I am glad" can be used, among other occasions, when being introduced to someone, in the sense of "Glad to meet you" (slightly formal).

DRILLS

Drill 1: Expand the noun phrase in these sentences by inserting the adjective given, e.g.

Herria Igeldo da. (txiki) [The village is Igeldo.]  
- Herri txikia Igeldo da. [The little village is Igeldo.]

Drill 2: Expand the noun phrase in these sentences by inserting the possessive adjective given, e.g.

Herria Igeldo da. (nere) [The village is Igeldo.]  
- Nere herria Igeldo da. [My village is Igeldo.]

Drill 3: In these sentences replace batzuek "some" with the numeral given, e.g.

Lagun batzuek etorriko dira. (hiru) [Some friends are going to come.]  
- Hiru lagun etorriko dira. [Three friends are going to come.]

Personal Names:
Male: I'naki "Ignatius", Jo'seba "Joseph", Mikel "Michael", Xabiler "Xavier".
Female: I'tziar (no equivalent).
UNIT THREE: SECOND LESSON

GRAMMAR

§1 ADJECTIVES

There are three principal ways of using adjectives in the sentence: attributively (a pretty house); predicatively (the house is pretty); and in apposition (the house, very pretty, ...). There are syntactic rules affecting each kind of use.

In Basque the ordinary article (see 1:1) is often added to the adjective used predicatively: Herría atsegina da "The village is pleasant", Kaleak zaharrak dira "The streets are old", etc., cf. 2:a.

Predicate adjectives do not always have the article, however. The factors determining when to use and when to omit the article in such cases are various. Usage also varies from dialect to dialect on this point. The beginner need not worry about this problem; as a general (if not universal) rule he should follow the pattern described above, except where he observes contrary usage, which he ought to imitate, such as Berdin da in the sense of "It doesn't matter" (however, "It's the same", "It is similar" is often Berdin da!).

It must also be borne in mind that the ordinary article is only added to adjectives, never to adverbs. Thus "It is late" is always Berandu da, and there is no such thing as berandua, for the simple reason that berandu is in Basque an adverb, not an adjective.

Adjectival apposition is a much more frequent construction in Basque than in English. The adjective takes the same form as when used predicatively, but is used as an attribute of the noun. The appositional phrase may be placed immediately after the noun phrase (Etxe bat oso polita ikusi dut "I've seen a really pretty house"), or separated from it (Etxe bat ikusi dut oso polita, same meaning). In many cases, as in this example, the appositional construction serves to give emphasis to the attribute expressed.

When an adjective is used attributively, it is inserted into the noun phrase containing the noun it qualifies. With a few exceptions, adjectives in Basque are postpositive, i.e. they follow the noun they qualify, e.g. izen oma "a good name", ardo beltza "red wine", Parte Zaharra "the Old Part" etc., cf. 3:a.
The principal exceptions to this rule are constituted by the ordinals (*lehen eguna* "the first day", *hamargarren etxea" the tenth house", etc.) and two or three other adjectives, including *beste "other"* and *azken "last"* (*beste taberna "the other bar", *beste taberna bat "another bar", *azken etxea "the last house").

With adjectives of origin and nationality, such as *donostiar "of, pertaining to San Sebastian", euskaldun "Basque",* the position is optional: *euskaldun herria or herri euskalduna*. The postpositive usage is more common.

Concerning the placement of the article in noun phrases containing an attributive adjective, see 3:2. As in English, more than one adjective may be used together, e.g. *etxe zuri polit bat "a pretty white house".*

It is also possible to omit the noun from the noun phrase, leaving only the adjective and whatever determiner is required. In ellipses of this type, English usually inserts the pronoun one(s). E.g. *gorri nerea da "The red one is mine"; gorri bat nahi dut "I want a red one".*

**52 DETERMINERS**

Basque syntax makes a sharp distinction between adjectives (e.g. *amerikano* American, *atsegia* pleasant, *beltz* black, *berde* green, *berdin* same, *berri* new, *beste* other, *eder* fine, *beautifull*, *erdia* half, *euskaldun* Basque, *gazte* young, *gorri* red, *guztira* all, *on good*, *polit* pretty, *txar* bad, *txiki* small, *zahar* old, *zuri* white: see 3:1) and determiners (e.g. the demonstratives *hau*, *hori*, *hura*, the cardinal numerals, quantifiers such as *asko* many, *guti* [guti] few, *zentar* how many, *bat* one, *a*, *batzuk* some, and various others). Adjectives, when used attributively, are inserted into the noun phrase without altering the latter's existing structure; the syntactic behavior of the class of words we call determiners is more complex. The determiner is an essential feature of the Basque noun phrase, and the following observations should be studied carefully.

Even though there are certain exceptions, it can be stated as a general rule of Basque grammar that every noun phrase must contain a determiner. Perhaps this is an oversimplification; nevertheless, keeping this principle in mind, the student will be able to master the working of the noun phrase.
If we accept that every noun phrase has a determiner, then the question we must ask concerning each noun phrase is: Which determiner?

Determiners, like adjectives (see 3:1), are either postpositive or prepositive. Postpositive determiners are placed at the very end of the noun phrase, after whatever is otherwise its last element, whether this be noun, adjective or something else. It will often be the noun (e.g. etxe bat, beste etxe bat); but if there is a postpositive adjective, this will stand between the noun and the determiner (e.g. etxe zuri bat).

Prepositive determiners are placed just before the noun (e.g. lau etxe, lau etxe zuri, beste lau etxe).

In this analysis we consider the articles (cf. 1:1) a subclass of determiners. One difference between articles and other determiners is that articles take the form of suffixes or inflections (etxea, etxeak) while all other determiners appear as separate words (etxe bat, etxe asko, lau etxe, etc.). As regards position, the articles are postpositional; that is, they are added always to the very last element in the noun phrase, whatever that should be (it can be a noun, an adjective, or something else): etxea, beste etxeak, etxe zuria, zuria (with ellipsis of the noun, see 3:1), etc.

Since all noun phrases must have a determiner, and articles are the most common kind of determiner used, we may say that an article is added to a noun phrase whenever no other determiner is present. And since a noun phrase (normally) only admits one determiner, we may also say that the article is omitted whenever another determiner is present. We could also say that the articles are unmarked members of the class of determiners, and all other determiners are marked members.

Now Basque has no determiner that specifically fills the function of the English definite article "the". Indeed, a demonstrative determiner (hau, hori, hura) may occasionally translate "the" in Basque, but this is not usual. From what we have said, it follows that, if there is no special determiner to express "the", noun phrases containing this idea will, in the absence of another determiner, have the article (generally the ordinary article, though there are others). Thus: etxeak = "the house", etxeak = "the houses", etc.

Why do we not just say that the ordinary article is the equivalent of the English definite article; we do not, for that matter, simply call -a, -ak the Basque definite article? This is what many Basque grammars in
fact do, but we do not agree.

The ordinary article is not always the equivalent of "the". It can quite often render just the opposite, the indefinite article, "a": Etxe zuria da "It's a house", Beltza, mesede "A red (wine), please", etc. In other cases there may be no article at all in phrases corresponding to Basque phrases containing the article: Ardo ona da "It's good wine", Lagunak dira "They're friends". We have also seen that the article is very often added to predicate adjectives in Basque, which is quite impossible to do with the English article: Ona da "It is good" (see 3:1).

The remaining determiners can be classified in four groups: (1) demonstratives; (2) quantifiers; (3) interrogative determiners; (4) miscellaneous.

There are three demonstrative determiners: hau, hori, hura (see 1:a and 2:b). They are postpositive:
etxe hau "this house".

The quantifiers are the most numerous group of determiners. The cardinal numerals constitute one subset of the quantifiers; the rest can be called "general quantifiers", and among these are batzuk "some", asko "many, much", guti "few".

Some quantifiers are postpositive, and others are prepositive. We have seen (3:c) that the cardinal numerals are prepositive except for bat "one" which is postpositive.

Postpositive use of bi "two" is either dialectal (Bizkaian) or literary. Notice, however, ordu-bi-ak "two o'clock", i.e. "the two hours", with postpositive bi, even though this form is normal in Gipuzkoan.

Of the general quantifiers too, each one has its own rule regarding position. Batzuk and guti are always postpositive; asko is postpositive in some dialects, including Gipuzkoan, but prepositive in others. There are also general quantifiers that are only used prepositively, such as hainbat "so many".

The cardinal numerals may be used together with another determiner in the noun phrase; this is an exception to the general rule that there is only one determiner per noun phrase, given above. Thus: bi etxeak "the two houses", hiru etxe hauek "these two houses", etc. We distinguish between bi etxe "two houses" and bi etxeak "the two houses". "My two houses" is nere bi etxeak.

There are also compound quantifiers, consisting of two words, such as pixka bat ['pi̯党风], ['pi̯党风] "a little, a bit", pila bat "a heap, a load", etc.
There are three interrogative determiners: zer "what", zein "which", zenbat "how many, how much". They are all prepositional: zer etxe? "what house?", zein etxe? "which house?", zenbat etxe? "how many houses?"

Other determiners, which we have classed as "miscellaneous", are very few; e.g. edozein "any".

VOCABULARY

adizu! [taisu] exp. hey!
ha'rrratsalde n. afternoon
'aupe int. hi
ber'de adj. green
ber'ri adj. new
bester pr. adj. other
bu'katsu dot I've finished
e'der adj. fine, beautiful
e'gum n. day
emakune n. woman
euskarraz [egiska] adv. in Basque
gau [gau] n. night, evening
gaz'te adj., n. young (person)
gi'zon n. man
gus'tatzen zait I like (it)
guti [gutfi] dt. few, little
guz'ti adj. all, every
i'kusi dot I've seen
i'zen n. name
nahi dot I want
or'duan adv. then
'pozten naiz I'm glad
tolki n. place; room, space
txar adj. bad
zein pr. dt., pron. which
er pron., pr. dt. what
zer mo'duz? how?; how're you doing?

'But gau-a is pronounced [ga'a], and Gau on [ga'xon].

EXERCISES

Exercise 1:
1. The day. 2. A day. 3. Which day? 4. What day? 5. How many days? 6. Many days. 7. Few days. 8. One day. 9. Some days, a few days. 10. This day. 11. These days. 12. Two days. 13. A fine afternoon. 14. One fine afternoon. 15. Many fine afternoons. 16. Three fine afternoons. 17. A young woman. 18. The young woman. 19. The other woman. 20. Another woman. 21. The other young woman. 22. Another young woman. 23. Four women. 24. The four women. 25. Those four women. 26. Four other women. 27. All the women. 28. All the young women. 29. All the other women. 30. All the other young women.

Exercise 2:
right. 15. Good, then. 16. Fine; I'll go then. 17. Yes, yes, don't worry, I'll go. 18. What? 19. Look, it's very late. 20. See you later then.

Exercise 3:

KEY

1.

2.

3.

Personal Names:
Fégale: E'durne "Snow".
UNIT THREE: THIRD LESSON

NUMBERS (ctd.)

hogeita'bat, hogeita'bi
hogeita'hiru, hogeita'lau
hogeita'bost, hogeita'sei
hogeita'zazpi, hogeita'zortzi
hogeitabe'deratzi, hogeitaha'mar
hogeitaha'maika, hogeitaha'mabi
hogeitaha'mahiru, hogeitaha'malau
hogeitaha'mabost, hogeitaha'masei
hogeitahama'zazpi
hogeitahama'zortzi
hogeitaheme'retzi, be'rrrogei
twenty-one, twenty-two
twenty-three, twenty-four
twenty-five, twenty-six
twenty-seven, twenty-eight
twenty-nine, thirty
thirty-one, thirty-two
thirty-three, thirty-four
thirty-five, thirty-six
thirty-seven, thirty-eight
thirty-nine, forty

Bostak bost guti (or gu'tiago).
4.55 (Five to five).
Bostak hamar guti.
4.50 (Ten to five).
Bostak laurden guti.
4.45 (A quarter to five).
Bostak hoge guti.
4.40 (Twenty to five).
Bostak hogeitabost guti.
4.35 (Twenty-five to Five).

VOCABULARY

be'rrrogei, berro'gei Forty

PRACTICE

Practice 1:
Zenbat? 10, 20, 30, 40; 5, 15, 25, 35; 22, 24, 26, 28, 30; 21, 23, 25, 27, 29; 31, 33, 35, 37, 39; 32, 34, 36, 38, 40.

Practice 2:
Zer ordu da? 1.55; 3.55; 5.55; 7.55; 9.55; 11.55; 2.50; 4.50; 6.50; 8.50; 10.50; 12.50; 1.45; 3.45; 5.45; 7.45; 9.45; 11.45; 2.40; 4.40; 6.40; 8.40; 10.40; 12.40; 1.35; 3.35; 5.35; 7.35; 9.35; 11.35.
UNIT FOUR: LESSON ONE

CONVERSATION

From here on we will no longer give the Gipuzkoan phonetic representation of the conversations. Word stress will continue to be indicated, by means of marks in the text. In other respects, phonetic notes in the vocabularies and grammar sections will almost always be sufficient to deduce the Gipuzkoan pronunciation.

(I'Beste ta'berna batean.)

IÑAKI: 'Toki 'hau be'teta dago!
ITZIAR: 'Zer 'nahi dugu bada? 'Zenbat 'beltz?
JOSEBA: 'Hiru, 'uste dut. Mi'kelek go'rria nahi du, ez 'da?
ITZIAR: Or'duan...

('Barcan.)

ITZIAR: 'Hiru 'beltz eta 'bi 'gorri.
TABERNARIA: 'Zer? 'Nola?
ITZIAR: 'Hiru 'beltz eta 'bi 'gorri. 'Zenbat da?
TABERNARIA: Berrogeitahar'mar.
ITZIAR: Es'kerrik 'asko.

ITZIAR: Go'rria?
MIKEL: He'men. Ne'rea da.
ITZIAR: 'Tori. Amerik'kanoa zara, ez 'da?
MIKEL: 'Bai.
ITZIAR: Eta eus'karaz dakizu, 'e?!
MIKEL: 'Bai, 'pizka bat.
ITZIAR: 'Non i'kasi duzu?

MIKEL: Es'tatu Ba'tuetan i'kasi dut, Cali'fornian.
ITZIAR: 'Benetan? Ho'ri 'oso 'ondo dago. Eta 'non bi'zi zar a'rain?
MIKEL: He'men bi'zi naiz, Do'nostian.
XABIER: 'Non 'zaude Do'nostian?
MIKEL: 'Gro'sen. Os'tatu batean.
XABIER: 'Non dago zure os'tatu?
MIKEL: Zaba'leta ka'lean dago.

ITZIAR: Zure 'aita eta 'ama 'non daude? Cali'fornian?
MIKEL: 'Bai, San Fran'cisco daude. 'Han bi'zi dira.
XABIER: 'Ondo 'dakizu eus'karaz, 'e!
JOSEBA: 'Bai, 'oso 'ondo.
MIKEL: 'E'ndo? 'Nik ez dut 'uste. 'Guti dakit.
JOSEBA: 'Non i'kasi duzu eus'karaz?
ITZIAR: Cali'fornian i'kasi du.
MIKEL: 'Bai, Cal'i'fornian.
JOSSEBA: 'Bai? Eta 'nola i'kasi duzu? 'Klase batean?
MIKEL: 'Ez. Ba'karrik.
IÑAKI: 'Zer? Bu'katu dugu, ez 'da?
XABIER: 'Bai, bu'katu.
JOSSEBA: 'Nik 'bai.
IÑAKI: 'Goazen bada. Be'randu da....
ITZIAR: 'Zer 'ordu da?
MIKEL: Ez 'dakit [es'takit].
IÑAKI: 'Nik 'bai. Ha'marrak 'laurden guti dira.
ITZIAR: Ba'karrik? 'Ez da 'oso be'randu or'duan!

Translation:

(In another bar.)

In. This place is full!
It. What do we want, then? How many red wines?
J. Three, I think. Mikel wants rosé, doesn't he?
It. So...

(At the bar.)

It. Three reds and two rosés.
Barmen: What? Pardon?
It. Three red and two rosés. How much is it?
Barmen: Fifty.
It. Thank you.
It. Rosé?
M. Here. It's mine.
It. There you are. You're American, aren't you?
M. Yes.
It. And you speak Basque, huh?
M. Yes, a little.
It. Where did you learn?
M. I learned it in the United States, in California.
It. Really? That's very good. And where do you live now?
M. I live here, in San Sebastian.

X. Where are you in San Sebastian?
M. In Gros. In a small hotel.
X. Where is your hotel?
M. It's in Zabaleta Street.

It. Where are your father and mother? In California?
M. Yes, they're in San Francisco. They live there.
X. You speak Basque well, huh!
J. Yes, very well.
M. Well? I don't think so. I don't know very much.
J. Where did you learn Basque?
It. I learned it in California.
M. Yes, in California.
J. Yes? And how did you learn? In a class?
M. No. On my own.

In. What? We've finished, haven't we?
X. Yes, finished.
J. I'm done.
In. Let's go then. It's late....
It. What's the time?
M. I don't know.
In. I do. It's nine forty-five.
It. Is that all? It isn't very late then!
Language Notes

a. Consider Californian "in California" (20), Donostian "in San Sebastian" (23, 24), Grosen "in Gros" (25), San Franciscoon "in San Francisco" (29). These are examples of proper names with the inessive suffix -(e)n (—en following a vowel, —en following a consonant), which is used to indicate where something is or happens. It usually corresponds to one of the English prepositions in, on or at.

b. Batean ([ba'te:n] or [ba'te:n]) is the inessive form of the determiner bat "one, a"; it is the equivalent of in a(n), on a(n), or at a(n).
   So: taberna batean "in a bar" (1), ostatu batean "in a hotel" (25), klasa batean "in a class" (36), etc.

c. Hemen "here", hor "there", lan "over there" (1:2) and non [nun] "where?" are inessive adverbs of place. Note that with the exception of hor they all end in the letter n.

d. You will have observed that in this lesson's conversation "is", "are" are not always expressed by da, dira: in some sentences we find dago or daude instead. These are third-person singular and plural forms of the verb EGON, which is sometimes used in place of the verb IZAN, to which da and dira belong. For those who know some Spanish, we may say that in Gipuzkoan usage IZAN and EGON correspond quite closely to Castilian "SER" and "ESTAR" respectively. Thus, EGON is commonly used when the verb "to be" expresses where something or someone is; that is, when used with an inessive predicate (cf. 4:a). E.g. Zabaleta kalean dago "It is in Zabaleta Street" (27), San Franciscoa daude "They are in San Francisco" (29), Non dago zure ostatu? "Where is your hotel?" (26), Zure aita eta ama non daude? "Where are your father and mother?" (28).

c. EGON is also used, like Spanish "ESTAR", in predicates expressing a state, rather than a quality, for which IZAN is used (like Spanish "SER"), in Gipuzkoan usage. While IZAN often has as its complement a predicate adjective (2:a, 3:1), the complement that expresses a state is frequently adverbial in character in Basque, even though it may translate an English adjective. Such adverbs do not take the ordinary article, and are invariable for number. Adverbial complements of EGON include ondo well, good (27), beteta full (2), nola? how?, euskaraz in Basque, bakarrrik alone, lasai calm, unbothered.
f. We have already seen joango naiz da/gara/zara/zarete/dira 1'll/he'll/ we'll/you'll sg./you'll pl./they'll go; storrisko naiz/... 1'll/...
come (2:6); and pozten naiz da/gara/zara/zarete/dira I'm/he's/we're/
you're sg./you're pl./they're glad. We may now add: bizi naiz I
live, bizi da he, she, it lives, bizi gara we live, bizi zara you
(sg.) live, bizi zarete you (pl.) live, bizi dira they live. "Do
you live?": bizi (al) zara? "I do not live": ez naiz bizi. "I do
not live in California": Ez naiz Californian bizi. Similarly, "I
will not go": ez naiz joango, etc., etc.

g. We have already met the conjugated forms dut and duzu (see 3:d) in
the expressions nahi dut/duzu, ikusi dut/duzu, bukatu dut/duzu, to
which we can add tuste dut/... 1/... think (4, 32) and ikasi dut/...
I've/... or I/... Learned (19, 20, 33, 34, 35). Let us also learn
the paradigm of dut for the different persons of the subject:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Person 1</th>
<th>(nik)</th>
<th>dut</th>
<th>[det], [e-]</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>(Person 2, male)</td>
<td>(hik)</td>
<td>duk</td>
<td>[dek], [e-]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(Person 2, fem.)</td>
<td>(hik)</td>
<td>dun</td>
<td>[den], [e-]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Person 3</td>
<td></td>
<td>du</td>
<td>[du], [e-]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Person 4</td>
<td>(guk)</td>
<td>dugu</td>
<td>[deyu], [dey], [e-]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Person 5</td>
<td>(zuk)</td>
<td>duzu</td>
<td>[desu], [e-]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Person 5'</td>
<td>(zuek)</td>
<td>duzue</td>
<td>[desue], [desue], [e-]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Person 6</td>
<td></td>
<td>dute</td>
<td>[dute], [du], [e-]</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

For example: gorria nahi du "he wants a rose" (4), Californian ikasi
du "he's learned in California" (34), zer nahi dugu? "what do we
want?" (3), bukatu dugu "we've finished" (38).

h. Notice also forms of the verb expressing "to know" (know something,
or know how to do something): guti dakit "I know little" = "I don't
know much" (32), ez dakit "I don't know" (43), euskara ez dakitzu "you
know Basque", "you speak Basque" (17), etc. As you may have guessed,
this verb has the same person suffixes as dut:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Person 1</th>
<th>(nik)</th>
<th>dakit</th>
<th>&quot;(I) know&quot;</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>(Person 2, male)</td>
<td>(hik)</td>
<td>dakik</td>
<td>&quot;(thou) knowest&quot;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(Person 2, fem.)</td>
<td>(hik)</td>
<td>dakin</td>
<td>&quot;(thou) knowest&quot;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Person 3</td>
<td></td>
<td>daki</td>
<td>&quot;(he, she) knows&quot;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Person 4</td>
<td>(guk)</td>
<td>dakigu</td>
<td>&quot;(we) know&quot;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Person 5</td>
<td>(zuk)</td>
<td>dakizu</td>
<td>&quot;(you) know&quot;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Person 5'</td>
<td>(zuek)</td>
<td>dakizue</td>
<td>&quot;(you) know&quot;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Person 6</td>
<td></td>
<td>dakite</td>
<td>&quot;(they) know&quot;</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Subjects of this verb take the suffix -k (see 3:e).
DRILLS

Drill 1:  Non dago zure aita?  E.g.
Btxe batean dago.  
Taberna batean dago.
7. Ostatu  8. Taberna.

Drill 2:  Non daude zure aita eta ama?  E.g.
Donostia + Donostiam daude. 
Gros + Grozen daude.

Drill 3:  Non bizi zara?  E.g.
California + Californian bizi naiz.
New York + New Yorker bizi naiz.

Drill 4:  Make these sentences plural, e.g.
Mendia berdea da + Mendiak berdeak dira.
Mendiak lasai dago + Mendiak lasai daude.

Drill 5:  Make the above sentences negative, e.g.
Mendia berdea da + Mendia ez da berdea.
Mendiak lasai dago + Mendia ez dago lasai.

Drill 6:  Fill in the required conjugated form, e.g.
Ni hor bizi + Ni hor bizi naiz.
Nik hori nahi + Nik hori nahi dut.

Drill 7:  Make the sentences obtained in the previous drill negative, 
  e.g.
Ni ho bizi naiz.  +  Ni ez naiz hor bizi.
Nik hori nahi dut.  +  Nik ez dut hori nahi.
UNIT FOUR: SECOND LESSON

GRAMMAR

41 THE ABSOLUTIVE AND INESSIVE CASES

The inessive (1:a-c) is an example of what is called a case. Cases express different relationships that a noun phrase may be subject to—such as the relationship of "place where", expressed by the inessive—and in Basque the noun phrase adopts various suffixes according to its case. For example, as we have seen, in the inessive case Donostia takes the suffix -n, Gros takes the suffix -en, and when the last word in the noun phrase is the determiner bat, this takes the suffix -ean. Below we shall see that there are other inessive endings too. A case is usually translated into English by a preposition; we have seen, for example, that the inessive is normally equivalent to in, on or at.

Many Indo-European languages, including Latin, Greek, Russian, German and even Old English, have case systems. However, these work in a rather different way from the Basque system. In Basque, there is a single case mark corresponding to each noun phrase, and this mark is placed at the very end of the noun phrase. If the noun phrase consists of a single word, the case suffix is of course applied to that word: Donostia-n, Gros-en. Many noun phrases in Basque end in a determiner (see 3:1); then the case suffix will be added to the determiner. This is the case of ostatu bat-ean. But the last word of a noun phrase may also be a common noun or an adjective, e.g. zein? "which hotel?": zein ostatu-tan? "in (or at) which hotel?" (-tan is another form of the inessive suffix).

The case mark must often be added to a word that already carries the suffix of the article (see 1:1 and 3:1), as for example if we wish to say "in the Old Part" ("the Old Part" is Parte Zaharr-a), or "in the towns" ("the towns" is herri-ak). In such cases the article and the case mark combine to form a new suffix which contains both elements together, as in Parte Zaharr-ean "in the Old Part"; herri-eta "in the towns".

Thus for each case it is necessary to learn various endings. There are numerous cases in Basque, and they can be variously classified; but we may reduce them to a system of ten basic cases. These will appear one by one in the next few lessons.
The first case, called the absolutive (some people call it the nominative), is the one we have been using exclusively in the first three units. It can also be called the zero case, since it is characterized by having no special case mark, and it is used when no other case is particularly required, such as in the subjects of intransitive verbs, in complements of the verb IZAN "to be", and in direct objects. We also use the absolutive case to mention something in isolation. Proper names, pronouns, determiners and common nouns or adjectives without the article take no ending when they are in the absolutive: Mikel, mi, bat, ostatu, txiki. If they have the singular or plural article, this takes the form -a, -ak: ostatu-a, herri-ak, Parte Zaharr-a. Hau, hori, hura, hauek, horiek, haiek are absolutive forms of the demonstratives.

We shall now set out the various endings that the inessive case can take. We shall consider these in three parts: (1) with proper names; (2) with common nouns and adjectives; (3) with determiners and pronouns.

We must frequently distinguish between stems ending in a vowel and those ending in a consonant. For proper names, for example, the inessive suffix is -an for vowel stems and -en for consonant stems (4:a).

The situation for common nouns and adjectives is more complicated, since they have three sets of endings, depending on whether the noun or adjective has (a) no article, (b) the singular ordinary article, or (c) the plural ordinary article attached. We shall consider situation (a) last, since it is more common for an article to be present.

The forms of the suffix with the singular ordinary article (the "inessive singular", for short) are: with vowel stems, -an; with consonant stems, -ean. E.g. kale-an "in the street", mendi-an "on the mountain", itsaso-an "at sea", ostatu-an "at the hotel"; zuhaitz-ean "in the tree", lan-ean "at work", Parte Zaharr-ean "in the Old Part", ardo beltz-ean "in the red wine", etc.

In stems ending in the vowel -o, this is dropped when the ending -an is added (compare 1:1): tabern-an "in the bar". Words ending in a diphthong in -el (-el, -el, -el) are treated as vowel stems: mahai-an "at the table, on the table". On the contrary, those ending in -ou or -eu are regarded as consonantal; thus, gau-ean "in the night", "at night".

With the plural article (the "inessive plural"), the ending is -etan whatever the stem: kale-etan "in the streets", mendi-etan "on the mountains", baso-etan "in the
woods", ostitau- etan "in the hotels", zuhaitz- etan "in the
trees", toki zaharr- etan "in old places", mahai- etan "at
or on the tables", gau- etan "at nights", etc.
Once again, final -a of the stem is lost upon adding
- etan: tabern- etan "in the bars".
The inessive suffix in common nouns and adjectives
without an article (the "inessive inarticulate")
has the form -tan following a vowel, - etan following a
consonant. Thus there is formal ambiguity in consonant
stems between the plural and inarticulate suffixes. Examples:
zein kale- tan "in which street?", zentat mendi- tan?
"on how many mountains?", bi ostitau- tan "at two hotels",
lau tabern- tan "in four bars", zein zuhaitz- etan? "in
which tree?", zer toki zaharr- etan? "in what old place(s)?",
etc.
As always, final diphthongs in o are taken to be vocalic;
those in u consonantal: zentat mahai- tan? "at how many tables?",
zein gau- etan? "in how many nights?".
Most determiners and pronouns take the inarticulate
case suffixes of common nouns, i.e. in the inessive
case -(e)tan: asko- tan, guti- tan, zein- etan, zentat- etan,
bi- tan, hiru- tan, lau- etan, hau- etan, hamarr- etan, hamaika-
tan, hogeit- tan, etc. Inessive forms of the personal pro-
nouns (ni- tan "in me", etc.) exist, but are not widely used,
as will be seen in a later unit.
Words that form the inessive otherwise can be
called irregular. Irregular determiners and pronouns, then,
include: bat, batzuek, zer and the demonstratives:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Absolutive: bat</th>
<th>Inessive: batcane [bat'e (e)n] or batetan</th>
<th>batzu (e) k or batzu (e) tan</th>
<th>zer</th>
<th>zertan</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Absolutive: hau</td>
<td>Inessive: honetan [on(e)'tan]</td>
<td>hori</td>
<td>hura</td>
<td>hortan</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Absolutive: hauetan</td>
<td>Inessive: hauetan</td>
<td>horietan</td>
<td>haietan</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Note that in the singular demonstratives, the stem changes
in oblique (non- absolutive) cases: from hau to hon-; from hori to
horr-; from hura to har-. In zer (and also in hura) it is noteworthy
that - tan occurs after the letter r. Finally, in bat and batzuek,
there is vacillation between the use of the inarticulate suffix (bat-
etan, batzu- tan), which can be considered the more literary usage,
and the use of the singular or plural suffix respectively (bat- ean,
batzu- etan), which are more popular.
To sum up the general pattern:
USES OF THE INESSIVE: We have already said above that the principal use of the inessive case is to express "place where", as in most of the examples given above; in this use (and others too) it commonly translates English in, on or at. The following are some of the other functions of this case:

Time when. E.g. arratsaldetan "in the afternoon", gauz hean "in the evening, at night", ordu honetan "at this time", zer ordutan? "at what time?", bostetan "at five o'clock", etc. The inessive suffix with times may be singular (ordu batean), plural (ordubietan, hiruretan, zortzi t'erdi etan) or inarticulate (bostak laurden guti(ago)tan), in accordance with the form of the absolutive expression.

State or activity. E.g. lo-tan "asleep", lan-can "at work, working", hizkot-an "in conversation, talking", etc.

Woner. E.g. era honetan "in this manner".

Time in life. E.g. uma-tan "in childhood", gazte-tan "in youth".

It may have been noted that in some of the above examples a noun phrase is found in the inessive with no determiner, in contradiction to the general rule given in 3:2. This is a peculiar characteristic of the inessive and certain other cases. Other such expressions include: su-tan "in the fire", ur-etaan "in the water", oguzki-tan "in the sun", meza-tan "at mass". There is no strict rule to explain these forms without a determiner; they must be learned individually as they arise.

VOCABULARY

aita n. father
ama n. mother
balkarrik adv. only; alone
'bonetan adv. really, honestly
be'teta adv. full
bi'zi naiz I live
dakit I know
Es'tatu Ba'tuak n.pl. the United States
han adv. (over) there
heimen adv. here

hor adv. there
ikasi dut I have learned, I learned
kla'se or klase n. class
'nola adv. how?
onn [mun] adv. where?
o's'tatu n. (small) hotel, inn
pixka bat ['pikxa(8a)] dt. a little
'tori int. here (you are)!, take this!
'tuste dut I think, I believe
EXERCISES

Exercise 1:
1. In San Sebastian. 2. In Bakersfield. 3. In the Old Part. 4. In the Black Sea. 5. In your name. 6. In the wood. 7. On the green hill. 8. In half an hour. 9. In the United States. 10. In the names.

Exercise 2:

Exercise 3:
1. In the afternoon. 2. On that day. 3. Some nights. 4. At this hour. 5. Here and now. 6. At four o'clock. 7. At ten thirty. 8. At six twenty-five. 9. At five forty-five. 10. At seven forty.

Exercise 4:

Exercise 5:
1. Hey! Excuse me! Where is this place, please? 2. That's in this street. A little further on (Ourrego). Look: it's there. 3. Thank you very much. See you later! 4. Hi. What do you want? A wine? Here you are. 5. In these villages they know Basque. They are very Basque here. 6. I'm really glad. —So am I! 7. How many children will come in the afternoon? —Forty. 8. Will the boys go? —No: they don't want [to]. Only the girls will go. 9. Hello; I live in the Old Part; and I know Basque. —Great! 10. I don't want much wine. (lit. "I want little wine.")

KEY

1.

2.
3.
eta hogeltabostetan. 9. Sel(r)ak laurden gutitan. 10. Zortzak
hoger gutitan.

4.
bizi naiz. 4. Nk etxeak Parte Zaharrean ikusi dut. 5. Zeln herri-
—Ondo. Gero arte. 7. Nere alta itsasoa dago. 8. Neska hari bi

5.
1. Adizu! Barkatu! Non dogo tok; hau, mesedez? 2. Hort kale honetan
hauetan euskara dokitze. Dso euskaldunak dira heman. 6. Benetan
poten naiz. —II ere bali! 7. Zanbat une etorriko dira arratsaldean?
—Berrogei. 8. Mutilak joango (al) dira? —Ez; ez dute nahi. Neska
bakerrik joango dira. 9. Kaix; Parte Zaharrean bizi naiz; eta euskara
dokitze. —Ederki! 10. Ardo guti nahi dut.
UNIT FOUR: THIRD LESSON

NUMBERS (ctd.)

berrogeita'bat, berrogeita'bi        forty-one, forty-two
berrogeita'hiru...                forty-three...
berrogeita'hama'mar                fifty
berrogeita'hama'maika             fifty-one
berrogeita'hama'mabi               fifty-two
berrogeita'hama'mahiru...          fifty-three...
hiruro'goi                       sixty
hirurogeita'bat, hirurogeita'bi       sixty-one, sixty-two
hirurogeita'hama'mar              seventy
hirurogeita'hama'maika            seventy-one
laurogei [l'aro'vo']              eighty
laurogeita'hama'mar               ninety
chun [chun]                        a hundred

VOCABULARY

hiruro'goi       sixty
laurogei [l'aro'vo']  eighty
chun [chun]            a hundred

PRACTICE

Practice 1: Zemabat urte dituzu? (How old are you?)
1. 22 urte ditut. 2. 30 urte ditut. 3. 32 urte ditut. 4. 35 urte ditut. 5. 40 urte ditut. 6. 50 urte ditut. 7. 43 urte ditut. 8. 56 urte ditut. 9. 61 urte ditut. 10. 71 urte ditut.

Practice 2: Zemabat da, mesedez?
1. 25 peseta ['pesta]. 2. 42 pta. 3. 51 pta. 4. 60 pta. 5. 75 pta. 6. 80 pta. 7. 85 pta. 8. 90 pt. 9. 99 pta. 10. 100 pta.
UNIT FIVE: FIRST LESSON

CONVERSATION

(Ha'marrak dira, eta gure la'gunak o'rain dik ka'lean daude.)

ITOZIAR: Go'zeak nago.
IÑAKI: Bai eta [baita] 'mi ere.
JOSEBA: 'Ni ere go'ze naiz.

XABIER: A'faltzeko or'dua da eta [bate].
IÑAKI: 'Zen e'gingo dugu ['gesu]? E'txera?
ITOZIAR: Ala he'men a'falduko dugu?
JOSEBA: Baina non?
ITOZIAR: Bada [ba:], ez 'dakit...

XABIER: Ka'le hone'tan ba'dago 'toki bat...
JOSEBA: Ba'dago, 'bai. 'Ona 'gainera.
ITOZIAR: 'Joango al gara? 'Nahi duzue [gesuce]?
JOSEBA: 'Ni behintzat a'faltzeko 'prest nago ['prefnayo].
ITOZIAR: 'Zen 'uste duzue?

XABIER: 'Goazen or'duan bada.
MIKEL: 'Goazen, 'bai.
ITOZIAR: E'derki bada.
IÑAKI: 'Ea, 'goazen bada!

XABIER: Be'gira, he'men dago to'kia. I'rekita dago.
IÑAKI: Jen'de as'ko dago ba'rruan.
JOSEBA: 'Goazen ba'rurrara.

(Ba'rruan.)

IÑAKI: He'men ez 'dago [es'tayo] 'mahairik libre. Dena be'teta dago.
JOSEBA: 'Ez, ez 'dago to'kirik.
XABIER: 'Bai, ba'dago. Ba'dago 'mahai bat 'hor, be'gira.
ITOZIAR: 'Bai, 'libre dago.
MIKEL: 'Goazen 'mahaira.

IÑAKI: Eta Jo'sebea? 'Non dago?
MIKEL: Ez 'dakit bada... [es'takipa]
XABIER: E Jo'sebea! Non 'zaude?
JOSEBA: He'men nago!
XABIER: E'torri! 'Mahai bat dago he'men. Elseri.

('Mahaian e'serita daude.)

JOSEBA: Ne'katuta nago o'rain.
MIKEL: 'Ni ere 'bai.
IÑAKI: 'Zen dago a'faltzeko he'men?
XABIER: Ez 'dakit. O'rain [-ny] i'kusiko dugu.

ZERBITZARIA: Gau 'on. [ga'xon]

ITZIAR: Ber'din. 'Zer 'dago a'faltzeko?

ZERBITZARIA: 'Hastecko entsa'la'da eta a'rrainzopa. 'Gero txu'leta, le'gatz edo bi'xigua.

MIKEL: 'Zer dira horiek [o'yen]? Ez dut [estet] u'lertu ho'ri.

IÑAKI: Txu'leta ha'ragia da. Le'gatz eta bi'xigua a'rrain 'motak dira.

ITZIAR: 'Nik entsa'lada eta txu'leta nahi dut.

XABIER: 'Nik ere 'bai.

JOSEBA: 'Nik ez dut ha'ragirik 'nahi. Le'gatz a'falduko dut. Eta zuk?

IÑAKI: 'Nik 'berriz ez dut a'rrainik 'nahi. Txu'leta o'nak daude he'men, gainera. 'Nik txu'leta. 'Zuk 'Mikel?

MIKEL: 'Nik a'rrainzopa, eta 'gero txu'leta.

ITZIAR: Or'duan, e'karri entsa'lada han'di bat eta a'rrainzopa bat; 'gero, 'lau txu'leta eta le'gatz bat, me'sedez.

ZERBITZARIA: Ents'a'lada han'dia, a'rrainzopa 'bat, le'gatz 'bat eta 'lau txu'leta. Eta e'datoko? Ar'doi?

XABIER: 'Zer, 'beltza?

BESTEAK: Bai, bai.


Translation:

(It's ten o'clock, and our friends are still out ("In the street").

It. I'm starving.

Th. So am I.

J. I'm hungry too.

X. It's dinner time, so....

In. What shall we do? Go home?

It. Or shall we have dinner here?

J. But where?

It. Well, I don't know....

X. In this street there's a place....

J. Yes, there is. A good one, too.

It. Shall we go? Do you want to?

J. I'm certainly ready for dinner.

It. What do you think?

X. Well, let's go then.

M. Yes, let's go.

It. Okay, then.

In. Come on, let's go then!

X. Look, here's the place. It's open.

In. There are a lot of people inside.

J. Let's go inside.

(Inside.)

In. There isn't any table free here. Everything's full.

J. No, there isn't any room.

X. Yes, there is. There's a
In. The chop is meat. Hake and sea bream are types of fish.
It. I want salad and a chop.
X. So do I.
J. I don't want any meat. I'm going to have hake. How about you?
In. Well I don't want fish. And there are good chops here too. Chop for me. You, Mikel?
M. For me, fish soup, and then a chop.
It. So, bring a big salad and one fish soup; then, four chops and one hake, please.
Waiter: A large salad, one fish soup, one hake and four chops.
And to drink? Wine?
X. What, red wine?
Others: Yes, yes.
Waiter: Red wine. Very well.

Language Notes

a.
Third-person forms of EGON may be used to express existence: dago "there is", dixe "there are". E.g. Jende asko dago barruan (20) "There are a lot of people inside" (note that jende people is singular), Hemen ez dago mahairik libre (23) "There is no table free here", Ez dago tokirik (25) "There isn't any room", etc.; Hiru mahai dixe "There are three tables", etc.

b.
Note the suffix -(r)ik (-ik after a consonant, including the diphthongs -ou, -eu; -rik after a vowel) in Hemen ez dago mahairik libre (23) "There isn't any table free here", "There is no table free here"; Ez dago tokirik (25) "There isn't any room", "There's no room"; Nik ez dut haragirik nahi (49) "I don't want any meat"; Nik berriz ez dut arralnik nahi (51) "I on the other hand don't want any fish", "I don't want fish". From these examples one can deduce that -(r)ik is close in meaning to English any. Both any and -(r)ik are used to refer to something indefinite: "I don't want the meat" refers to
some specific meat in particular, but "I don't want any meat" or simply "I don't want meat" refers to any and all meat, to meat in general. In Basque, "I don't want the meat" is Ez dut haragia nahi, with the ordinary article -a; "I don't want any meat" or "I don't want meat" is Ez dut haragirik nahi, with the partitive article, as we shall call -(r)ik. All the examples of the partitive article given so far are negative sentences. Like English any, it is affirmative sentences. We do not say "I want any meat, please"; and if we say "I want meat", we mean "I want some meat". In Basque this will of course be Haragia nahi dut. But some sentences are neither affirmative nor negative, such as questions and certain subordinate clauses; in these too, any and -(r)ik may be found: Haragirik nahi duzu? "Do you want (any) meat?", haragirik nahi baduzu "if you want (any) meat", etc. Notice that even if "any" is omitted from the English sentence, -(r)ik is not omitted in the Basque. In English, any may accompany singular or plural nouns: "There isn't any meat"; "There aren't any tables." However, the partitive article in Basque always has the same form, and grammatically this is always singular, even if the English translation is plural: Ez dago haragirik; Ez dago mahairik (dago, not daude!). The partitive article is also special in only having the absolutive case; for any other case, a different expression must be used. For example, there is no inessive form of mahairik, as there is of mahuria and mahaiak. The suffix -(r)ik has various other uses in Basque beside that described here; they will be studied later.

**DRILLS**


**Drill 2:** Make the above sentences negative, telling what there is none of in the town, e.g. Jendee + Ez dago jenderik herrian. Tabernak + Ez dago tabernarik herrian. Emakume asko + Ez dago emakumerik herrian. Etxe zuri bat + Ez dago etxe zuririk herrian.
Drill 3: Make the following sentences negative, e.g.
Ardoa nahi dut. → Ez dut ardorik nahi.
Etxe bat nahi dut. → Ez dut etxerik nahi.
Ardo beltza nahi dut. → Ez dut ardo beltzik nahi.
4. Lagun berri bat nahi dut. 5. Baserri handi bat nahi dut. 6.
Etxe zuri bat nahi dut. 7. Neska bat nahi dut. 8. Ardo pixka bat
UNIT FIVE: SECOND LESSON

GRAMMAR

1. THE VERB EGN

In 1:2 we saw the present tense of IZAN, "to be". We shall place the forms of IZAN next to those of EGN now for comparison:

Person 1 (ni)  IZAN: naiz  EGN: nago
(Person 2 (hi)  haiz  hago)
Person 3  da  dago
Person 4 (gu)  gara  gaude
Person 5 (zu)  zara  zauade
Person 6" (zuek)  zaretze  zaudete
Person 6  dira  daude

EGN thus has a singular stem -ago and a plural stem -auade. -Ago can be broken down into -a- and -GO-; the latter is the root of the verb, and is also present in the infinitive e-GO-n. We can also observe in the paradigm of EGN, of course, the personal prefixes n-, h-, g-, z-; and in the third person singular and plural, d-.

Negative forms: ez nago, ez hago, ez daudo, ez gaude, ez zaude, ez zaudete, ez daude; these undergo the same phonological changes as IZAN (and all other conjugated verbs): see 1:2. There also exist interrogative forms such as az dago or dago, etc.

The original meaning of the verb EGN is "stay, remain, be (in a state, place, etc.)" in a more restricted sense than our "to be" (IZAN). It is still used in this sense in northern dialects: bakarrik dago "he remains alone", klasean nago "I remain in class", etc. Even in Gipuzkoan, the imperative Egn! means "Stay!", "Wait!", etc. But on the whole, in Gipuzkoan and other southern dialects EGN has passed over to the sense of "to be" expressed in Castilian and other Iberian languages by estar: Nola zaude? "How are you?", Non gaude? "Where are we?", etc. (see 4:d,e); it is also used to translate "there is", "there are" (see 5:a).

However, the use of IZAN in these senses is not altogether rejected in Gipuzkoan: one may say Ez da etxean "He is not at home" and Ez da mahairik hemen "There is no table here", although in this dialect the commoner forms are Ez dago etxean and Ez dago mahairik hemen. There would even seem to be a subtle semantic difference.
In 1:d-g we made some brief observations on word order in simple sentences. We saw there that affirmative sentences often take the form:

**SUBJECT + COMPLEMENT + VERB**

e.g. Hau + Monte Igeldo + da; that yes/no questions conserve the same order, although the conjugated verb form may optionally be marked as interrogative:

**SUBJECT + COMPLEMENT + (INT. MARKER) + VERB**

e.g. Hau + Monte Igeldo + (al) + da?; that in question-word questions, the question word is placed before the verb:

(X) + QUES. WORD + VERB + (Y)

e.g. Zer + da + hau? (Hau + zer + da? is also possible); and finally, that in negative sentences the order is different from affirmative ones, the commonest pattern being:

**SUBJECT + EZ + CONJ. FORM + COMPLEMENT + (X)**

e.g. Hau + ez + da + Monte Igeldo.

In a discussion of Basque word order (which is radically different from the word order of English and the better-known European languages), the verb plays a key part. Not only can the position of the verb itself vary; the placement of other elements is often defined with reference to the position of the verb. But as will be seen more clearly in later units, all Basque verb forms do not have the same structure or syntactic status. There are of course finite and nonfinite forms; and finite tenses may be simple, compound or periphrastic; finally, there are compound verbs too (as distinct from compound tenses of simple verbs). Thus early in the course, a detailed study of the syntactic behavior of each of these forms would be pointless; nonetheless, some pointers on word order in the Basque sentence are necessary for the beginner.

A few words about the verb, therefore. The distinction between conjugated and unconjugated forms exists just as in English, where we have conjugated forms such as am, is, are, was, were, go, goes, went, etc., and unconjugated forms such as being, been, to be, going, gone, etc. In Basque, naiz, da, dira, nago, dago, dut, duzu, etc. are conjugated forms; izan, egon, etorriko, joango, pozen, bukatu, etc. are unconjugated.
In Basque as in English, a finite verb form may be simple or compound. A simple finite form consists of a single element: a conjugated form, e.g. I am American, I finished the wine, and in Basque, Amerikanoa naiz, Mahai bat dago, etc. A compound finite form consists of at least two elements: a conjugated form, which we also call an auxiliary, and an unconjugated form, which is sometimes referred to as the main verb, e.g. I am going home, I have finished the wine, and in Basque, Lagun batzuek etorriko dira, Ardoa bukatu dut, and so on. Nahi dut is also a compound finite form, although in fact its structure is somewhat different from that of bukatu dut.

In the formula for affirmative sentences given above (SUBJECT + COMPLEMENT + VERB), "VERB" refers to any kind of finite verb, whether simple, compound or periphrastic. In Nau + Monte Igeldo + da, the verb, da, is simple. But in Nik + Monte Igeldo + ikusi dut, the verb, ikusi dut, is compound. In any case, it is placed in these examples after the complement.

We can also note that the internal order of the compound verb is here:
UNCONJ. FORM + CONJ. FORM

in other words:
MAIN VERB + AUXILIARY

i.e. ikusi + dut.

Likewise in the formula for choice questions ((X) + QUES. WORD + VERB + (Y)), the question word must precede the verb, but this may be either simple or compound: Zer + da + hau? has a simple verb, da; but Zer + nahi dugu + guk? has a compound form, nahi dugu. We also see that here too the internal order of the compound verb is the same as in affirmative sentences.

In yes/no questions too (SUBJECT + COMPLEMENT + (INT. MARKER) + VERB), the finite verb may be simple or compound: Hau + Monte Igeldo + da?; Mikelek + gorria + nahi du? However, it should be noted that when the interrogative marker appears, it is the conjugated form that is preceded by al (or takes the suffix -a, in other dialects): al da, nahi + al du.

But now we come to the negative pattern SUBJECT + ez + CONJ. FORM + COMPLEMENT + (X). Here the element that is preceded by ez and which, unlike in non-negative sentences, appears before rather than after the complement, is the conjugated form only. With a simple finite verb,
the conjugated form constitutes the whole verb: Hau + Monte Igeldo + da becomes Hau + ez + da + Monte Igeldo. But if the finite verb is compound, the conjugated form means the auxiliary only: Nik + Monte Igeldo + ikusi dut becomes Nik + ez + dut + Monte Igeldo + ikusi. The auxiliary, dut, "moves" towards the beginning of the sentence, but ikusi, unconjegated, gets "left behind". In this case, dut is the conjugated form, Monte Igeldo is the complement, and ikusi is "X".

In this unit's Conversation, there appear verb forms with a prefix ba-, which cannot be translated into English: Kale honetan badago toki bat (10), Badago mahai bat hor (26), etc. In these examples ba- is prefixed to dago, but it may also be added to other verb forms, such as in Badakit hori "I know that". What is the function of this ba-?

First, remark that this ba- (for there is also another ba-, a conditional marker, that will be studied later) is only prefixed to simple finite forms. So not only can it not be used with an unconjegated form like ikusi or nahi; it cannot even be added to the auxiliary forms that accompany these (in normal circumstances; exceptions exist).

Secondly, this ba- is incompatible with the negative particle ez; thus it can only occur in non-negative sentences. However, these may be yes/no questions: Badaki hori?, or, with the interrogative marker, Ba al dakiz hori? "Do you know that?" (with particles like al, we write ba separately). Ba- is also incompatible with question-word questions such as Zer dakizu? "What do you know?"

The explanation of these restrictions, and of the function of ba- (in general terms at least) is as follows. Normally in Basque a conjugated verb form may not be the first word of a sentence. We can say Hau Monte Igeldo da or Monte Igeldo da hau "This is Monte Igeldo", but we cannot begin the sentence with Da..., because it is a conjugated form. On the other hand, not only can we say Nik Monte Igeldo ikusi dut and Monte Igeldo ikusi dut nik, but also Ikusi dut nik Monte Igeldo etc., since the conjugated form, dut, is still not at the beginning of the sentence; it is "covered" by ikusi. But in a non-negative sentence it is difficult (not impossible) to separate ikusi from dut; there is a special bond between the conjugated form and the word that precedes it.

There is likewise a bond between a simple finite verb and the word or phrase that precedes it. So in Hau Monte Igeldo da, the bond is between the verb and its
complement Monte Igeldo. In the "standard" formula we have given for affirmative sentences, the bond is always with the complement, for this is in practice the most usual situation, though not the only one.

It is now clear why da cannot begin the sentence: it would then have no "bond". But what is the function of this bond?

Typically the word that precedes the verb will be the focus of the sentence; that is, it contains the principal information that we are essentially communicating. In Hau Monte Igeldo da, we are saying that this is Monte Igeldo and not something else: "Monte Igeldo" is the focus. But if we wished to say that this, and not something else, was Monte Igeldo, we would say Hau da Monte Igeldo or Monte Igeldo hau da, with hau "this", as focus, preceding the verb (the position of the other element, here "Monte Igeldo", is much freer: if at the beginning, it is topicalized—another grammatical concept: if at the end, it is given less importance, as if it were taken for granted that that was what we were talking about).

In a question-word question, it is the question word that is the focus, and must therefore precede the verb (see above).

Thus in Basque there is a special syntactic bond between the focus and the verb, which makes it difficult to separate these two elements, which typically have the order: FOCUS + VERB. Simplifying, we can say that the master rule of word order in Basque is:

(X) + FOCUS + VERB + (Y).

The application of the focus rule with simple finite verbs is total: such verbs (da, dago, dakit...) always form a bond with the preceding element, which will be the focus. With compound verb forms it also applies, though more loosely. So, in Nik Monte Igeldo ikusi dut, not only is there an automatic bond of dut with ikusi, as we have said, but the unit ikusi dut "I have seen" as a whole forms a secondary bond with the preceding Monte Igeldo, and it is this last that is probably the focus: "It was Monte Igeldo, not something else, that I saw."

To put "I" in focus ("It was I, and not someone else, who saw Monte Igeldo"), we would say: Nik ikusi dut Monte Igeldo, or Monte Igeldo nik ikusi dut.

However, this secondary bond with Monte Igeldo or nik and the consequent focusing on this element is
in fact optional; there may be no element specially focused on in the sentence, or else the focus may be on the verb itself; and in these circumstances we would still say Nik Monte Igeldo ikusi dut. Or again, if we want to put emphasis on the verb ikusi dut, we can put it at the beginning of the sentence, so that there is clearly no other word preceding it that can be the focus: Ikusi dut nik Monte Igeldo.

But with simple verb forms like dago, which form a stronger, automatic bond with the preceding word, this cannot be done. We may not begin the sentence with dago; and if it is in the middle or end of the sentence, it will always "bond" with the word that precedes it, making it the focus: Zer dago hemen? Mahai bat dago hemen.

What, then, if with a simple verb, there is no focus, or if the verb itself is the focus?

In negative sentences, the simple verb bonds with the negative particle ez, which can "cover" the verb from bonding with a preceding element. Thus in Hau ez da Monte Igeldo, hau needn't be, and probably isn't, the focus (in fact it is the topic!), for da is "covered" by the word ez. So strong is the bond formed with ez, that with a compound verb it neutralizes the bond between auxiliary and main verb, and usually separates the former from the latter (see above). Consequently, it is perfectly normal for the negative conjugated verb with ez to begin a sentence, as in Ez da hau Monte Igeldo, Ez dut nik Monte Igeldo ikusi. (In these sentences there is no topic.)

And if the verb is not negative? In that case a special particle can be used to "cover" a simple finite verb and stop it from bonding with the preceding element, and this is ba-. So, while in Mahai bat dago the focus is mahai bat ("What there is is a table"), in Mahai bat badago the element mahai bat is in fact the topic, and the sentence means "There is, indeed, a table." And since the verb is now "covered", it may be placed at the beginning of the sentence: Badago mahai bat.

This is the basic theory of word order of simple sentences in Basque. With the help of these notes, the student should try to master its principles by considering each sentence he encounters and asking why the words are ordered as they are. The rest is practice.

He will discover that there is also a process of lexicalization or stereotyping at play. Ba- seems to be added automatically or almost so to certain verbs, or to verbs used in certain senses; while with certain others, ba- is hardly ever found. This is easily learned by imitation.
VOCABULARY

ala cj. or (exclusive)
a`rrain [afai] n. fish
ba`rruan adv. inside
"behintzat adv. certainly; at least
bi`xigu n. sea bream
edo [e`do], [o] cj. or
c`gingo dut I will do, make
c`karri! bring!, give me!
entsal`lada n. salad
e`serita adv. sitting
g`gainera adv. furthermore
g`ero adv. later, then
go`se naiz I am hungry
go`seak nago I'm (very) hungry
han`di [amendi] adj. big, large, great
ha`ragi n. meat
i`kusiko dut I will see
irekita [i`rikita] adv. open
jen`de n. people
le`gatz n. hake
l`ibre adv., adj. free
mahai [maj] n. table
ne`katuta adv. tired
prest adv. ready
txi`leta n. chop

EXERCISES

Exercise 1: Analyze the word order in each sentence:
1. Itsasoa handia da. 2. Itsasoa ez da berdea. 3. Zer da berdea?

Exercise 2: Translate:
1. I'm hungry. 2. I'm very hungry. 3. I'm a little tired. 4. Are you ready? 5. It isn't late. The bars are open. 6. The people are sitting in the street. 7. Sit there. It's full inside. 8. Bring a table, please. 9. Are you okay? 10. This isn't bad. 11. I like the evening. 12. Besides, it's (Lit. "there's") a fine night. 13. Look over there! Who's [there]? It's (Lit. "they're") my friends. 14. At this time there's no coffee (ka`fe). 15. What shall we do then? 16. I don't know what. 17. Shall we do that, or shall we go? 18. Have a little wine! I don't want it! 19. What wine is this? 20. They're in Bilbao (`Bilbo) or Vitoria (Gas`teiz); I don't know where.
KEY

1. (This can also be used as an English-Basque translation exercise.)
   1. The ocean is big. 2. The ocean is not green. 3. What is green?
   4. The mountain is green. 5. The mountain is pleasant, furthermore.
   6. What is there on the mountain? 7. There’s a wood on the mountain.
   8. Where is the farm? 9. The farm is on the mountain. 10. Is San
   Sebastian in the mountains? 11. No, San Sebastian is not in the
   is not well. 14. I know Basque. 15. Do you know Basque? Yes, I
   know it. 16. Do you know Basque too? 17. Yes, I also know Basque.
   18. There are at least people inside here. 19. There’s a girl inside.
   20. Which is your child? That one is my child. 21. What have you
   seen? 22. I’ve seen the Old Part. 23. What shall we do? We’ll
   see the Old Part. 24. A guy is going to come. 25. He’ll come late.
   26. Have you finished (your) wine? 27. I haven’t finished (my) wine.
   28. We haven’t seen the ocean. 29. We’re going to see it now. 30.
   I’ve certainly seen the sea.

2.
   1. Gose naiz. 2. Goseak nogo. (Or: Oso gase naiz.) 3. Pliska bat
   nekotu nago. 4. Prent (ol) zauda? 5. Ez da berandu. Tabernak
   lekito daude. 6. Jendea kalean eserito dogo. 7. Jendea eserito
   dogo kalean. 7. Eseri hor. Barrakat beita dogo. 8. Ekarri nohal
   Hori eginha dugu, ala joango garo? 18. Tori ordo pliska bat; nik ez
   ez dokit non.
UNIT FIVE: THIRD LESSON

NUMBERS (ctd.)

ehun eta bat [eyunda'bat]  a hundred and one
ehun eta hamar [eyunda'mar]  a hundred and ten
ehun eta hogeitahamabi [eyunda-]  a hundred and thirty-two
berrehun [be'feun]  two hundred
berrehun eta bat [befeynda'bat]  two hundred and one
hiru'rehun  three hundred
laurehun [la'reun]  four hundred
bos'tehun  five hundred
sei'rehun  six hundred
zazpi'rehun  seven hundred
zortzi'rehun  eight hundred
bederatzi'rehun  nine hundred
mi'la  a thousand
bi mi'la  two thousand
hiru mi'la  three thousand
ehun mi'la  a hundred thousand
mi'loi  a million
bi mi'loi  two million

VOCABULARY

be'rehun  two hundred
hiru'rehun  three hundred
laurehun [la'reun]  four hundred
bos'tehun  five hundred
sei'rehun  six hundred
zazpi'rehun  seven hundred
zortzi'rehun  eight hundred
bederatzi'rehun  nine hundred
mila [mi'lya], [milya]  a thousand
mi'loi [mi'loji]  a million
bal'io du (it) costs, (it) is worth
ur'te year

PRACTICE

Practice 1: Zembat balio du? (How much does it cost?)
1. 200 pta.  2. 210 pta.  3. 300 pta.  4. 320 pta.  5. 400 pta.
6. 430 pta.  7. 500 pta.  8. 540 pta.  9. 600 pta.  10. 650 pta.
16. 980 pta.  17. 1000 pta.  18. 1090 pta.  19. 1500 pta.  20. 1900 pta.

Practice 2: Zer urtetan gaude? (What year is it?, lit. "What year are we in?") E.g. 1980 = Mi'a eta bederatzi'rehun eta laurehun.
1958.  15. 1936.
UNIT SIX: FIRST LESSON

STUDY TEXT

From here on, we shall not translate the study texts. After reading it through trying to understand as much as possible, the language notes and vocabulary that follow should be consulted.

1. San Sebastian's Donostiako Parte Zaharrean, merkatu handi bat dago. "Bretxa" deitzen da. Gauza asko saltzen dute han: frutak, barazkia, haragia, arraina...


11. See 6:00. IÑAKI: Iñaki! Kaixo mututu!
MIKEL: Aupa! Zertan zabiltza hemen? Nora zoaz?
IÑAKI: Merkatura noa. Gauza batzuek erostera. Eta zu nondik zato?
MIKEL: Orain nere klasetik nator.

12. To buy MIKEL: Zer ordutua da zure klasea?
IÑAKI: Bederatzietatik hamarretara.
MIKEL: Eta orain bukatu al duzu?
IÑAKI: Ez. Beste klase bat dago hamaika t'erdietan: hamaika t'erdietatik hamabila t'erdieta. Hamaika t'erdieta nere klasera joango naiz.

MIKEL: Ni orain merkatura noa. Gero, merkatutik etxera.
IÑAKI: Zein merkatutara zoaz?

11. Of the Old Part MIKEL: Parte Zaharreko merkatura noa. Nola deitzen da?
IÑAKI: Bretxa deitzen da. Ezagutzen al duzu?
Mikel: Ez, ez dut ezagutzen. Orain Bretxara
Joango naiz; hola ikusiko dut.

Iñaki: Ni ere hara joango naiz orain, etxa gero nere klasera.

Mikel: Ederki.
Iñaki: Etorri.

"The two, both Eta hola, biak elkarrekin doaz merkatura.

Language Notes

a. Merkatura to the market, klasera to the class, etxera to the house, home, Bretxara to the Breto are nouns in what we call the allative case, which expresses where to. Observe that it is also used in time expressions in conjunction with the ablative (see 6:b): bederatzietatik hazarretara from nine o'clock to ten o'clock (-etatik in the plural; see 6:3). The question word nor where to is the allative form of the adverb non (4:c). Han over there has the allative form hara.

b. Etxetik from the house, from home, klasetik from (the) class, merkatutik from the market are nouns in what we call the ablative case, which expresses where from. Note the time expression in conjunction with the allative (6:a): bederatzietatik hazarretara from nine o'clock to ten o'clock (-etatik in the plural; see 6:3). Nondik where from? is the ablative of non (4:c).

c. Doa (he, she, it) is going, goes; doaz (they) are going, go. These are simple finite forms (5:2) of the verb JOAN "to go"; you already know the future of this verb, joango naiz.

d. Dator (he, she, it) is coming, comes is simple finite form of the verb Etorri "to come"; whose future you have already learned (etorrikoko naiz). The plural form is datoaz (they) are coming, come.

e. Dabila is the third-person singular of another verb, IBIL, that has no exact English translation: (he, she, it) is, gets along, goes, goes about, etc. It conveys a general idea of activity or progress or movement. Kalez dabil "he's in the street (doing something or going somewhere)"; nor dabila hor? "who's there?", "who goes there?"; Parte Zaharrceen dabil "he's around the Old Part". The third-person plural is dabiltza.
In 6.c-e we have given the third-person forms only (singular and plural) of the simple present tense of three verbs, JOAN, ETOROI and IBILI. The full paradigms of these verbs will be given in 6:1-3; but in fact the other persons can be derived regularly from the third-person forms, as was the case with EKON (see 5:1). For person 1, which is singular, we replace d- with n- in the singular form given: 

\textit{nua} I'm going, \textit{nator} I'm coming, etc. Similarly, persons 4 and 5, which take the plural stem, are obtained by substituting g- and z- respectively for d- in the third-person plural form, e.g. \textit{zabiltza} you're going about etc., \textit{zoaz} you're going, \textit{zatoz} you're coming. The true second person plural (person 5') can be derived from person 5 by adding -te. With these observations you can deduce the whole present tense of the three verbs.

VOCABULARY

\begin{tabular}{ll}
\texttt{auto\textbackslash'buse} & n. bus \\
\texttt{b\textquoteleft botsea} & n. bag \\
\texttt{\textquoteleft deitzen} & n. I am called \\
\texttt{\textquoteleft denda} & n. store, shop \\
\texttt{e\textquoteleft karrekine} & [alk-] together \\
& entzu! listen! \\
\texttt{es\textquoteleft ku} & n. hand \\
\texttt{e\textquoteleft torri} & come! \\
\texttt{ezagutzen dut} & [e\textquoteleft saytsendet] I know, I am familiar with \\
\texttt{\textquoteleft fruta} & n. fruit \\
\texttt{\textquoteleft gauza} & n. thing
\end{tabular}

\begin{tabular}{ll}
\texttt{haiez} & their \\
\texttt{haren} & his, her, its \\
\texttt{hiz\textquoteright keta} & n. conversation, talk \\
\texttt{hun\textquoteleft dartza} & n. beach \\
\texttt{kaf\textquoteleft e} & n. coffee \\
\texttt{mer\textquoteright katu} & n. market \\
\texttt{nor} & pron. who?, whom? \\
\texttt{\textquoteleft oinez} & adv. on foot \\
\texttt{\textquoteleft plaza} & n. plaza; market place \\
\texttt{\textquoteleft saltzen dut} & I sell
\end{tabular}

1 In gauza and many other nouns whose stems end in the letter a (known as "organic a"), there is a colloquial tendency, especially strong in Gipuzkoa, to ignore this a and consider the stem to be, for example, 

gauz. Thus gauz-a, gauz-ak in any case (see 1:1), but colloquial 
gauz hat, in contrast to standard gauza bat; colloquial gauz-ik, 
in contrast to standard gauza-rik, and so on.

DRILLS

Learn the forms in this table before attempting the following drills:
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Absolutive</th>
<th>Inessive</th>
<th>Allative</th>
<th>Ablative</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>baserria</td>
<td>baserrian</td>
<td>baserrira</td>
<td>baserritik</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>basoa</td>
<td>basoa</td>
<td>basora</td>
<td>basotik</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Donostia</td>
<td>Donostian</td>
<td>Donostiara</td>
<td>Donostiatik</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>[do'nosti]</td>
<td>[do'nostin]</td>
<td>[do'nostira]</td>
<td>[do'nostitatik]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Estatu Batuak</td>
<td>Estatu</td>
<td>Batuetar</td>
<td>Batueteatik</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>etxea</td>
<td>etxean</td>
<td>etxera</td>
<td>etxetik</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>itsasoan</td>
<td>itsasoan</td>
<td>itsasora</td>
<td>itsasotik</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>kalea</td>
<td>klean</td>
<td>kalera</td>
<td>kaletik</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>klasean</td>
<td>klasean</td>
<td>klasera</td>
<td>klasetik</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>merkatua</td>
<td>merkatuan</td>
<td>merkatura</td>
<td>merkatutik</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Parte Zaharra</td>
<td>Parte</td>
<td>Zaharrere</td>
<td>Zaharretik</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Note: The explanation of the colloquial forms of Donostia is to be found in the observation on gauza in the note following the Vocabulary.

Drill 1:  Respond as in the examples:
* Iñaki klasean al dago?
  + Bai, Iñaki klasean dabil.
* Emakumeak merkatuan al daude?
  + Bai, emakumeak merkatuan dabiltza.

Drill 2:  Using the same stimulus sentences, respond as follows:
* Iñaki klasean al dago?
  + Iñaki klasea dos orain.
* Emakumeak merkatuan al daude?
  + Esakumeak merkatura doaz orain.

Drill 3:  Using the same stimulus sentences, respond as follows:
* Iñaki klasean al dago?
  + Iñaki klasotik dator orain.
* Emakumeak merkatuan al daude?
  + Esakumeak merkatutik datoaz orain.

Drill 4:  Complete these sentences in the manner shown:
Mikel etxera....
  + Mikel etxera doa.
Gure aita itsasoan....
  + Gure aita itsasoan dabil.
Heskamutilek (= the boys and girls) Donostiatik....
  + Heskamutilek Donostiatik datoaz.

Drill 5:  Make negative sentences from the above, e.g.
Mikel etxera....
  → Mikel ez doa etxera.
Gure aita itsasoan....
  → Gure aita ez dabil itsasoan.
Neska-mutilak Donostiatik....
  → Neska-mutilak ez datoz Donostiatik.

Drill 6:  From the same stimuli, produce questions containing non, nora or nondik, and answer; e.g.
Mikel etxera....
  → Nora doa Mikel? Etxera doa.
Gure aita itsasoan....
  → Non dabil zuen aita? Itsasoan dabil.
Neska-mutilak Donostiatik....
  → Nondik datoz neska-mutilak? Donostiatik dator.
UNIT SIX: SECOND LESSON

GRAMMAR

11 THE VERB JOAN

See also 6:c and 6:f. The present simple tense of JOAN (root -OA-) is as follows:

Person 1  noa
(Person 2  hoa)
Person 3  doa
Person 4  goaz
Person 5  zoaz
Person 5' zoazte
Person 6  doaz

The central meaning of JOAN is "go", i.e. a directional movement that is not towards the speaker (for we would then use ETORRI, "come"). Autobus hori Donostiatik Bainoara doa "That bus is going from San Sebastian to Bayonne"; Nora zoaz? "Where are you going?"

By extension, it may mean "go away, leave"; Gazte asko badoaz hemendik "Many young people are going away" (lit. "are going from here"); Badoa autobusa "The bus is leaving".

There is also a construction in which JOAN has a similar meaning to English "go on (doing something)"; Pizkaka euskara ikasiz doa "He's going on learning Basque little by little".

12 THE VERB ETORRI

See also 6:d and 6:f. The present simple tense of ETORRI, infinitive ETOR (root -TOR-) is as follows:

Person 1  nator
(Person 2  hator)
Person 3  dator
Person 4  gatoaz
Person 5  zatoz
Person 5' zatozte
Person 6  datoaz
ESTORRI means "come", i.e. a directional movement towards the speaker: Autobusa dator "The bus is coming". It is sometimes used in the sense of "arrive", like come in English: Bederatzi eta laurdenetan etorriko da "He'll come [i.e. arrive] at 9.15."

§3 THE VERB IBILI

See also 6:e and 6:f. The present simple tense of IBILI, infinitive IBIL (root -BIL-) is as follows:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Person</th>
<th>Form</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>nabil</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>habil</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>dabil</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>gabiltza</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td>zabiltza</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5'</td>
<td>zabiltzate</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6</td>
<td>dabiltza</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The meaning of IBILI was discussed briefly in 6:e. It is analogous semantically to the Castilian verb ando; both are normally translated into English as "walk", yet this is hardly a satisfactory correspondence. In fact, "walk" will usually be oinez joan/etorri/ibili, lit. "go/come/etc. on foot", depending on the directionality; oinez may be omitted if the mentioning of the mode of transportation is superfluous or irrelevant. Thus Asko ibiltzen naiz mendian "I walk in the mountain a lot", but Asko ibiltzen naiz itsasoan is not "I walk in the ocean a lot" but "I sail a lot" or some such thing. Likewise Donostia-tik Balonara dabil is not likely to mean "He is walking from San Sebastian to Bayonne" (it's a thirty-mile walk!), but rather roughly "He is on his way from S.S. to B."

IBILI fundamentally expresses a movement, or, by extension, an activity, a process or a tendency. Euskara ikasten nabil is approximately "I am getting on with learning Basque": entzekun nabil "I'm listening (very actively)"; berandu nabil "I'm late", "I'm running behind schedule"; ondo gabiltza "we're doing well", "we're getting along fine", etc.

The distinguishing feature of IBILI seems to be that it plays down the idea of definite direction often present in JOAN and ETORRI (compare), while at the same time lacking the stative notion in EGON (see 5:j). Nonetheless it must often be translated as "go" or "be": Herritik
herrira dabiltza arraina saltzen "They're going from village to village selling fish"; Orain Igeldon dabiltza "They're in Igeldo now". It's use is very idiomatic.

### 54 THE ALLATIVE CASE

In the allative case proper nouns take -ra if they end in a vowel, and -a if they end in a consonant. Colloquially, however, it is normal to use -era after consonants, rather than the standard -a. Examples: Donostia-ra, Bretain-ra, Maule-ra, Igeldo-ra, Bilbo-ra; Gros-a (col. Gros-era), Gasteiz-a (col. Gasteiz-era), etc.

The forms used with common nouns and adjectives with the singular or plural ordinary article are as follows:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Singular</th>
<th>Plural</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Vowel</td>
<td>-ra</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Consonant</td>
<td>-era</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

e.g. singular kale-ra, mendi-ra, itsaso-ra, ostatu-ra, taberna-ra, mahai-ra, zuhaitz-era, lan-era, Parte Zaharrera, ardo beltz-era, gau-era; plural kale-etara, mendi-etara, baso-etara, ostatu-etara, mahai-etara, zuhaitz-etara, toki zaharr-etara.

Stems ending in -a are treated as other vowel stems in the singular, but lose the -a in the plural: taberna-ra, tabern-etara.

In common nouns and adjectives without the article, the allative suffix is -tara after a vowel stem, -etara after a consonant stem: zein kale-tara, zeinbat mendi-tara, bi ostatu-tara, lau taberna-tara, zein zuhaitz-etara, zer toki zaharr-etara, etc.

Most determiners take the inarticulate common-noun suffix: asko-tara, zein-etara, etc. Personal pronouns are scarcely used in this case: gu-tara etc. Irregular determiners and pronouns follow exactly the same patterns as for the inessive (4:1):

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Absolutive: bat</th>
<th>batzu(e)k or batzu(e)tara</th>
<th>zerb</th>
<th>zerta</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Allative: batetara</td>
<td>batzu(e)tara</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Absolutive: hau</th>
<th>hori</th>
<th>hura</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Allative: honetara [on(e)t-]</td>
<td>horretara [of(e)t-]</td>
<td>hartara</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Absolutive: hauek</th>
<th>horiek</th>
<th>haiiek</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Allative: hauletara</td>
<td>horietara</td>
<td>haietara</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
The adverbs of place hemen, hor, han and non (4: c), themselves inessive, have the following special allative forms: hona/horra/hara/nora "[movement to] here/there/over there/where?", e.g. Etorri hona! "Come here!"; Nora doa? "Where is he going?" In Gipuzkoan hona and horra take the colloquial forms [nera] and [ofera].

Dialects other than Gipuzkoan and Bizkaian have a second form of the allative, in -rat instead of -ra. It is obtained by adding the letter -t to all the forms given; thus Mauerat, mendi-rat, mendia-rat, honat and so on.

USES OF THE ALLATIVE: As we said in 6:a, the allative case basically indicates "where to", and is generally translated as to. Some other uses are as follows:

1. Manner. E.g. era honetara "in this manner" (synonymous with era honetan, 4:1).
2. In the construction of time bederatzietatik hamarrretara corresponding exactly to the English "from nine o'clock to ten o'clock".
3. In the construction herritik harrira "from village to village".

The allative allows of the absence of a determiner in certain expressions, in the same way as the inessive (4:1): lortara "to sleep", uretara "to the water", etc.

§ 5 THE ABLATIVE CASE

Proper nouns in the ablative case take -tik after both vowels and consonants: Donostia-tik, Maule-tik, Bilbo-tik, Gasteiz-tik. But when the stem ends in n or l, the suffix becomes -dik: Irun-dik. Colloquially, the form -etik is often used with consonant stems: Gasteitz- etik, Irun-etik.

The singular and plural forms for common nouns and adjectives are:

- Singular
- Plural

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Vowel</th>
<th>-tik</th>
<th>-etatik</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Consonant</td>
<td>-etik</td>
<td>-etatik</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

E.g. singular kale-tik, mendi-tik, itsaso-tik, tabernatik, mahai-tik; zuhaitz-etik, Parte Zaharr-etik, gau-etik; plural kale-etatik, mendi-etatik, zuhaitz-etatik, toki zaharr-etatik.

As in the allative, stems ending in -a are treated normally in the singular, but lose the -a in the plural: taberna-tik, taberna-etatik.
The inarticulate suffix is -tak after vowels and -etak after consonants: zein kale-tak, zein zuhaitz-etak. The same suffix is used with most determiners: asko-tak, zein-etak. Personal pronouns with this suffix (gu-tak) are of limited use.

Irregular determiners and pronouns behave as in the allative, from which the ablative can be obtained by replacing the letters ro by tlik: batet(ta)tak, batzu(e)-tak, zertatik, honetatik, horretatik, haratatik, hanquetatik, horietatik, haietatik.

The ablative forms of the adverbs of place hemen/ hor/han/non are hemendik/hortik/handik/nondik: Goazen hemendik! "Let's go away from here", "Let's leave!": Nondik dator autobus hau? "Where does this bus come from?"

Eastern dialects change the sequence -tak to -tak in all the suffixes in which it occurs: mendietak, zein etxetak, askotarak, gatarik, horretarak, and so on.

USES OF THE ABLATIVE: As pointed out in 6:6, the ablative's basic meaning is "where from", and the usual English equivalent is the preposition from. Other uses include:

Since when. E.g. bederatzietak "since nine o'clock", atzotak "since yesterday". However, oraindik means "still, yet".

Which way. Translates the English preposition through, e.g. kalistik "through the street", hemendik "this way, through here". Only the context can decide whether the ablative means from or through.

Partitive. The ablative plural may translate of in a partitive sense, as in etxe haustatik bat "one of these houses".

For the constructions bederatzietak hanarretara and horritik herria, see 6:4.

The ablative can also be used without a determiner, like the inessive and allative: uretatik "from the water", etc.

The inessive, allative and ablative cases have several features in common that set them off from most other cases. They are all used to express relations in space, for which reason we call them the local cases. Another of their special characteristics is the element -to- or -eto- which appears in many of their forms. On the other hand, note that the letter -o- of the singular article disappears when a local case suffix is added (etxe-an, etxe-ra, etxe-tik).
EXERCISES

Exercise 1:
1. To Bilbao. 2. To Victoria. 3. To the Old Part. 4. To the United States. 5. To (the) sea. 6. To the bus. 7. To the old shop. 8. To the small beach. 9. To the pretty plaza. 10. To the shops. 11. To which bus? 12. To three beaches. 13. To this plaza. 14. To that beautiful beach. 15. To those places.

Exercise 2:
1. From Bilbao. 2. From Victoria. 3. From the Old Part. 4. From the United States. 5. From the farm. 6. Through the streets. 7. From the bus. 8. From your coffee. 9. Since the afternoon. 10. From the new plaza. 11. From all the classes. 12. From which house? 13. Through four villages. 14. From a pleasant conversation. 15. From this bag.

Exercise 3:
1. Come here, please! 2. Let's go there. 3. From here to Bilbao in two hours. 4. Where from and where to? 5. From there to here. 6. Then we'll go to the American bar. 7. From six o'clock to seven thirty. 8. From the afternoon to the night. 9. From plaza to plaza. 10. From one to the other.

Exercise 4:
1. I'm walking (Lit. I'm walking on foot) to a small village. 2. I'm coming now. 3. I'm doing well here. (Use IBIKI) 4. Are you coming on foot? 5. Which class are you going to? 6. How are you doing? (Use the expression zer moduz.) 7. We're very tired. (Use IBIKI) 8. We've finished the coffee and we're going home. 9. Hey, we're coming too. 10. Where are you (PL.) going at this hour? 11. Where do you (PL.) hang out (IBIKI)? 12. Are you (PL.) coming then?

Exercise 5:
There are three fine beaches in San Sebastian. But one is really very, very pretty. It is called Kontxa. This afternoon, Mikel and Iñaki are there. The beach is big, but there are a lot of people: old and young, men and women, boys and girls, little children...

What are they all doing? Some are in the sea; others are sitting, talking; others asleep (loten). There is no space free!

It's late now. The people, tired, are going home. It's quiet
on the kontxa at this hour. A really pleasant hour! At night, there are few people there. Iñaki and Mikel are alone; but they're glad!

KEY

5.


Zortan dobiltea guzti horiek? Batzuek itsasoa dobiltea; beste batzuek eserle, hizketan; beste batzuek lotan. Ez dago tokirik libre!

UNIT SIX: THIRD LESSON

EUSKAL HERRIKO PROBINTZIAK

Probintziak eta Herri Nagusiak


Of the north

Ehun eta laurogei mila daude Iruñean.

Hiru probintziatako hiriburuk³, Bilbo, Donostia eta Baiona, kostan daude. Handiena⁴ Bilbo da: laurchun eta hogeitahamari mila lagun⁵ bizi dira Bilbon. Euskal Herriko⁶ hiri nagusia⁷ da.

Donostia txikiagoa da (ehun eta hirurogeitahamabost mila lagun). Baionan laurogei mila daude bakarrik.

Bizkaia eta Gipuzkoa probintzia txikiak dira, baina hauetan ia' bi miloi bizi dira. Eta Euskal Herriaren guztia⁸, ia hiru miloi daude. Bi probintzia hauetan, bada, hirutik bi⁹ bizi dira.

Araban, miloi laurden bat dago; haie-tatik, ia berrehun mila Gastcizen bertan¹⁰ daude.


VOCABULARY

or'dián in the middle
es'painol adj. Spanish
es'itatu n. state
Euskal Herria the Basque Country
frantaises adj. French

hi'rri n. city, town
hi'riburu n. capital
i'parralde n. north
kosta n. coast
pro'hintziat n. province

NAMES OF PROVINCES

A'raba (Sp. "Alava")
Biz'kaia (Sp. "Vizcaya"; Fr. "Biscaye")
Gip'uzkoa (Sp. "Guipúzcoa")
La'purdi (Fr. "Lapurdi")

Na'farroa (Sp. "Navarra"; Eng., Fr. "Navarre")
Na'farroa Be'herea (Fr. "Basse-
Navarre"; Eng. "Low Navarre")
Zu'beroa (Fr. "Soule")

CAPITALS OF PROVINCES

Ba'iona (Fr. "Bayonne")
'Bilbo (Sp. "Bilbao")
Donibane Ga'razi (Fr. "Saint-Jean-Pied-de-Port")

Do'nostia (Sp. "San Sebastián")
Gas'teiz (Sp. "Vitoria")
'I'ruñea (Sp. "Pamplona")
'Maule (Fr. "Mauleon")
Some Notes Concerning Placenames

a. In Euskal Herria and Kantauri Itsasoan, the final -a is the article (compare Parte Zaharra); thus, Kantauri Itsaso-ra "to the Bay of Biscay", Euskal Herri-tik "from the Basque Country", etc. The same is true of Nafarroa Beherea-a. But in most placenames ending in the letter a (Araba, Gipuzkoa, Nafarroa, Zuberoa, Baiona, Donostia, Berrioka, Gascona, Cantabria, Frantzia, Espainia, Bergara, Gernika, Iztua, Lizarra, Martina, Orduna, Tafalla, Tolosa, Tuteru, etc.) the a is treated as an organic, invariable part of the stem, thus: Baiona-ra, Tolosa-ra, Araba-tik, Gernika-tik, etc. Nonetheless, in the case of certain words, there are divergent colloquial forms, e.g. Donosti, Frantzi-n. Finally, there is another group of placenames of a mixed type, whose absolute form ends in an inseparable ő (e.g. Bizkaia polita, Iruñea guztia), yet which drop the ő when a local case suffix, other than the inessive, is added, thus: Bizkaia, Bizkaian, Bizkaira, Bizkaikik; Iruñea, Iruñean, Iruñera, Iruñetik. Azpeitia is also of this type.

b. In the northern dialects, the modern tendency is to add a "supporting" letter e to stems originally ending in a consonant in the absolute and local cases. Thus for "Paris", they use Parise, Parisen, Parisera, Parisetik; the standard forms are Paris, Paris-en, Paris-a, Paris-tik. Likewise Donibane Lohizune, Atharratze, and a long list of northern placenames.

c. One may wish to note that Basque placenames beginning with Don- correspond to names of saints: Donostia "San Sebastian", Donibane "St. John", Donapaleu "Saint Palais", Donamaria "St. Mary", etc.

PRACTICE

Practice 1: Example:
Altsasu - Zein probintziaten dago Altsasu? Altsasu Nafarroan dago.

Practice 2: Example:
Altsasu → Altsasura noa.
Atharratze → Altsasutik Atharretzeroa noa.
Azpeitia → Atharratzetik Azpeitiare noa.
UNIT SEVEN: FIRST LESSON

STUDY TEXT

Mikel eta Iñaki Bretxa merkatura joan dira elkarrekin, eta han dabilta orain.
1See 7:a. 2See 7:b.
3See 7:c. 4See 7:a.
2ever 4farmer

Mikel ez du inoiz'ikusi holako' merkaturik Estatu Batuetan.

Jendo asko dago gauzak saltzen. 3Baserriko emakumeak eta gizonak dira asko.

"to buy, shopping" 4to buy, shopping

Emakume asko horra joan dira erostera', eta hor dabilta batetik bestera, erosten2, edo berriketan', boltza handiak eskutan.
Mikel begira-begira dago. Gauza asko ikusten eta entzuten dago hor. Hemen frutak, letxuak.... Hor oilaskoak eta arraultzeak. Han haragia. Ogia; gazta; loreak....
Batzuek euskaraz hizketan ari dira.
Beste batzuek erdaraz ari dira....
"Zer behar duzu?" esaten du Iñakik.
"Entsalada behar dut," esaten du Mikelik.

Barruan daude, baina kanpore doaz entsalada erostera. Kanpoan, baserriko emakume bat letxuak, tomateak eta beste gauza batzuek saltzen ari da.
1the first ones 4the last one 2the first ones

Mikel eta Iñaki ez dira lehenengoak. 4the last one
Emakume bat erosten ari da, eta beste bi edo hiru zain daude. Iñakik esaten du:
"Zein da azkena hemen, mesedez?" 4the last one
"Ni nai,
esaten du emakume Zahar batek.

"See 7:b. 1'the first ones 4'the last one 2'seller, vendor 4'seller, vendor

Eta hola', gure Iñaki eta Mikel zain daude. Emakume hori euskaraz erosten ari da, eta Mikel entzuten:
EMAKUMA: Orain ekarri bi letxu, mesedez.
3'seller, vendor 4'seller, vendor
SALTZAILEA: Wolakoak? Hemengoak4, ala
kanpokoak?"
EMAKUMA: Hemengoak.
11 How many did you say?


EMAKUME: Bai. Zenbat balio dute?

SALTZALEA: Bi hauek hamabia duro.

EMAKUME: Nola? Hamabia duro? Oso garestia da!


13 what more, what else

EMAKUME: Emaidazu tipula.

SALTZALEA: Zenbat?

EMAKUME: Kilo erdia.

15 More?

SALTZALEA: Tori libra bat tipula. Gchiago?

EMAKUME: Bi kilo patata, eta tomate batzuek, mesedez.

SALTZALEA: Nolako tomateak? Gorri-gorriak?

EMAKUME: Ez, berdeak....

16 You take then?


EMAKUME: Libra eta erdi. Besterik?

17 Anything else?

SALTZALEA: Libra eta erdi. Besterik?

EMAKUME: Ez. Besterik ez? Zenbat da hori?

SALTZALEA: Ikusiko dugu. Letxuak, hirurogei peseta; tipula, hogeia; patatak, berrogei; eta tomateak, hogeitahamar: guztira, hogeitahamar duro.

19 all together

Language Notes

Several forms occurring in the study text are what we can call continuous adverbs, since they express an activity, state or process that is "in continuation". Continuous adverbs are normally translated as gerunds in English: selling, buying, working, talking, watching, waiting etc. But in Basque this type of word is variously formed, and so we classify them into gerundial, inessive and adverbial. If the continuous adverb is an unconjugated verb form, the form used is the gerund in -N, which always ends in -tzen or -ten. E.g. saltzen selling, erosten buying, ikusten seeing, entzuten listening. Numerous other continuous adverbs are simply a noun in the inessive case: e.g. hizketa in conversation, talking; berriketa "in a chat", chattering (berrikota "gossip, chat"); lancet at work, working (lan "work"). The third class comprises a miscellany of words that we shall simply denominate "adverbs": begira watching, observing; zain waiting; euskara in Basque, speaking Basque; erdaraz speaking Spanish or French. Notice how all these continuous adverbs are used in the text.
b. We have already met the interrogative adverb of manner nola how. This has the following four demonstrative correlates: honela this way, like this; horrela that way, like that; hala that way, like that; hola this/that way, like this/that, so. The first three correspond to the three degrees as in hau-hori-hura or hemen-hor-han. The last form, hola, can be used instead of honela or horrela.

c. By adding the suffix -ko to the adverbs of manner mentioned in 7:b, we obtain the adjectives molako what kind of, what (is) ... like?; honelako this kind of, like this; horrelako, halako that kind of, like that; holako this/that kind of, like this/that, such (a). These belong to the class of forms called adjectivevols, to which the possessives mere, gure, zure, zuen, haren, hainen also belong (3:b). They precede the noun they qualify, requiring a determiner like other noun phrases: holako merkatua such a market; molako letxak what (kind of) lettuces. If the noun is omitted and the adjectival stands alone, it still takes a determiner: molakoka what kind? (pl.).

d. In the southern (Spanish) Basque Country, the official unit of currency is the Spanish peseta, in Basque pš'et a or pž'et a. In the northern (French) country it is the French franch (li'bera). But other terms are also in popular use, such as the duro (or o'gerleko), which is five pesetas, a nickel so to speak. Thus 100pta. is expressed ehun peseta or hoge duru. The official unit of weight is the kilo (kilo- gram), and the gram ('gramo). But again, other units are employed too. The pound or libra is half a kilo.

e. Notice how to say "a pound of onions", "two kilos of potatoes" etc.: libra bat tipula, bi kilo patata. Libra bat, bi kilo act like compound prepositive determiners, determining tipula and patata respectively, which do not take the article (so bi libra tomate, not tomate-a or tomate-ak). Similarly, "a bag of potatoes", "a bottle of wine" is boltsa bat patata, botilla bat ardo. But it is also possible to say ardo botilla bat, which is ambiguous, for it can mean either "a bottle of wine" or "a wine bottle". Note that with onions, potatoes and the like, the singular article can be used even though in English we make them plural: tipul-a "onions", patat-a "potatoes"; but the plurals are also used. Finally, Basques speak not of a loaf of bread, but simply of "a bread" (ogi bat).
VOCABULARY

a'ri naiz n. activity, doing something
arraultze [af'sauts] n. egg
a'zukre n. sugar
be'gira c.o. watching, observing
behar dut I need, I must
bo'tila n. bottle
'duro n. five pesetas
cn'tzuten ger. listening, hearing
er'daraz in Spanish or French, not in Basque
e'rosten ger. buying, shopping
e'satzen dut I say, I tell
es'ne n. milk
gai'leta n. cookie, biscuit
gar'esti adj. expensive
'gazta n. cheese
go'zo [go'zo] adj. delicious, sweet
* See 1:7.

ilkusten n. cheese
joan naiz [xvan], [xun] I've gone
kan'poan outside
'kilo [kilo] n. kilogram
'lan n. work
le'txa n. lettuce
'libra n. pound
'litro n. liter
lo're n. flower
mer'ke adj. cheap
o'gi n. bread
oi'lasko n. chicken
o'lio n. oil
pa'keto n. packet
pa'tata n. potato
peseta [pesta] n. peseta
'saltzen ger. selling
ti'pala n. onion
to'mate n. tomato
'ur* n. water
zai'n [sai] c.o. waiting

DRILLS

Drill 1: Fill in the blanks with an appropriate continuous adverb, e.g.
Mikel libra bat tomate ... ari da.
> Mikel libra bat tomate erosten ari da.
Elkarrekin daude eta ... ari dira.
> Elkarrekin daude eta hizkatan ari dira.
1. Oria behar dut, balna jende asko dago denda, eta ... nago. 2.
Mikel euskara (Basque) asko ... ari da merkatuan. 3. Zertan ari dira
gizon halek? ... ari dira. 4. Zertan dabil emakume hori merkatuan?
Arraultzeak eta oilaskoak ... dabil. 5. Mikel ... ... dago, eta gauza
asko ... ari da.

Drill 2:
1. It is Mikael's turn, and he wants a lettuce and half a pound of
tomatoes. Invent the dialogue.
2. Then he goes to buy some cheese. He wants a quarter of a kilo.
3. He goes to a flower stand, and picks out some pretty red flowers.
Write the conversation.
UNIT SEVEN: SECOND LESSON

GRAMMAR

41 THE PRESENT CONTINUOUS TENSE

Continuous tenses are formed periphrastically in Basque. A continuous form consists of two parts: a continuous adverb, and a verb of activity or of state.

Concerning the continuous adverb, see 7:a.

There are several verbs that can form the finite part of the expression. It is important to note that IZAN is not admitted in this function, so we cannot say "hizketon naiz" or "begira naiz". (As we shall see later, gerunds can be used with IZAN, as in deitzzen da, pozten naiz, etc.; but these do not constitute continuous forms.)

The verb used can be EGON (expressing a state) or IBILI (expressing activity): begira nago, ikusten nabil. However, the most common verb of activity is the compound ari naiz. Thus, the most frequent pattern of continuous forms is as follows:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>saltzen</th>
<th>ari</th>
<th>naiz</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>erosten</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ikusten</td>
<td></td>
<td>zara</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>entzuten</td>
<td></td>
<td>da</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>lanean</td>
<td></td>
<td>gara</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hizketa</td>
<td></td>
<td>zarete</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>euskaraz</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>erdaraz</td>
<td></td>
<td>dira</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The choice between ARI (IZAN), EGON, IBILI and a few other less important alternatives partly responds to fine aspectual nuances that easily escape a non-native speaker; and is partly determined by idiomatic conventions. There is hardly any rule, and learning the system is a matter of practice. The best rule of thumb we can offer is: when in doubt, use ARI (IZAN), except with continuous adverbs that idiomatically demand another verb, usually EGON. Two adverbs demanding EGON are begira and zain. Bila "seeking, looking for" is an example of an adverb with which IBILI may be used.

Taking as our example the type with ARI (IZAN), the word order in affirmative sentences is most likely to
be:

SUBJECT + (COMPLEMENT(S)) + CONT. ADV. + ari naiz

although other orders are possible, in line with 5:2.
Grammatically, the subject of the sentence is the subject of
ARI (IZAN), whereas the complements, if there are any,
are complements of the continuous adverb. Both subject
and direct object will be in the absolutive case, e.g.
Mikel ogia erosten ari da "Mikel is buying bread". The
noteworthiness of this point will be appreciated later.

Northern dialects differ from the above in that the direct
object of the gerund is put into the possessive-genitive case (Mikel
ogiaren erosten ari da "Mikel is buying the bread"), unless the object
is in sense indeterminate and would normally take the ordinary article,
in which case the unsuffixed stem precedes the gerund (Mikel ogi erosten
ari da "Mikel is buying bread")

In negative sentences, the conjugated verb is
normally separated from or placed in front of the rest of the
complex:

SUBJ. + ez + \[ nago \]

[ \[ nabil \] + (COMP(S)) + CONT. ADV. + \[ ari \] ]

[ \[ naiz \] ]

Note especially the structure with ARI (IZAN), e.g. Mikel
ez da ogirik erosten ari "Mikel is not buying bread"; although
once again it must be said that this is not the only order
possible.

To ask "What are you doing?", "What are you up to?"
and so on, the question word that replaces the continuous
adverb may be zertan (the inessive of zer "what"), or simply
zer: Zer(tan) ari zara/zahiltza/zaude?

EXERCISES

Exercise 1:
1. My mother is shopping now. 2. Edurne is working in the store. 3.
   I've seen Edurne working. 4. The youngsters are talking on the bus.
5. Listen! They're speaking Basque. 6. Yes, I'm listening. 7. The
   people are speaking Spanish (erdoroz) in that store. 8. Do you know
   Spanish? (lit. "Do you know in Spanish (erdoroz?)") 9. I only know
   how to converse. (lit. "I only know talking") 10. I've learned to
   listen well. (lit. "I've learned listening well") 11. What are you
doing? 12. I'm selling; what do you want? 13. We're waiting here,
but the bus isn't coming. 14. This man is buying sugar, milk, coffee
and cookies in the store, and he needs a bag. 15. Who's working here,
please? 16. We're seeing the mountains; we're not seeing the sea.
17. Are you buying water? Yes, it's mineral water (ur mineralo).
18. They are looking to the North (allative case). 19. "Are you listen-
ing?" she says. 20. I need a bottle of oil from the store. Oh (a), and a packet of cookies too, please. Thank you. Oh yes, and
bring two liters of milk. Nothing else (besterik ez).

Exercise 2:
Today (gaur), Mikel and Iñaki have gone to Tolosa. Tolosa is
twenty-five kilometers (kilometro) from San Sebastian (lit. "they
are 25 km. from T. to S.S."). An hour (ordubete) in the bus.
Iñaki's (Iñakiren) friends, Jon and Maite, live in Tolosa.
There are twenty thousand inhabitants (bizilagun) in this town. There
is an old part, a market, and some factories (tontegi). Around it
(ingurun) there are hills. It is an old town.

These four friends are walking in the center of Tolosa (Tolosoren
erdiak). It's six o'clock in the afternoon (arrotzadeko selak).
They are talking.

"Do you know Basque?" says Maite.
"Yes, a little," says Mikel. "I'm learning (ikasten) now."
"I think you know (dakizuta) a lot," says Jon.
"No, no. I only know a little. Very little, really."
"And how are you getting on in San Sebastian?"
"Very well. I like it a lot. It's a pretty town, and I like
the people too."
"Yes, San Sebastian is very pleasant," says Jon.
"But I like Tolosa too," says Mikel.

Exercise 3:
Denda batera zoa az gauza hau ekostera: esnea, ur mineralo, kofee,
oiga, patata,tipulak, allao, azukrea, arrautzdeak, gazto eta golletak.
Asmatu (make up) hizketa bat.

KEY

2.
Gaur, Mikel eta Iñaki Tolosara joan diera. Hegoetabost kilometro
dira Donostiak Tolosara. Ordubete autobusengan,
Iñakiren Lagunak, Jon eta Maite, Tolosan bizi diera. Hegoi mila
bizilagun dauke herri honetan. Parte zahar bat, merkatu bat, eta
tontegi botzuk dauke. Ingurun mendietak dauke. Herri zaharra da,
Lau lagun hauek Tolosoren erdiak doblitzak. Arrotzadeko selak
diera. Hizketaan art diera.
"Bakizkuzu eskuraz?" esaten du Maiteak.
"NIk uste dut asko dakizuta," esaten du Jonak.
"Ez, ez. Gutí dakit bakarrik. Oso gutí, benetan."
"Eta zer moduz zabiltza Donostian?"
"Oso ondo. Asko gustatzen zalt. Herri polita da, eta jendea ere gustatzen zalt."
"Baina Tolosa ere gustatzen zalt," esaten du Mikelek.

Personal Names:
Male: Jon [yca] "John".
Female: Malte "Love".
UNIT SEVEN: THIRD LESSON

THE DAYS OF THE WEEK

'of the week Hauek dira asteko¹ egunak:
astelchena,
asteartea,
asteazkena,
osteguna,
ostirala,
larunbata,
igendea.
Igandea jaia da;
jaiegunetan, denda etx lantegiak
heitsita daude.

VOCABULARY

as'telchen Monday i'gande Sunday²
aste'arte Tuesday as'te n. week
aste'azken Wednesday¹ hertsita [i'tsita] adv. closed
os'tegun Thursday² 'jai n. holiday; fiesta
os'tiral or os'tirale Friday¹ jaie'gun n. nonworking day
la'rumbat or la'rumbata Saturday¹ lan'tegi n. workshop, factory

¹ Other regional forms: eguston.
² " " : ortzegun, eguen.
¹ " " : ortzirale, bariku.
⁴ " " : egabakoitz, neskengan, zapatu.
³ " " : doneka.

Note:
The days of the week in Basque are treated like common nouns: they
do not require a capital letter, and they are used with a determiner,
usually the ordinary article.

TWO POPULAR SONGS

1. MARITXU NORA ZOAZ?

¹Mary (-txu is a
diminutive suffix)
²beautiful, good-
looking
³Here vocative: you...

Maritxu', nora zoaz,
eder galant; hori³?
"to the Fountain Iturrira", Bartolo⁵:
"Men's name. nahi baduzu⁶ etorrī!
"if you want Iturrian zer dago?

"ordo (dlm.) Ardotxo⁷ txuria⁸;
"zurol (off.) biok edango dugu⁹

"we will both drink nahi dugun guztia¹⁰.
"all we want

Note that the song represents a dialog between Maritxu and Bartolo. We have here emphasized this by separating with spaces the questions of Bartolo and Maritxu's answers. These eight lines constitute one stanza, of course.

1. The loafer's week 2. ALFERRAREN ASTEA¹

"lazy after the holiday Astelehena: jai ondoren alferra¹,
"in order not to do ezer ez egiteko¹, ez goaz lanera.

"Ta ez goaz lanera 'ta ez goaz lanera,
"Ta ez goaz lanera 'ta ez goaz lanera!"

"pouring down with rain Asteartea: euria goitik behera¹,
"we'll get wet busti egingo gara¹, 'ta ez goaz lanera.

"Ta ez goaz lanera....

"uncle's getting Asteazkena: osaba ezkontzen da¹,
"married 'ta jai hartzan badu¹, ez goaz lanera.

"Ta ez goaz lanera....

"and if he takes the Osateguna: amonoaren eguna¹,
"day off hori osapatzeko¹, ez goaz lanera.

"Ta ez goaz lanera....

"grandmother's Ostirala: haginetako mina¹¹,
"birthday aspirina hartuta¹¹, bagoaz ohera¹².

"Ta ez goaz lanera....

"to celebrate that

"toothache Ostirala: haginetako mina¹¹,
"having taken an aspirina hartuta¹¹, bagoaz ohera¹².

"Ta ez goaz lanera....

"to bed

"half a day's work Larunbata: egun erdiko lana¹³,
"for the sake of half egun erdiagatik¹³ ez goaz lanera.

"Ta ez goaz lanera....

"a day

"want to work Igandoa: lantegia hertsita,
"can't go lan egin nahi¹⁷ baina ezin joan¹⁸ lanera.

"Ta ez goaz lanera....
UNIT EIGHT: FIRST LESSON

STUDY TEXT

1. as you know
2. before coming
3. he wants to go
4. "See 8:1d.
5. on of two
6. [things]
7. he must look for; he must go
8. "See 8:0.
9. some of them
10. to these last
11. [named], to the latter
12. "See 8:1c.
13. His name is I.
15. this friend of Mikel's
16. wants to get into
17. secretary
18. Basque
19. having come
20. to stay, to be


Euskadiko hiri etan badaude eskoletan tokio asko euskara ikastea. Hailetako batzuek okonomiak deiten dira; beste batzuen, euskokoltegiak edo gaueskolak. Azken hauetara, jendea euskara ikastera bakarrik joaten da.


IDAZKARIA: Sartu, sartu! Egun on.
MIKEL: Egun on.
IDAZKARIA: Zer behar duzu?
MIKEL: Buskarazko klase batean sartu nahi dut.
IDAZKARIA: Zer maila duzu?
MIKEL: Nola?
IDAZKARIA: Zer da zure maila? Zenbat euskara dakizu?
MIKEL: Bada, begira. Amerikanoa naiz, eta Estatu Batuetan euskara pixka bat ikasi dut, hango klase batean. Gauza batzuek ikasi ditut horrela; ez asko, baina... Orain hone eitorrita, Euskal Herrian egoteran klaseak behar ditu gehiago ikastea.

Mikel: Michael Jones dut izena.

IDAZKARIA: Nola idazten da hori?

Mikel: Emakume batzuek a e ele; ia o ene e ese.

IDAZKARIA: Ondo. Eta zer helbide duzu? Non bizi zara?

Mikel: Zabaleta kalea 18.

IDAZKARIA: Zenbat urte ditu zu?

Mikel: Hogeitahiru urte ditut.


Mikel: Noiz hasten dira klaseak?

IDAZKARIA: Urriaren 10ean hasten da ikastaro berria.

Language Notes

5.
In English there are two main ways to express the genitive: compare John's Leg and the leg of the table. It is also sometimes possible to form a kind of compound: the table leg. In Basque too there are two different genitive cases, called the local genitive and the possessive genitive, which unfortunately do not correspond in any precise way to the two English constructions. Basque, like English, also uses compounds of the table-leg type, such as gau-eskola lit. evening school, matrikula-orri enrolment form, mahai hanka table leg. In any kind of genitive or pseudogenitive in Basque, the qualifying part must precede the qualified. Consider these examples of the local genitive: Euskadiko hiriaren in the cities of Euskadi, Donostiako eskola batean in a San Sebastian school, in a school in ("of") S.S., eskolako helbidea the school's address, eskolako atean in the door of the school, hango klase batean in a class there (lit. "of there"), haietako batzuek some of them. Thus the local genitive may be, but is not always, associated with an idea of place. In form and use it belongs to the class of local cases (see 6:5). Its endings are obtained if one replaces the syllable -tk (-dk) of the ablative by -ko (-go). Observe also that the qualified noun or noun phrase following a genitive takes an article or some kind of determiner: eskolako helbidea, hango klase batean.
b. Now study these examples of the possessive genitive: Mikelen laguna Michael’s friend (see study text 6), Mikelen lagun bau this friend of Michael’s, Iñakiaren eskolara to İñaki’s school. When the possessor is a person, as in these examples, the possessive genitive is always used; in fact the forms nere, zure, hare etc. are merely the possessive genitives of the pronouns ni, zu, hura and so on. Proper names form the possessive genitive by adding -en after a consonant (e.g. Mikel-en), -ren after a vowel (e.g. Iñaki-ren). Both the local and the possessive genitive may be used recursively, e.g. kale hometaKO tabernaKO atea the door of the bar on “of” this street, IñakiREN aitaREN lagunaREN etxean İñaki’s father’s friend’s house, IñakiREN eskolaKU idazkaria the secretary of İñaki’s school. Note that the order qualifier-qualified is always strictly maintained.

c. You are already familiar (4:4) with the verb forms dut, duk, dun, du, dugu, duzu, duzue, dute in expressions like bakatu (dut), ikusi (dut), ikusiko (dut), nahi (dut), ikasi (dut), uste (dut), egingo (dut), balio (du), ezagutzen (dut), saltzen (dut), behar (dut), esaten (dut). Dut, duk... are forms of the verb UKAN. This verb is not only found in such expressions, but also as a main verb. As such its simplest meaning is that of “to have”, e.g. Mikelen lagun bat du Michael has a friend, azterketa bat dugu we have a test. But UKAN is not always used to express ownership (see 8:1). In particular, it is very idiomatic to express possession not with a possessive genitive (8:b) but by using the verb UKAN, making the possessor the subject, explicit or understood, of the sentence. For example, “My name is Michael” is either Mikel da nere izena (nere, genitive), or Mikel dut izena (nik) (nik, ergative subject: see 8:2). “What is your level?” is either Zer da zure maila? or Zer maila duzu (zuk)? UKAN is a transitive verb, and these agree in Basque not only with the subject but with the direct object too. The forms used in past lessons (dut, du,...) are those for a third-person-singular (Person 3) object, hence the most frequent ones. But if, for example, the direct object is third-person-plural (Person 6), the following forms must be used: (nik) ditut, (nik) dituk/ditun, (hork) ditu, (guk) ditugu, (zuk) dituzu, (zuek) dituzue, (halek) dituzte. This is equally applicable whether UKAN is used as a main verb or as part of a verbal expression; e.g. lau klase ditu he has four classes, gauza batzuek ikasi ditut I have learned some things, hemen zazpi maila ditugu we have seven levels here, zentat urte dituzu? how old are you? (lit. “how many years do you have?”).
common gerunds of the verb Ikasi "to learn" are ikasten, ikastera, ikasteko, which we can call the gerund in -N, the gerund in -RA, and the gerund in -KO. The stem to which the endings -n, -ra and -ko are added is in fact the verbal noun, in this case ikaste. The finer points concerning the uses of these gerunds need not worry us at this stage; but a general notion is needed, for they are in constant use. The gerund in -N is mentioned in 7:1. Take note of how the gerunds are used when they appear in the texts. Here are some examples from the present text: (gerund in -RA:) klaseetara joan nahi du gehiago ikastera he wants to go to classes to learn more, azken haustara, jendea euskara ikastera bakarriko joaten da to the latter people only go to learn Basque, orain hona etorrita, Euskal Herriaren egoteran now, having come here to be in the Basque Country; (gerund in -KO:) badaude eskola eta toki asko euskara ikasteko there exist a lot of schools and places to learn Basque, ...for learning Basque, klaseak behar ditut gehiago ikasteko I need classes in order to learn more, azterketa bat duago zure maila ikasteko we have a test to see your level. The gerund in -KO expresses purpose in general; but the gerund in -RA is used with verbs of directional motion like JOAN and ETORRI.

VOCABULARY

a'nte n. door
az'ken pr. adj. last, final
az'terketa n. examination, test
baino 'lehen before (post.)
'bete v. fill, fill in, fill out
bi'latu v. look for, seek
edo...edo ci. either...or
es'kola n. school
e'torri v. come
etrorri naiz I have come
Eusk'adi pn. Euskadi, the Basque Country
'euskal comp. form1 Basque
euskara [eu's'kera] n. the Basque language

1 Euskal is a compounding form; this means that it must be followed by a noun which it qualifies, e.g. euskal liburuak Basque books, Euskal Herria the Basque Country.

gehiago [g'ey(a)y)o] dt., pron. more
'hasten naiz I start, I begin
hel'bide n. address
l'dazten da is written, is spelled
l'ikasten ger. of ikasi (learn)
l'irakasle n. teacher
joan [xvan], [xun] v. go
joaten naiz [xwa-], [xu-] I go (habitually)
maila n. level, step, grade, degree
o'rindiik adv. still; yet
o'rri n. leaf, sheet (of paper), printed form
'sartu v. enter, come/go in, get in
u'rri-a n. October
DRILLS

Drill 1: Transform these sentences, turning the inessive into a local genitive, e.g.
Kaleak politik dira Donostian. The streets are pretty in S.S.
+ Donostiako kaleak politik dira. S.S.'s streets are pretty.

Drill 2: Combine two sentences into one, using the possessive genitive, e.g.
+ Mikelen ek sa zuria da.

Ifakik lau klasa ditu. Beteta daude.
+ Ifakiren klasaek beteta daude.

Drill 3: Fill in the appropriate form of the verb UKAN, e.g.
Guk boltsa handi bat....
+ Guk boltsa handi bat dugu.
Haiek lore asko....
+ Haiek lore asko dituzte.
Drill 4: Fill in the appropriate form of the verb UKAN, e.g.
Nik Iruñera joan nahi....
+ Nik Iruñera joan nahi dut.
Nik loreak saltzen....
+ Nik loreak saltzen ditut.
Nik bi pakete nahi....
+ Nik bi pakete nahi ditut.
Nik euskara eta frantsesa ikasi behar....
+ Nik euskara eta frantsesa ikasi behar ditut.
1. Zuk nora joan behar....? 2. Guk toki atseginak ikusi ... hiri honetan.
3. Waietek gizon guti ezagutzen.... 4. Espainolek zer esaten ....? 5. Guk bukatu ... hezen.
9. Zuek bost mila duro behar.... 10. Ikasle berri guztiak klaseetan sartu nahi...., baina sartu baino lehen, orri hauek bete behar....

KEY

3.

4.
UNIT EIGHT: SECOND LESSON

GRAMMAR

11 THE VERB UKAN

See 4:9 and 8:c. Let us summarize the forms for third-person objects in the present:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>OBJECT</th>
<th>OBJECT</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Person 3</td>
<td>Person 6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dute [d]et</td>
<td>ditut [(d)it(y)ut]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>duk/dun [(d)ek/n]</td>
<td>dituk/ditun [(d)it(y)uk/n]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>du [(d)u]</td>
<td>ditu [(d)it(y)u]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dugu [(d)eyu]</td>
<td>ditugu [(d)it(y)eyu]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>duzu [(d)esu]</td>
<td>dituzu [(d)it(y)esu]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>duzue [(d)esue]</td>
<td>dituzue [(d)it(y)esue]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dute [(d)ute]</td>
<td>dituzte [(d)it(y)ute]</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The initial d- in all these forms may be pronounced [d] or [6] depending on the preceding sound (see notes on Mid-Gipuzkoan pronunciation), and may even become silent in colloquial use.

Concerning the infinitive and other unconjugated forms, the form uk an itself is foreign to Gipuzkoan and several other dialects, which use izan instead. Therefore there are really two izan's, one intransitive meaning "to be" (1:2), the other transitive meaning "to have". Irakasle bat izan nahi dute is ambiguous in these dialects: "I want to be a teacher" or "I want to have a teacher". When talking about grammar, it is more convenient, however, to refer to the intransitive verb as IZAN and the transitive one as UKAN, as we have done here.

As a main verb, UKAN does not only express ownership (lantegi bat dute I have a factory); it is used to indicate that the subject, which may or may not be explicitly mentioned, is vaguely interested in or affected by the situation expressed. In this use UKAN normally replaces a corresponding form of IZAN whose subject is transformed into the direct object (in either case the noun phrase in question remains in the absolutive case). So, Iñaki hemen da Iñaki is here might be converted into Iñaki hemen dugu, lit. "we have Iñaki here", which means something like Iñaki's here (we're glad/consterned/surprised... to say). We might also say Iñaki hemen duzu, lit. "you have Iñaki here", i.e. (you will be interested to hear/ought to know/will soon find out/... that) Iñaki's here. And so on.
One reason for being interested in or affected by a situation is that one is especially related to the person or object denoted by the direct object of UKAN who or which is the protagonist of the situation; the special relationship is often expressed in English by a possessive. Hence translations such as Mikel dut izena my name is Michael, Zer maila duzu? What is your level? lit. "What level do you have?" Another example would be aita euskalduna dut my father is Basque. In fact Basque makes far less use than English of the possessive adjectives.

IZAN forms are also replaced by UEAN forms in the complicated allocutive modes of speech known as Hika and Zoko used to express comradeship between speakers. In Hika addressing a male, Nor zara? Hau nore etxea da, eta hauek nore lagunak dira Who are you? This is my house, and these are my friends will become Nor haiz? Hau nore etxea duk, eta hauek nore lagunak dituk, which we could render literally as "Who art thou? This thou hast my house, and these thou hast my friends". But only certain forms of IZAN are converted to Hika by the substitution of IZAN by UKAN; otherwise different procedures are used.

52 THE ERGATIVE CASE

Basque is characterized by a morphological structure that linguists call an ergative system.

Today it is a subject of dispute whether Basque can also be said to have ergative syntax.

Regarding the morphology, the concept of "ergativity" means that the subject of an intransitive verb (for short, intransitive subject) is marked in the same way as the direct object of a transitive verb, from both of which the subject of a transitive verb (for short, transitive subject) is distinguished grammatically. This is the opposite of the typical Indo-European system (such as in Latin) where it is the direct object, in the "accusative" case, which is distinguished from the subjects of all kinds of verbs, in the "nominative" case. As against the terms "nominative" and "accusative", in Basque we speak of "absolutive" (for intransitive subjects and direct objects) and "ergative" (for transitive subjects only):

LATIN:    nominative | TRANS. SUBJECT + INTR. SUBJECT | DIR. OBJECT | accusative
BASQUE:   ergative     | TRANS. SUBJECT | INTR. SUBJECT + DIR. OBJECT | absolutive
In the Basque system, the absolutive is the unmarked case, and the ergative is marked. We have seen (4:1) that the specific mark of the absolutive case is \( \emptyset \), "zero" in the declension system. The ergative case, on the other hand, is characterized by the letter -k. Thus, *ni, Iñaki, Mikel* (absolutive), *ni-k, Iñaki-k, Mikel-ek* (ergative).

There is in fact some overlapping of absolutive and ergative forms, since the plural articles also end in -k in the absolutive, e.g. *ikasle-ak, hauek*.

For the forms of the ergative case, see Grammar Summary (GS) 1 following the lessons, which from now on should be consulted for reference concerning case forms. As is seen in the first two tables in GS1, proper names in the ergative are formed like *Iñaki-k, Mikel-ek, Joseba-k*, etc. For common nouns, adjectives and regular determiners and pronouns, the pattern is:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SING. ART.</th>
<th>PLUR. ART.</th>
<th>NO ARTICLE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>ikasle-ak</td>
<td>ikasle-ek</td>
<td>ikasle-k</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mutil-ak</td>
<td>mutil-ek</td>
<td>mutil-ek</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>neska-ak</td>
<td>neska-ek</td>
<td>neska-k</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>asko-k</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>zein-ek</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>mila-k</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Note also the forms of the ergative demonstratives, which are not regularly derived from the absolutive forms: sing. *honek, horrek, hark* [ark], [afek], plur. (identical with the absolutive) *hauek, horiek, haiek*; and the interrogative pronouns *nork, zerk*.

The function of the ergative case, then, is to indicate the agent or doer of a transitive verb, whether rendered in English by a subject (*ikasleak orri bau bete behar du* THE STUDENT must fill out this form), or by a passive agent (*ikasleak beteak filled out BY THE STUDENT*). An ergative noun phrase implies a transitive verb, and vice versa, although either may be omitted and only "understood".

Care must be taken in clauses containing more than one verb to determine which verb the subject belongs to, as this will determine its case. For example, in *nik etxera joan nahi dut* I want to go home, "I" is the subject not of "go" (intransitive) but of "want" (transitive), hence nik and dut. Likewise, *nik etxera joan behar dut* I have to go home.

As a matter of fact, dialectally we also find the constructions *ni etxera joan nahi naiz* and *ni etxera joan behar naiz*.

Conversely, *ni euskara ikasten ari naiz* I am learning Basque; here "I" is the subject of *ari naiz* (intransitive), not of "learning", which is transitive.
Goseak nago "I am hungry", lit. "I am by hunger", in which there is apparently no transitive verb corresponding to the ergative form goseak, must be taken as an idiomatic expression; so also egarrink nago "I am thirsty".

Ergative structure affects conjugation as well as declension. It will be remembered that the Basque verb agrees both with its subject and its object (if it has one; it may even have two objects and agree with both). Now in the present tense, the absolutive complement of the verb, whether subject or object, is reflected in the initial letter of the conjugated form (1:2, 5:1 etc.). The sign of the third person in the present tense, for example, is d-, which appears equally in d-a, d-oa, d-ator (he, she, it) and, goes, comes, and in d-ut, d-akit I have, know (him, her, it). But transitive verbs reflect their subject, which is ergative, in suffixes, as du-t, du-k, du; daki-t, daki-k, daki.

43 THE POSSESSIVE-GENITIVE CASE

See also 8:b, and for all the forms of the possessive genitive GSI. As is seen, proper names follow the pattern Iñaki-ren, Mikel-en, Joseba-ren, while other endings are as follows:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SING. ART.</th>
<th>PLUR. ART.</th>
<th>NO ARTICLE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>ikasle-aren</td>
<td>ikasle-en</td>
<td>ikasle-ren</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mutil-aren</td>
<td>mutil-en</td>
<td>mutil-en</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nesk-aren</td>
<td>nesk-en</td>
<td>neska-ren</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Note that the demonstratives follow the same scheme as in the ergative (8:2): honen, horren, haren, haunen, horien, haien. Nor and zer are regular, but the personal pronouns are notably irregular: nere, hire, gure, zure, zuen (3:b).

The principal function of this case is to express the genitive relationship, except when this is expressed by the local genitive (see further 8:4). The genitive expression, whether in the possessive genitive or the local genitive, for syntactic purposes constitutes an adjectival, which receives the same treatment as a prepositive adjective (3:1), e.g. Mikelen herria Michael's town, Euskadiko probintziak the provinces of Euskadi, etxe gorriko atea the door of the red house, nere amaren esku zurian in my mother's white hand, etc.

As with an adjective, the qualified noun may be omitted, the declension suffixes that are "left behind" being added straight on to the genitive adjectival itself.
which can thus be fully declined: hau Iñakiren ardoa da, eta hori Mikelen-a da this is Iñaki's wine, and that is Michael's; Estatu Espainoleko probintziak asko dira, baina Euskadiko-ak zazpi dira besterik ez the provinces of the Spanish State are many, but those of Euskadi are only seven; nere amaren eskuan eta nere aitaren-ean in my mother's hand and in my father's, etc.

These adjectivals are also used attributively: hau nere-a da eta horiek zure-ak dira these are mine and those are yours. The student must master these declined genitives, for they are in constant use.

OTHER USES OF THE POSSESSIVE GENITIVE:

With postpositions. Many postpositions, though not all, govern the possessive-genitive case. These function like compound prepositions in English, e.g. etxearen barruan inside the house, Xafarroaren iparraldean in the north of Navarre, maiairen ondoan next to the table, toki honen inguruan around this place, Euskal Herriaren erdian in the middle of the Basque Country, etc.

Direct object. In northern dialects, but not in Gipuzkoan, the direct object of a gerund not forming part of a compound tense may take the possessive-genitive case rather than the absolutive (unless used without a determiner in an indeterminate sense), e.g. euskareraren ikastetan etorri naiz I have come to learn Basque. In other dialects, including Gipuzkoan, the construction is euskara ikastetan etorri naiz.

54 THE LOCAL-GENITIVE CASE

See also §5a, and for the forms GS1. Proper names are declined Bilbo-ko, Gasteiz-ko, Irun-go, Donostia-ko.

Other endings:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SING. ART.</th>
<th>PLUR. ART.</th>
<th>NO ARTICLE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>etxe-ko</td>
<td>etxe-etak</td>
<td>etxe-tako</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>autobus-eko</td>
<td>autobus-etak</td>
<td>autobus-etako</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>denda-ko</td>
<td>denda-etak</td>
<td>denda-tako</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The formation of the local-genitive inflections can be summed up as a standard local case in line with the inessive, allative and ablative cases, as is clearly seen in the tables in GS1. Concerning the syntactic behavior of this case, see the notes in §53.

When must one use the local genitive and when the possessive genitive? This is a point on which even
native speakers sometimes hesitate, and is somewhat baffling for the learner. Sometimes the choice is clearcut:

a) If the possessor is a person or animate being, the possessive genitive is required, e.g. *Mikelena tokia* Michael's place.

b) With postpositions it is the possessive-genitive that is used with all nouns, e.g. *etxearen barruan* inside the house.

c) If the relationship is that of "pertaining to such a place or time", the local-genitive is required, e.g. *Donostiako hondartzak* San Sebastian's beaches, *eguneko lana* the day's work.

In these contexts it can be said that there is a rule, and violations will immediately be singled out by a Basque speaker as mistakes. But in other contexts no rule can be given simple enough to be of use to the elementary student, and the best solution is careful observation and practice. Sometimes either genitive is admissible. On occasion, the choice of one or the other expresses a difference of meaning or nuance: for instance, *herriko* means "of the town" taken as an entity in space, whereas *herriaren* also means "of the town", but could suggest rather the town as an animate collectivity (it may also mean "of the people").

EXERCISES

Exercise 1: Provide a pronominal subject for each sentence, in the absolutive or ergative case as required, e.g.

Loreak saltzen ditut.
+ Nik loreak saltzen ditut.
+ Ez da etorriko orain.
+ Hura ez da etorriko orain.
Exercise 2: Translate:
1. Lapurdi has its capital, Bayonne, on the coast. (Do not translate "Lts"!) 2. The French and the Spanish don't believe that. 3. How much does meat cost? 4. One kilo costs eight hundred pesetas. (This object is treated as singular.) 5. We still need two liters more. 6. This youngster will do it. 7. Either you must come on the bus, or you must walk. 8. They have fine meat there, and good salads too. 9. I've finished two bottles. 10. I like the north of Navarre. 11. Joseba's farm is very old. 12. Excuse me, are you Iñaki's student? 13. The Frenchman's friends are free in the afternoons. 14. The wine in this bar is really bad. 15. Bring a little more, please.

Exercise 3: Translate:
"Look! The weather's fine (eguroldi ederra dago)," says Itziar.
"Let's go to a beach!"
"Okay," says Iñaki.
"Yes, but where?" says Mikel. "You know. It's Sunday, and on Sundays people go to San Sebastian's beaches by the thousands (mloko)."
"You're right (arrazola duzu)," says Itziar. "Today (gaur) the beaches here are really full; you don't have any room. It isn't very pleasant like that." "I know," says Iñaki. "We'll do this (hauze): we'll go to Hondarribia. Do you want to come? The beach there is large, and there's lots of room." "How shall we go? On the bus?"
"No, no. The three of us (hruok) will go in my car."
"Where is Hondarribia?" says Mikel. "I don't know it. Is it to the west of here (nenendik mendebaldero)?"
"No, it's to the east (ekildero). By (ondoan) the Bidasoa River (hubol) and the border."
"Don't you know Hondarribia yet? Then we must go! It's very pretty." "Yes, all the French go there!"
"The center (erdio) of the town is old and pretty. Then there is the river...."
"Come on then, let's go there! That way he (honek) will see!"

KEY

"Ondo," esaten du Iñoki.
benetan beteta daude; ez duzu tokirik. Horrela ez da oso atsegina...."


"Nole joango gara? Autobusean?"

"Ez, ez. Hluuk nere katzean joango gara."

"Non dago Hondarrilba?" esaten du Nichek. "Ez dut ezagutzen. Hemendik mendebalderea al dago?"

"Ez, ekialderra dago. Bilasao hibalen eta mugaren ondoan."

"Ez al duzu ezagutzen Hondarrilba eraindik? Onduan jain behar dugu! Oso pollto da."

"Bal, frantses guztiek joaten dira hara!"

"Herriko ordla zaharra eta pollto da. Gero, hibala dago...."

"Ea bada, goaizen hara! Horrela honek ikusiko du!"
UNIT EIGHT: THIRD LESSON

EUSKAL HERRIKO GEOGRAFIA

Euskal Herriaren mugak (ikus mapa sei-garren unitatean) hiru elementu geografiko nagusi dituzte: ekialdean Pirineo mendiak; iparraldean Kantauri itsasoa; eta hegoaldean Ebro ibaia.

Pirineo mendiak handiak dira, baina Euskal Herriaren muturrean bakarrik hasten dira benetako Pirineoak; handik ekialdero doaz, Mediterraneo itsasora. Aunamendik, Euskal Herriaren ekialdeko mugan, 2500 metro ditu.


A rainy climate

*bol...bol = both...and

"the towns around Bilbao"


*finally, in the end
*rich, fertile
VOCABULARY

al' de n. side, area, part
aparte pp. gov. obl. besides, apart from
al'rrantzale n. fisherman
aur'kitzen da exists, is found
be'rriz cj. on the other hand
e'kialde n. east
ele'mendu n. element
'gehien most
gorgraf'ia [goe-] n. geography
gorgrafiko [goe-] adj. geographical
hego'alde n. south
i'hai n. river
in'dustria n. industry
industrial adj. industrial
in'guruan pp. gov. pos.-gen.

around
i'tsasportu n. sea port
lan'gile n. worker
lu'rralde n. region, country
Medite'rranko pn. (the) Mediterranean
mende'alde n. west
'metro n. meter
'muga n. limit, boundary, border
mu'tur n. edge, end
na'gsu adj. main, principal
ondo'an pp. gov. pos.-gen. by, beside, next to
Piri'neo pn. Pyrenees
tu'rismo n. tourism, tourist trade
ze'alai adj. flat, open (land)
ze'har pp. gov. ines. across, through, throughout

1 Alde has various senses. Alde batetik bestera means "to and fro," "from one side to another." The alde onak and alde txarrak of something are its good and bad sides or points or aspects. Alde hautan means "in these parts." Alde Zaharra is a synonym of Parte Zaharra. Alde is suffixed to many words in the sense of "region": in the compass points iparraldea, hegoaldea, mendebaldea, ekialdea; and in lurralde (lur tand), itsasalde coast itsasoa'alde), kostalde coastal region (kosta'alde), mendialde hilly region, Ebro alde region of the Ebro, etc.

PRACTICE

On the basis of the above text and "Euskal Herriko Probintziak" (unit 6), say or write all you know about each of the seven provinces of the Basque Country.
UNIT NINE: FIRST LESSON

STUDY TEXT

"Iñaki ikustera joango al gara?" galde-tzen du Mikeleko.
"Ondo," erantzuten du Itziarrek, "baina etxean egongo al da?"

"See 9:c.
"Joan baino lehen, telefonoz' deituko dugu."
"Baina ez dakit haren numeroa."
"Numeroa, nik hemen daukat e paper batean: 361048. Telefonorik dago hemen?"
"See 9:d.
"Begira: hantxe dago bat."
"Goazen deitzera."

"Bai, nor da?"
"Iñaki hor dago, mesedez?"

"Wait a moment.
"Egon momentu bat." Oraintxe' jarriko da...

"He'll come to the phone"
"Esan!"
"Lit. "Say!"
"Iñaki zara? Mikel naiz."
"What's new?"
"Mikel! Kaixo mulit! Zer berri?"

"Zer zabiltza?"

"See 9:b.
"Adizu: Itziarrekin' nago kalean. Libre al zaude orain?"
"Bai, noski. Nere etxera etorrriko al zarete? Horrela nere familia ezagutuko duzue."

"Ondo bada. Oraintxe' goaz."

"Do you know how to get (come) here?"
"Ederki. Ba al dakizu hona eortzen?"
"Bai, badakit. Autobusa hartuko dugu."
"Ederki, gero arte bada."
"Gero arte."

"Iñaki," esaten du Iñakiren amak, "nor-bait dago atean. Zure lagunak izango dira, ez da?"


"Sartu, sartu," esaten du Iñakik.

"Hau nere ama da."

"Arratsalde on," esaten dute Mikeleko eta Itziarrek.
"Bai eta zuri ere; bai eta zuri ere! Zu Mikel zara, ez da? Iñakik zutaz! hitz egin du!"
"Beste lagun bat da."
"Pozten naiz," esaten du Itziarrek.
"Eta ni ere bai. Etxea aurkitu duzu, e?"
"Bai, berehala! aurkitu dugu. Helbidea daukat eta..."
"Nola etorri zarete, oinez?"
"Ez, autobusez! etorri gara."
"A, ederki. Ondo bada, hau duzue gure etxea."
"Ondo dago."
"Nahi duzue ikusi?"
"Bai, noski."

here is (Fr. "volct")

Iñakik gauza guti dauzka gelan: ohea, mahai bat, aulki bat... Mahaiar liburu bazuak daude, paper batzuekin. Armairu bat dago, arropaz beteta. Leiho bat dago, kalera begira.

they go to the kitchen again and...}

Gela guztiak ikusi ondoren, berriz sukaldeta joan eta sukaldeto mahaiaren ondoan esertzeten dira.
"Zerbait hartuko duzue?" galdetzen du Iñakik. "Zer nahi duzue? Zerbeza? Ardoa?"
"Edo patxarana nahiago duzue?" esaten du amak. "Gozoa da; etxekoak! Nahi duzue hartu pixka bat?"
"Gustatzen al zaizu patxarana?" galdetzen du Iñakik.
"Bai," erantzuten du Mikelak.
"Hartu orduan! Zuk ere?"
"Bai, bota pixka bat," esaten du Itziarrek.
"Mm, arrazoia duzu: oso gozoa da!"

home-made

"Norekin bizi zara hemen?" galdetzen du Itziarrek.
"Amarekin, aitarekin, eta anai-arrebekin."
"Zenbat anai-arreba zarete?"
"Bi anaia eta arreba bat. Nere aita oraintxe3 etorriko da arrebarekin3. Entzun, atean daude orain!"

Berrogeita hamar uteko gizon bat eta hogeit urtoko neska bat sartzen dira sukaldera.
"Zer moduz?" esaten du Arantxak.
"Andoni," esaten du Iñakiren amak, "gazte hau amerikanoa da, eta euskara ulertzen du!"
"Eta ondo hitz egiten du ere bai," esaten du Iñakik.

15 Oh yes?
['bai'ta]
"Bai eta?" esaten du aitak.
"Gustatzen zaiztu Euskal Herria?" galde-tzen du Iñakiren arrebak.

Eta hola hizketan hasten dira....

Language Notes

a.
Daukat, I have (him, her, it), daukagu we have (him, her, it), dauzka he has (them) are forms of the transitive verb EDUKI "to have, to hold". There is a considerable overlap in the meanings of the verbs EDUKI and UXAK in the western dialects.

b.
Itziarrekin with Itziar, paper batzuekin with some papers, morekin with whom?, aitarrekin with father, etc., are in the comitative case. This case roughly corresponds to the English preposition "with".

c.
Telefonoz on the telephone, oinez on foot (oin foot), autobusez by bus, arropaz (beteta) (full) of clothes are in the instrumental case, which has various uses, although it is used less in Gipuzkoan than in some other dialects. In all the examples mentioned the word in the instrumental is a noun without an article or determiner, and these expressions all serve, in a way, to answer the question "how?" In Iñakiñ zutaz hitz egin du Iñaki has spoken about you, zutaz is the instrumental of the pronoun zu, but here the idea expressed is "about".
d.

Hauxe this is the intensive form of the demonstrative hau, from which it is obtained by adding the suffix -xe (-txe after the letters n and r). So also horixxe and haurxe that. These intensive demonstratives have the plural forms hauexxe, horixxe, haurxe. There is no precise translation for these forms, though we could say that hauxe is "this here", hauexxe "these here", and so on. It is the deictic or specifying function of the words that is intensified. There are also intensive forms of other words of the family of the demonstratives, such as hementxe, horoxe, hantxe ("right here", "right there"); homelaxe ("just like this"), etc.; orantxe ("just now, right now"); orduantxe ("just then, right then"); herehalxaxe ("straight away"), and so on. Such forms are in very frequent use, especially in speech.

VOCABULARY

a'naia n. brother
ar'mairu n. cupboard, closet
a'rreba n. sister (of a male)
a'rop a n. clothes
aul'ki n. chair
aur'kiti dut I (have) found
be'ririz adv. again
'bota v. throw, pour
'deitutu v. (ger. 'deitzen) call
'deituko dut I'll call
'e'gonola n. living-room
'e'gonoxaiz I'll be
'e'rantuten dut I answer
'e'sertzen naiz I sit (down)
'e'torri v. (ger. e'tortzen) come
'e'torri naiz I have come, I came
'e'zagutuko dut I'll get to know, I'll meet
fa'milia n. family
gal'detzen dut I ask
'gala n. room
'gua'tatzenn aizu you like
'hantxe just over there
'hartutu v. take, drink
'hartuko dut I'll take, I'll drink
'hauxe this (intensive form)

hel'mentxe right here
hitx 'egin dut I (have) talked
hitx 'egiten dut I talk
i'kusi v. (ger. i'kusten) see
i'reki v. (ger. i'rekitzen) open
i'zango naiz I'll be
ko'mun n. toilet, bathroom
lei'ho n. window
li'buru n. book
lo'gela n. bedroom
'morbat pron. someone, somebody
'moski of course
numero n. number
'ohe ['o] n. bed
'on'doren adv., c. after, afterwards
'o'rantxe right now, just now
pa'per n. paper
patxa'ran n. (a liqueur made with sloe berries, especially in Navarre)
'sertzen naiz I came in, I enter
su'kalde n. kitchen
tele'bista n. television
telefonu n. telephone
u'lertzen dut I understand
'zerbait pron. something
zer'beza n. beer
DRILLS

Drill 1: Answer very briefly these questions on the study text, e.g.
Nor da Mikelen laguna?
+ Iñaki.
Non bizi da Iñaki?
+ Donostian.
1. Nor ikustera joaten dira Mikel eta Itziar? 2. Nola deltzen dute?
10. Norekin hitz egiten dute Mikel ekia Itziarrek Iñakiren etxean?
20. Zentzat dira etxean?
25. Zertan hasten dira orduan?

Drill 2: Make up sentences using these words, e.g.
Alean.
+ Mickey eta Itziar kalean daude.
or: Badago telefono bat kalean.
1. Ikustera. 2. Telefonoa. 3. Itziarrekin. 4. Dinez. 5. Autobusez.

Personal Names:
Male: Andoni "Anthony".
Female: A'rantxa (no equivalent).
UNIT NINE: SECOND LESSON

GRAMMAR

51 THE VERB EDUKI

This is a transitive verb, and it forms its present simple tense similarly to UKAN:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Subject Person</th>
<th>1</th>
<th>2</th>
<th>3</th>
<th>4</th>
<th>5</th>
<th>6</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Object Person</td>
<td>daukat</td>
<td>daukak/dukan</td>
<td>dauka</td>
<td>daukagu</td>
<td>daukazu</td>
<td>daukate</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>dauzkat</td>
<td>dauzkak/duzkan</td>
<td>dauzka</td>
<td>dauzkagu</td>
<td>dauzkazu</td>
<td>dauzkate</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The infinitive eduki is widely pronounced ['egki].

Unlike UKAN, EDUKI is not used as an auxiliary verb to form compound tenses. But it is much used in Gipuzkoan and Bizkaian instead of UKAN in the main-verb sense of "to have". Therefore this verb is seen and read a great deal in western Basque.

The true meaning of EDUKI, still observed in eastern dialects, is that found in the sentence zer daukazu eskuan? What are you holding in your hand? Other translations of EDUKI are "contain", and "keep, retain". It is also used for "to hold an opinion, to consider".

Furthermore, EDUKI may mean "to have temporarily" or "to have physically" (as opposed to "to have" = "to own"), e.g. ez daukat dirurik nerekin; telebista sukaldan daukagu. Here we can remark a parallel with the intransitive verb EGON, of which it can be considered the transitive correlative. (There are various other pairs of semantically correlated intransitive and transitive verbs in Basque, such as jolun : eraman, ibili : erabili, and of course izan : ukat (see 8:1).) Thus as Hau da gure etxea is to Hau dugu etxea, so Gure telebista sukaldan dago is to Telebista sukaldan daukagu. Compare also zain dago he is waiting with either zain dago or zain daukat he is waiting for me; ahaztuta dago it is forgotten with ahaztuta daukat I have forgotten it (lit. I have it forgotten); ez dago egiterik it can't be done with ez daukat egiterik I can't do it.
§2 THE VERB JAKIN

JAKIN is another transitive verb with a constantly used present simple tense, though because of its meaning it is only used with third-person objects, and almost always with third-person-singular ones:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SUBJECT</th>
<th>OBJECT</th>
<th>OBJECT</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Person 1</td>
<td>dakit</td>
<td>dakit/daKin</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&quot;</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>dakisik/dakisik</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&quot;</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>daki</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&quot;</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>daki</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&quot;</td>
<td>5</td>
<td>daki</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&quot;</td>
<td>6</td>
<td>daki</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The meaning is "to know" in the sense of to know a fact, or to know something by heart (a song, the way, how to do something...). It corresponds, then, to French savoir, Spanish saber. For "to know" in the sense of to be acquainted with (French connaître, Spanish conocer), the Basque verb is ezagutu.

To say "know how to do X", "how to do X" is expressed in Basque as a gerund in -KI: Badakik gazta erosteu, I know how to buy cheese; or as a nominal continuous adverb (7:a): Badakizik euskaraz, Can you speak Basque?, ltt. "Do you know how [to speak] in Basque?", Ez dakit dantzak, I don't know how to dance.

§3 THE COMITATIVE CASE

See GS1 for the forms. Except with personal pronouns, they are all obtained by replacing final -n of the possessive genitive with -kin. Thus with proper names, Iñaki-rekin, Mikel-ekin, Joseba-rekin. Other regular endings:

\[
\begin{array}{cccc}
\text{SING. ART.} & \text{PLUR. ART.} & \text{NO ARTICLE} \\
\hline
\text{ikasle-arekin} & \text{ikasle-ekin} & \text{ikasle-rekin} & \text{asko-rekin} \\
\text{mutil-arekin} & \text{mutil-ekin} & \text{mutil-rekin} & \text{zien-ekin} \\
\text{nesk-arekin} & \text{nesk-ekin} & \text{neska-rekin} & \text{mila-rekin} \\
\end{array}
\]

So demonstratives honekin, haukekin, etc. Personal pronouns nerekin, hirekin, gurekin, zurekin, zuekin.

As we have seen, this case translates English "with"; examples: Iñakirekin bizi naiz | Live with Iñaki,
Iñakirekin etorri da he has come with Iñoki, Iñakirekin hizketan ari da he is talking to Iñoki (with Iñoki), merkatu hogei duorekin doa he is going to the market with twenty duros, ardoarekin batera together with the wine, kotxearekin etorri da he has come with the car.

Elkarrekin "together" is simply the comitative case of the reciprocal pronoun elkar each other, and so the literal meaning is "with each other".

94 THE INSTRUMENTAL CASE

Once again see GS1 for the full array of forms.

Proper nouns: Iñaki-z, Mikel-ez, Joseba-z. Others:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SING. ART.</th>
<th>PLUR. ART.</th>
<th>NO ARTICLE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>ikasle-az</td>
<td>ikasle-ez</td>
<td>ikasle-z</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mutil-az</td>
<td>mutil-ez</td>
<td>mutil-ez</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nesk-az</td>
<td>nesk-ez</td>
<td>neska-z</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

In these regular forms, the instrumental can be said to be formed by changing the final -k of the ergative case to -z. But with pronouns the instrumental suffix is not -(e)x but -(e)tas: honetaz, hauetaz, ni-taz, zuetaz, nor-taz, zer-taz. Forms in -(e)tas are also commonly used with determiners, such as zeinetaz, askotaz, batetaz etc., and even in non-singular common nouns and adjectives, e.g. ikasle-taz for ikasle-z, ikasle-etaz for ikasle-ez. But the forms given in this book are those more acceptable literally today.

The uses of the instrumental case are varied. One of its meanings is "about, concerning": zutaz hitzegint du no has spoken about you, zertaz ari zara what are you (talking) about? It may also express manner, cause, duration and various other concepts. This case is peculiar in that it is often used with a noun without a determiner, forming a kind of adverbial expression, such as euskaraz in Basque (and so with other names of languages), eskuaz by hand, manually, oinez on foot, walking, egunez by day, in the daytime (but gauaz by night, singular), and so on.

The instrumental is something of a "catch-all" case that may be used where nothing else would quite fit: botila ardoz beteta dago the bottle is full of wine, horretaz segur nago I'm sure of that, Bilboz beste hirietan in cities other than Bilbao, etc. Correct usage requires a certain amount of observation.
Another important use of the instrumental is as the case of the complement of various intransitive verbs, where in English the corresponding verb may be transitive, such as ballatu use, gogoratu or oroitu remember, ohartu notice, konturatu realize, etc.

The instrumental is also the case governed by certain postpositions, such as bestalde on the other side of, beyond, gainera in addition to, besides, gero since, subsequent to, kampo apart from, other than.

EXERCISES

Exercise 1:
1. I want to say something but I don't know how to say it. 2. Most Basque youngsters live with their families. 3. What does that book of yours (zure liburu horret) say about fishermen of the Bizkaian (Bizkaiako) coast? 4. I'll have my coffee with a little milk, please. 5. It's Sunday, and apart from this place all the stores in (genitive!) this town are closed throughout the day. 6. Which is this province's principal industry? 7. Are we ready to go (joateko) to the market now? 8. It's late; we'll have milk with some cookies and then we'll go to bed. 9. With this fine afternoon I don't want to stay (egetan) at home, but I have to study (ikasi) geography. We have a big exam. 10. After going to the bathroom, he sits beside the table with his sister and his two brothers. 11. In the middle of the market I've seen a woman buying (erosten) old clothes. 12. How many pesetas does a bag of potatoes cost? 13. Either you must learn Basque or you must go somewhere else (lit. "to another place"). 14. At last I understand everything. 15. How do you spell your name? 16. Our workplace is (aurkitzen do) right here. 17. Do you want to open the packet, or shall I do it? 18. What is this river called? I don't know; I haven't learned its name yet. 19. Someone is sitting in my chair! And someone else (beste norbaltz) is (aurkitzen do) in my bed! 20. The west and the east are not the same; the west is full of industry and workers, but in the east there are few workplaces and young people don't find work.

Exercise 2:

Hondarribia is a pleasant town in the east of Gipuzkoa, by the border. It is located (aurkitzen do) on the coast, and it has a beach. It is really a fishing village, but it has a big tourist trade. The town is very pleasant and pretty; if you go (joaten bozora) to Gipuzkoa, you must go to see Hondarribia!

Today (gour) three friends are going to Hondarribia. We know them; of course, they are our Nikel, Itziar and Iñaki, and they are going in Iñaki's car together. Nikel asks a lot of things,
and Iñaki answers.

"To begin with (Hosteko), you are going to see Pasaia," says Iñaki. "Look, here it is. It is Gipuzkoa's principal port."

"Yes, it's certainly big," says Mikel. There must be (egongo dira) workers by the thousands living (bita) in this place."

"Of course," answers Iñaki. "But now we are entering another town. Here there are more workers than in Pasaia (Pozolbalo), and many factories (fabrika)."

"What is it called?"

"Errrenteria."

At last they come to Hondarribia. From the car they see (Lkusten dituzte) the Bidassoa River and the little port (portu).

"Now let's go to see the village a bit," says Iñaki.

"Great," answers Mikel.
UNIT NINE: THIRD LESSON

DATES

Urteak hamabide hilabete ditu. Haiek izenak hauexek dira: urtarrila, otsaila, martxoan, apirila, maiatzako, ekaina, uztaila, abuztuak, iraila, urria, azaroa, abendua.


Beste batzuek honelaxe esaten dituztenean: urtarrilak 1; abenduak 25ean.

VOCABULARY

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Basque</th>
<th>English</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>ur'arrila</td>
<td>January¹</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>o'tsaila</td>
<td>February</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mar'txo</td>
<td>March</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>a'piril</td>
<td>April⁵</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ma'iatz</td>
<td>May</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>e'kain</td>
<td>June⁶</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>uz'tail</td>
<td>July</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>a'buztu</td>
<td>August⁶</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>i'rail</td>
<td>September⁸</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>u'rri</td>
<td>October⁶</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>a'zar</td>
<td>November⁷</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>a'bendu</td>
<td>December⁸</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Urte Berria</td>
<td>New Year</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Egunberria</td>
<td>Christmas Day</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hi'labete</td>
<td>n. month</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>noiz</td>
<td>adv. when?</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

¹Other regional names: hilbeltz
² " = " = " : jorrail
³ " = " = " : bagil, garagarril
⁴ " = " = " : agorril
⁵ " = " = " : agor, buruil, garoil
⁶ " = " = " : urril
⁷ " = " = " : (h)azil
⁸ " = " = " : lotazil

Note: The observations (see Unit 7, Third Lesson) concerning the days of the week apply equally to the names of the months.

A PATRIOTIC SONG

EUSKO GUDARIAK

¹Basque (politically) Eusko¹ gudariak² gara
²fighters, warriors Euskadi askatzeko¹;
³to liberate, set free gerturik³ daukagu odola⁵
⁴= prest bere alde emateko⁴. (repeat)
⁵blood
⁶to give for it
"a prolonged cry
"hearing
"on the hill top
10 = guztia
11 behind the Basque flag (Ikurrina).
UNIT TEN: FIRST LESSON

STUDY TEXT

Gaur Mikel goiz altzatu da, etza zazpi
t'erdietaarakoa kalcan dago, eta prest Iñaki
etta Arantxa rekin mendira joateko. Mendia
gustatzen zaio Mikeli', baina ez da egon
Gipuzkoako mendietan oraindik. Gaur bere'
lagunekin Aiako Harriak ibiliko da. Aiako
Harriak Gipuzkoa eta Nafarroaren arteko mugan
aurkitzen da, Irureti hegoalderrak.
Iñaki eta Arantxa ere goiz altzatu
dira. Iñaki etxetik atera da bere' arrebar-
rekin; baina badaukate problema bat. Gauean
eurri asko egin du; eta orain kotxoa urrez
betetako dago eta ez dabil! Zer egin? Autob-
busez joan behar.

"Egun on," esaten du Mikelak Iñaki eta
Arantxa ikusi ondoren.

"Bai eta zuri' ere."

"Ez daukagu kotxerik gaur," esaten du
Iñakik. "Autobusa hartu behar dugu."

"Neri' berdin zait," erantzuten du
Mikelak. "Zein autobusetan joan behar dugu?"

"Errenteriarako' autobusean. Erren-
teriatik oinez joango gara."

"Begira," esaten dio Arantxak Iñakiri3,
"autobus hura Errenteriarako' da, ez da?"

"Bai, huraxe da. Goazen!"

Autobusera sartzen dira. Iñakik guz-
tientzat' pagatzen du. "Hiru Errenteriarako'5",
esaten du.

Errenteriak, kafetegi batera sartzen dira
gosalderako. Iñaki eta Arantxa ez dute ozer
gosaldu etxean, ez eta Mikelak ere4. Kafesnax
opilekin gosaltzen dute.

Orain kafetegitik atera dira, eta Arantxa
zerura begira dago. Zerua uredina dago eta
egzukia egiten du.

"Zer iruditzen zaiuzu? Eguraldi ona
edukiko dugu?" galdetzen dio Iñakiri3.

"Baleria' uste dut. Goiz da oraindik.
Baina ez du hotzik egiten."

"Ez eta berorik ere."
“Hobe!" Beroa ez zait gustatzen ibiltzeko, esaten du Arantxak.
"Ez eta neri ere," esaten du Mikelek.
"Baina euria ere ez!"
"Urruti dago mondia hemendik?" galdetzen du Mikelek.
Mikeli asko gustatzen zaizkio gauza hauek. Harentzat hau guztia berria da.
Baina mendi horiurruti dago, urruti! Bi orduz ibili ondoren, ez dire mendira erorrri oraindik.
"Egia esateko," esaten die Arantxak besteetazkien, "nik uste dut Aliako Harrira beste egun batean joan beharko dugula." Orain-txe itzultzen bagara ere, beste bi ordu dauzkagu hemendik Errenteriara.
Baina itzuli baino lehen, sagardotegi bat aurkitzen dute eta sartzen dira zerbait hartzeraren, gosak daude eta. Nahai bat aurkitzen dute libre, eta hor eserita, bi botila sagardo arrauntzopil handi batetik hartzen dute. Ondoren etxera itzultzen dira, nekatuta, eta mendira joan gabe, baina oso pozik!

Language Notes

Some Basque cases have not been included among the ten given in the tables in GSI because they are derived from one of these by the simple addition of a suffix. One of these is the benefactive case, which translates the preposition "for" as in "for Michael", "for Euskadi", etc., and which is obtained from the possessive genitive by adding the syllable -tzat: Mikeletzat, Euskadirentzat. Thus gustentzat pagatzen du he pays for everybody, harentzat for him, etc.
b. Another derived case is the destinative, which is formed by adding -ko to the allative, thus: Bilborako, etxerako, and which expresses destination and may translate "for" also, as in Mikelek lore batzuk erosten ditu etxerako Michael buys some flowers for the house. There is even an are of overlap between the benefactive and the destinative, and "for Euskadi" may be either Euskadirentzat or Euskadiarako. Notice, however, that the destinative is a local case, whereas the benefactive is not. The destinative, like other derived cases ending in -ko, may be used adjectivally, as in Errenteriaiako autobusa the bus to Errenteria; also in autobusa hura Errenteriaiako da that bus is the one to Errenteria. In time expressions, the destinative may translate "by", as in zazpi t’erdietaiako by seven thirty.

c. The dative is the last of the basic ten cases that remains to be learned. It often, but not always, translates the English preposition "to", but must not on any account be confused with the allative. See 10:1. Examples: bai eta zuri ere the same to you (lit., "and to you too"), ner i berdin zait I don't mind (lit., it's similar to me"), "Begira", esaten dio Arantxak Inakiri "Look", says Arantxa to Iñaki, galdetzen dio Inakiri she asks Iñaki, esaten die bestei she says to the others. Observe that the verb gustatu "to like" takes a dative complement that corresponds to the subject of the English verb: gustatzen zaiio Mikeli Michael likes, ner i gustatzen zait I like, etc.

d. You will have noticed the auxiliary in gustatzen zait "I like", gustatzen zaiio "you like", gustatzen zaiio "he likes", gustatzen zaizkit "I like (then)", gustatzen zaizkio "he likes (them)", etc. These forms of the auxiliary are due to the fact that gustatu takes a dative complement (10:c). We have already seen (5:c) that in Basque transitive verb agree not only with the subject but with the direct object.

We now add that, whether transitive or intransitive, Basque verbs also agree with an indirect object, that is to say, with a dative complement. Zait, zaizu etc. are present-tense forms of the intransitive verb IZAN with a dative complement. Here is the paradigm of such forms of IZAN when the subject is either third-person-singular or third-person-plural:

SUBJECT Person 3: zait: 

| (zaik/zain) | (zaizkik/zaizkin) |
| zaio | zaizkio |
| zaigu | zaizkigu |
| zaizu | zaizkiku |
| zaizue | zaizkizue |
| zaie | zaizkie |
There are various types of weather expression. In one type the Romance pattern of "it makes heat/cold/..." is imitated, thus: bere egiten du it's hot, hotz egiten du it's cold, eguzkiak egiten du it's sunny (lit. "it makes sun"), and even curia egiten du it rains (lit. "it makes rain"). Ways to say that it is raining include curia da, curia ari da, and the curious curia ari du. Instead of "the weather is fine/bad/...", one says rather "there is fine/bad/... weather": eguraldi ederra/txarra/... dago. "It is windy" is haizea dabil, lit. "the wind moves". As it rains a lot in the Basque Country, there are numerous expressions referring to various ways of raining, of which the most famed is zirimiri, a light shower or drizzle.

**VOCABULARY**

al'txatu naiz I('ve) got(ten) up  
ar'di n. sheep  
a'rraualzopil n. omelet  
a'tera naiz I('ve) left, gone out  
bah'ratze [bah'rats(a)] n. vegetable garden  
beki ['behi] n. cow  
behintzat certainly, at least  
bere his, her, its (reflexive)  
beren their (reflexive)  
bepro adj., n. hot, heat  
be'niko adj. [e'niko] v. make, do  
egin dut I('ve) made  
e'gon naiz I've been  
ogerbridi (also [e'xbridi]) n. weather  
'e'guuki n. sun  
e'u'ri (also [eu'ri]) n. rain  
e'zer pron. anything (negated, = nothing)  
gab'e pp., cj. without  
gaur adv. today  
goiiz adv. early  
gol'saldu v. (ger. gol'saltzen) have had (for) breakfast  
gol'saldu dut I('ve) had (for) breakfast  
gol'saltzen dut I have (for) breakfast  
ha'rri n. stone, rock  
'hotz adj., n. cold  
i'bili like naiz I'll go, walk, etc.  
i'kusten dut I see  
i'ruditzten zait it seems to me  
i'tzuli v. return, go back  
i'tzultzen naiz I return, go back  
ka'fesni n. coffee with hot milk  
kafa'tegi n. café  
ko'txe n. car  
l'ur n. land; piece of land  
oi'lo n. hen  
o'pil n. bread roll  
pal'gaten dut I pay  
pozik adv. happy, content  
problema n. problem  
sal'gordo n. cider (alcoholic)  
sagardo'tegi n. cider house (where cider is made and sold or served)  
ur'din adj. blue  
ur'ruti adv. far  
zer'ri, foma. txe'rrri n. pig  
zer'ru n. sky

'Bere obligatory if "his", "her" or "its" refers to an owner who is also the subject or object of the clause, e.g. Mikel bere lagunea kin dabil. When not reflexive, bere is also heard in Gipuzkoan, though it is more correct to use a nonreflexive form such as haren.
DRILLS

Drill 1: Examples:
Nik kafea nahi dut.
+ Nerikafea gustatzen zait.
Nikel liburuak nahi ditu.
+ Nikeli liburuak gustatzen zaizkio.

Drill 2: Examples:
Eman (Gve) botila hau Iñakiri.
+ Botila hau Iñakirenzat da.
Eman lore hauek gure lagunei.
+ Lore hauek gure lagunentzat dira.
UNIT TEN: SECOND LESSON

GRAMMAR

§1 THE DATIVE CASE

See GS1. The dative ending for proper nouns is -(r)i: Mikel-i, Iñaki-ri, Joseba-ri.
Colloquially, forms of the type Mikol-eri for Mikol-i are much heard.
The other basic endings are:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SING. ART.</th>
<th>PLUR. ART.</th>
<th>NO ARTICLE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>ikasle-ari</td>
<td>ikasle-el</td>
<td>asko-ri</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mutil-ari</td>
<td>mutil-ei</td>
<td>zein-i</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nesk-ari</td>
<td>nesk-ei</td>
<td>mila-ri</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Demonstratives: honi, horri, hari; hauei, horiei, baiei.
Personal pronouns: neri, hiri, guri, zuri, zeuei.
The dative is one of the more difficult cases for the English speaker to learn to manipulate correctly.
The two cases that most often translate the English preposition "to" are the allative (6:4) and the dative (there is also the destinative, see 10:6); yet these cases are hardly ever interchangeable. The allative usually has a spatial sense (remember that it is a local case): Donostira to San Sebastian, klasera to class, ohera to bed, etc. A noun in the dative case is usually the recipient of the action and is the indirect object of the verb: eman hau Mikeli give this to Michael, iruditzen zait neri it seems to me, esan zerbait hari say something to him. Consider the difference between "Send this to New York", which would be an allative, and "Send this to John", which would be a dative; John is the recipient of the object in the second sentence, but in the first New York is not the recipient, it is only the place of destination.
The dative is by no means always translated by the word "to": instead of "give this to Michael", "say something to him" and "send this to John" we can also say "give Michael this", "tell him something", "send John this", with no preposition. In English we must say "ask Michael", but this is a dative in Basque (galdetu Mikol-i), since we are addressing a question to him.
The dative sometimes expresses not so much the recipient as the affected party—affected either favorably or adversely. The sense here is often hard to translate into English. Saldu neri means
"sell me, sell to me", but erosi neri, according to the context, is either "buy me, buy for me" or "buy from me" (in either case I will be affected). Joan zaio could mean "he has gone to him" (to ask him something, for example) or "he has left him", that is, "he has gone from him". This is in fact an important idiomatic device.

But there is not always a "logical" explanation to account for the use of the dative. Some verbs simply require a dative complement as a lexical peculiarity. Such verbs may be either intransitive or transitive. "He follows me" is hura neri jarraikitzen zait (intransitive); "he looks at me" is hark neri begiratzen dit (or behatzen dit) (transitive). Observe how in English the verb "look" requires the preposition "at" with its complement: this is comparable to what happens in Basque with verbs that require a dative complement, such as jarraiki "Follow" and begiratu "look".

There is also a certain number of postpositions that govern the dative, e.g. buruz about, concerning, towards, esker thanks to, owing to.

### 42 COMPOUND VERBS

Consider the following verbal expressions:

- hitz egiten dut I talk
- ari naiz I am doing something
- bizi naiz I live
- balio du it is worth, it costs
- behar dut I need, I must
- nahi dut I want
- uste dut I think, I believe

The first expression, hitz egiten dut, contains the verb egiten dut "I make, I do" preceded by the word hitz, which is a noun meaning "word"; thus hitz egiten dut is literally "I make word", and is clearly an expression consisting of two parts, a noun hitz and a verb egiten dut. Yet the compound expression hitz egiten dut is commonly used to mean simply "I talk" in Basque.

It is important to note that hitz itself is a noun, not a verb. In the same way, ari, bizi, balio, behar, nahi and uste are all nominal forms (nouns or adjectives), not verbs: bizi means "alive" (and also "life"); balio and uste are nouns meaning "value, worth" and "belief, opinion" respectively. So, oso bizia da means "he (she, it) is very lively, smart"; liburu honen balioa "the value of this book"; nere uste an "my opinion" and nere ustez (instrumental with no article) "in my opinion".
Consequently, ari naiz, bizi naiz, balio du, behar dut etc. are all compound verbs, like hitz egiten dut. In the former the verbal component is in some cases IZAN, in others UKAN; in the latter, the verbal component is the verb EGIN. The main difference here is that whereas IZAN and UKAN are here in the simple present (naiz, dut) EGIN is conjugated in the compound tense known as the present habitual (egiten dut). We shall see later that this is because EGIN has no simple present in modern spoken Basque. Since in a compound verb it is the verbal component that determines the tense, we can say, therefore, that bizi naiz or uste dut are in the simple present, while hitz egiten dut is in the present habitual.

In a dictionary (and in future vocabulary lists), "to live" will be given as BIZI IZAN, "to think, believe" as USTE UKAN, and "to talk" as HITZ EGIN. (Of course, in actual Gipuzkoan Basque, the infinitive of uste dut is not uste ukan, since the word "ukan" is not used, but uste izan, as explained in 8:1; we say USTE UKAN as a shorthand way of indicating that it is conjugated transitively.)

Basque contains a large number of such compound verbs. Several verbs can function as the verbal component of compound verbs, but the three commonest are IZAN, UKAN and EGIN, especially the last. For example, "to work" is lan egin ("make work, do work"), "to sleep" is lo egin ("make sleep"), "to dream" is amets egin ("make dream"), "to cry" is nigar egin ("make tear"), "to laugh" is barre egin ("make laughter"), etc. Of course, each of these compound verbs must be learned as an independent vocabulary item.

EXERCISES

Exercise 1:
1. It's hot today, and we're happy in the garden, in the sun. (eguzkitan).
2. His coffee with milk is cold and he doesn't like it. 3. Have you seen this hen's eggs? 4. How much do you pay in this cider house?
5. I don't have anything for you today. 6. Which do you like more, cows' milk or sheep's milk? 7. Good sheep's cheese is expensive everywhere (olde guztietan or toki guztieten). 8. He's going to market with his pig. 9. He won't have any problem selling (saltzeko) that cow.
10. Where are you going with those clothes? It's cold today! 11. The flat lands are good... 12. When will the exams be? 13. New industries are good for the province... 14. Is there Basque television in Euskadi?
15. We are not going into geographical problems here. 16. Listen.
carefully (ondo) before answering. 17. The water of this river is not blue; it is black! 18. Does this seem all right (ondo) to the workers? 19. This chair will be fine for the living room. 20. Excuse me: a beer for me please.

Exercise 2:

Mikel, Iñaki and Itziar are walking in the main street of Hondarribia. It is sunny, and there are a lot of people out ("in the street"). This street is full of pretty houses. The houses are red, green, blue and white, and (they) all have flowers in the windows. On the street there are stores, bars and restaurants (jotetxe). There are also people selling things outside on the street: clothes, fruit and other things.

Our friends, after walking a little, enter a bar and have (some) beer. Mikel hears (entzuten ditu) Basque, Spanish and French around him. Then they go out again.

Iñaki sees one of his friends in the street. "Hello, Xabier," he says. "How are you?"

"Fine," his friend answers. "And you? I haven't been in San Sebastian lately (osaldion). What's new?"

"You know. Working hard (tan eta tan)."

"And today you've come to the beach, eh?"

"Yes. I'm here with these friends. Now we're going to go to the beach."

"Great."

"When are you going to go to San Sebastian to see us?"

"I don't know when. We'll see."

"Well, if you're (bazoode) in San Sebastian, call!"

"Yes, yes, don't worry, I'll call."

"Okay then, see you later."

"See you later then."
UNIT TEN: THIRD LESSON

EUSKARA EUSKAL HERRIAN

Ia guztiek erdaraz dakite gaur Euskal Herrian. Hegoaletan espainolez dakite, eta iparraldean frantsesez.


Beste batzuek, berriiz, etxean euskara basterik ez dute ikasi¹. Badakite erdara ere, baina ondoren ikasi dute: eskolan, lanean edo kalean. Gaur egun² jendeak telebistarekin ere erdara asko ikasten du.

Errepsio handia egon da urteetan zeihar euskararen kontra. Espainola eta frantsesa izan dira hizkuntza ofizial bakarrak.


Guztira⁴, Euskal Herriko lau pertsonatatik, hiruk ez dakite euskaraz. Alde industrialetan euskara gutiago⁵ egiten da⁶, langile asko "altogether" "less" "(here) is spoken" "imigrante espainoleak dira eta.


Noski, Bizkaitik Zuberoara, euskara ez da alde guztietan berdin-berdina. Euskararen

¹ have only learned...
² nowadays
³ those who don't know
⁴ altogether
⁵ less
⁶ (here) is spoken
...has been written than in others

"unified Basque"

"if you go about


VOCABULARY

ba'kar adj. only
dia'lekto n. dialect
cet'zungo dut I'll listen (to)
I'll hear
erre'presio n. repression
'gai n. material, matter, subject
'galdu v. (ger. 'galtzen) lose
'galdu da (it) has been lost
he'rrialde n. region
his'toria n. history
hiz'kuntza n. language
'ia almost
i'datzi v. (ger. i'dadatzen) write
immig'rantxe n. immigrant
i'ralarri v. (ger. i'ralartzen) read
'i'kontra pp. gov. pos.-gen. against
o'fizial adj. official
per'txona n. person

LITERARY DIALECTS

The forms of written Basque that were developed over the last few centuries prior to the present Euskara Batua movement are known as "literary dialects" (literatur euskalak). For the sake of the student's curiosity, a paragraph is presented written in each of the four literary dialects (see above text) as published in 1880 in a book by Arturo Campion entitled "Erreaga (Roncesvalles), Balada escrita en el dialecto guipuzcoano acompañada de versiones á los dialectos bizcaino, labortano y siletino y de diez y ocho variedades dialectales etc. etc." We have added the English translation and the Gipuzkoan version with modern (batua) spelling.

"It is midnight. King Charlemagne is in Auzperr with all his army. In the dark sky there appears neither moon nor star; for Heavy large fires glow among the mountains; the French are singing in the town; in the surroundings of Altobizkar are heard the wolves' dreadful hoots, and the Basques sharpen, meanwhile, their darts and axes on the rocks and stones of Ibañeta."

Gauerdia da. Karlamano Errege Auzperrin dago bere armada guztiarekin. Zeru ilunean ez da ageri ez ilargirik, eta ez izarrak; urrutira saria handiak distiratzen dutc menditartean; frantsesar kantatzen ardi herriangel; Altobizkaroko inguruetan sentizta dira osoen izaguerizko marrak, eta euskaldunek zorrozten dizuzte bitartean beren dardo eta aizkorak Ibañetako haitz eta harrietan.

GIPUZKOAN:    LAPURDIAN:    BIZKAIAN:    ZUBERIAN:
Karlamano Errege Karlamano Errege Karlamano Errege Karlamano Errege Karlamano Errege Karlamano Errege
Auritz-berrin  Auritz-berrin  Auritz-berrin  Auritz-berrin  Auritz-berrin  Auritz-berrin
Dago bere ekerzi-  Dago bere armada-  Dago bere armada-  Dago bere armada-
to guziarekin.  to guziarekin.  guziarekin.  guziarekin.
Zeru ilunean ez  Zeru ilunean ez  Zeru ilunean ez  Zeru ilunean ez
di ilunean ez da di ilunean ez da di ilunean ez da di ilunean ez da
Hilhinian ezta
da agori, ez illargirik, ta ez izarrik; urrutira sugar andiak dis-tiatzen dute menditartean; Frantzesak kantatzen ari dira errian; Altabiskarko inguruan ten-tzen dira otsoen izugarriko marruak, eta Euskaldunak orroko zorrozten dituzte beren darro da alzkorak Ibañetakoko aitz eta arrietan.

agiri, ez illargirik, ta ez izarrik; urrutira sugar handi batzuk argitzen dute menditartean; Frantzesak kantatzen ari dira errian; Altabiskarko inguruan ten-tzen dira otsoen izugarriko marruak, eta Euskaldunak zorrozten dituzte beren darro da alzkorak Ibañetakoko aitz eta arrietan.
REVIEW

After having completed the first ten units of this Course, this is a good place to carry out a general review before proceeding further. It is left entirely to the individual student (or teacher) to decide how to go about this, but there is very little in the foregoing pages that will not bear a second or third reading. You will by now have realized that the pace of the course is a fairly vigorous one; but if you have worked through it painstakingly, you should also be conscious that you are making progress.

Here are a few points for you to check through so as to roughly gauge your progress. This is only a spot check, and certainly not an exhaustive test. If you cannot "pass" it, then you no doubt need to go back and run through the lessons a second time before moving on. However, you yourself can best judge whether you are making satisfactory progress.

1) VOCABULARY. The words in the following list ought to be perfectly familiar, so that you immediately understand and can easily make up a sentence with each one. Are they?
    alba, ama, amerikana, ardo, art, arratsalde, asko, atsegilen, autobus, bado, bat, balna, bakorrak, basarral, boso, batzuen, begirio, behar, beltz, berde, berrik, besta, bete (betetzen, beteko, beteto), bizi, daltu (daltzen, daltuko), ederki, egia (egiten, egiendo), egun, emakume, erdi, ere, esan (esaten, esango), etorrri (etortzen, etorriko), etxe, euskaldun, euskora, ez, gaur, gazte, gizon, goazen, gorri, gustatu (gustatzen, gustatuko), guti, guzti, han, handi, hemen, herri, ikasi (ikasten, ikasiko), ikaste, ikusi (ikusten, ikusiko), itsaso, izen, jende, joon (joaten, joango), kaler, klase, lagun, lan, mendia, merkatu, mesadez, mutxi, nahi, neska, nola, non, on, ondo, orain, ordu, oso, pixka bat, polik, politu (politzen, polituko), sortu (sortzen, sortuko), toberna, tokt, txikit, ume, zahar, zentzi, zer

2) GRAMMAR. (a) You should know "by heart" the full declension (except for the forms with the proximate article) of any noun, adjective, determiner or pronoun, as laid out in Grammar Summary 1; you should also know the uses of each declension form, as explained in the course of the preceding lessons. Test yourself to see if this is the case.
    (b) You should also know the present simple tense of the following verbs, which you have studied:
    EDUKI*, EGON, ETORRI, IBILI, IZAN*, JAKIN*, JOAN, UKAN*
    *With singular and plural third-person direct objects.
    †Simple, and singular and plural third-person with indirect (dative) objects
3) COMPREHENSION. Upon rereading you should be able to make pretty good sense of any of the Basque passages in the preceding lessons without looking anything up.

4) EXPRESSION. You have already tested this if you made up sentences with each word in section 1 as instructed. As a further test and exercise, imagine that someone from, say, Hondarribia has just arrived for a visit to your town. Think of all the things you could speak about with him in Basque. Make up an imaginary conversation as long as possible.
STUDY TEXT


Kafea hartu ondoren, Edurnek zigarro bat erretzen du, eta bere liburuak irakurtzen ditu edo telebista ikusten du.


Gero, askotan zuzen ohera joaten da. Goizean goiz5 altzatu behar izaten du eta....

1 by this time
2 she teaches class, lit. "she gives school"
3 at two o'clock or [so], i.e. about two o'clock
4 before [going] to bed

VOCABULARY

a'faldu vt. have (for) dinner (i.e. the evening meal)
'ahizpa n. sister (of a female)
ask'tan many times, often
'batzu(e)tan sometimes

bazi'kaldu vt. have (for) lunch;
be'ti adv. always
biz'kaian adj., n. Bizkaian
e'gunero adv. every day, daily
e'rere vt., vt. burn; smoke (tabacco)
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>MEANING</th>
<th>SUPINE</th>
<th>INFINITIVE</th>
<th>GERUND</th>
<th>PRES. SIMPLE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>have dinner</td>
<td>afaldu</td>
<td>afal</td>
<td>afaltzen</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>get up; raise</td>
<td>altxatu</td>
<td>altxa</td>
<td>aaltxatzen</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>go/take out</td>
<td>atera</td>
<td>atera</td>
<td>ateratzen</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>find; be</td>
<td>auki</td>
<td>auki</td>
<td>aukiten</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>have lunch</td>
<td>bazkaldu</td>
<td>bazkal</td>
<td>bazkalten</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fill</td>
<td>bete</td>
<td>bete</td>
<td>beteten</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>look for</td>
<td>billatu</td>
<td>billa</td>
<td>bilatzen</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>throw, pour</td>
<td>bota</td>
<td>bota</td>
<td>botatzen</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>finish</td>
<td>bukatu</td>
<td>buka</td>
<td>bukatzen</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>call; be called</td>
<td>dei</td>
<td>deitzen</td>
<td>deitzen</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>make, do</td>
<td>eduki</td>
<td>eduki</td>
<td>edikutzen</td>
<td>daukat</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>be, stay</td>
<td>egon</td>
<td>egon</td>
<td>egoten</td>
<td>nago</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>listen, hear</td>
<td>entzun</td>
<td>entzun</td>
<td>entzetun</td>
<td>tontzetun</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>answer</td>
<td>erantzun</td>
<td>erantzun</td>
<td>eranztun</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>buy</td>
<td>erosi</td>
<td>eros</td>
<td>erosten</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>burn, smoke</td>
<td>erre</td>
<td>erre</td>
<td>erretzen</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>say, tell</td>
<td>esan</td>
<td>esan</td>
<td>esaten</td>
<td>diot</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sit</td>
<td>eseri</td>
<td>eser</td>
<td>esertzen</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>come</td>
<td>etorrri</td>
<td>etor</td>
<td>etortzen</td>
<td>nator</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>know</td>
<td>ezagutu</td>
<td>ezagut</td>
<td>ezagutzen</td>
<td>tazaztuz</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ask</td>
<td>galde</td>
<td>galde</td>
<td>galdezen</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>lose</td>
<td>galdu</td>
<td>gal</td>
<td>galizen</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>have breakfast</td>
<td>gosaldu</td>
<td>gosal</td>
<td>gosaltzen</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>like</td>
<td>gustatu</td>
<td>gusta</td>
<td>gustatzen</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>take</td>
<td>hartu</td>
<td>bar</td>
<td>harten</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>start, begin</td>
<td>basi</td>
<td>bas</td>
<td>hasten</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>go (about)</td>
<td>ibili</td>
<td>ibil</td>
<td>ibilizen</td>
<td>nabil</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>write</td>
<td>idatz</td>
<td>idatz</td>
<td>idazten</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>learn, study</td>
<td>ikasi</td>
<td>ikas</td>
<td>ikasten</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>see</td>
<td>ikusi</td>
<td>ikus</td>
<td>ikuszen</td>
<td>tdaikusat</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>read</td>
<td>irakurri</td>
<td>irakur</td>
<td>irakurten</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>open</td>
<td>ireki</td>
<td>ireki</td>
<td>irekitzen</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
The symbol † indicates literary or archaic forms, mentioned merely for the sake of completeness. It is seen that the vast majority of Basque verbs lack simple tense forms; see further 11:1. The infinitive is the stem from which the supine and gerund are derived. The derivation of the gerund is very regular, and you can easily work out the rules for yourself from these examples. The supine isn’t quite as predictable, but is not very difficult either. In future vocabularies new verbs will be given with their "principal parts" like this: afaldu, afal, -tzen; altxatu, altxa, -tzen; ateroa, -tzen; bete, -tzen; egindar, -ten; egoin, -ten; hazi, hasi, -ten; poztu, poz, -ten; idatzi, idatx, idatzten; ozagutu, ozagut, ozagutzen. Note carefully the pattern of verbs like egindar, egoin, esan, izan, joan, which have identical infinitives and supines, but drop the -n and add -ten for the gerund.

**GRAMMAR**

### 11 COMPOUND TENSES: THE PRESENT HABITUAL

There are two present tenses in English: for example, I come and I am coming are both present tenses of "to come". Somewhat similarly, Basque has three present tenses:

**PRESENT SIMPLE** | **PRESENT CONTINUOUS** | **PRESENT HABITUAL**
---|---|---
ETORRI, to come: |  | 
(ni) nator | (ni) etortzen ari naiz | (ni) etortzen naiz
EKARRI, to bring: |  | 
(nik) daktar | (nik) etorkotzen ari naiz | (nik) etorkotzen dut

The vast majority of Basque verbs, however, lack a present simple (11:a), and have only two presents:

ALTXATU, to rise, get up; to raise, lift |  |
---|---
(ni) altxatzen ari naiz | (nik) altxatzen naiz/ 

There are three types of tense in Basque, simple tenses, periphrastic tenses and compound tenses, of which the present simple, the present continuous (7:1), and the present habitual are respective examples. All are important, but the tenses most often used in Basque are compound tenses such as the present habitual; many of these will be studied in the following units. In order to master them you must study the following observations carefully.

Central to the Basque verb system is the distinction between transitive and intransitive. The difference, in terms of English grammar, is that transitive verbs take a direct object, and intransitive ones don't: "I rise," intransitive; "I raise my hand," transitive. So in Basque: (ni) altxatzen naiz; (nik) eskua altxatzen dut. We have seen in 8:2 that the subject of a transitive verb is marked differently than the subject of an intransitive one, hence ni and nik here. Note that the verb ALTXATU can be used either intransitively or transitively, while English in this case uses different verbs ("rise" or "get up"; "raise" or "lift (up)").

We can also turn the thing around and define a transitive verb as one that has an "agent". By "agent", of course, we mean the element marked as ergative in Basque. So, in (nik) eskua altxatzen dut, nik is the agent, while in the intransitive sentence (ni) altxatzen naiz there is no agent. Or compare lana bostetan bukatzen dut (nik) "I finish work at five" (transitive: "I" is the agent) with lana bostetan bukatzen da "work finishes at five" (intransitive: no agent).

In the above examples of the three present tenses, notice that the intransitive-transitive distinction is not marked morphologically in the present continuous (either in the verb or in the subject), but that it is marked (in both) in the present simple and in the present habitual. In the habitual, the auxiliary varies according to the verb's transitivity: if intransitive, IZAN is used; if transitive, UKAN. Intransitive: etortzen naiz I come, altxatzen naiz I rise, get up; transitive: ekartzen dut I bring (it), altxatzen dut I raise (it), lift (it) up.

As you know (8:6), transitive verbs in Basque agree with their objects as well as with their subjects; so, eskua altxatzen dut "I raise my hand"; eskuak altxatzen ditut "I raise my hands".

Having said this, the question remains: when is a verb transitive and when is it intransitive? This is usually evident from
the sense, as in the examples given so far. If there is a direct object, as with ETARRI "bring", ALTAXATU "raise", then it is transitive; if not, as with ETORRI "come", ALTAXATU "rise", it is intransitive. It is not necessary for the direct object to be mentioned, only understood. In Basque it is very common for a pronominal subject or object to be omitted, without affecting the sentence's structure: nik hura ikusten dut "I see it" is reduced to ikusten dut. In such cases the object is mentioned in English; but in other cases we may not express any object in English either, because we feel that it is too general to be named, as when we say "I see," or "do you smoke?", or "He always writes." Nonetheless we know that I see something, you smoke something, and he writes something; and in Basque such sentences are just as transitive as others: ikusten dut; oerrtzen duzu?; beti idazten du. After all, in these sentences the subject is just as much the agent of the action as if the direct object were expressed.

But other verbs that never or very rarely take a direct object are treated as transitive in Basque; here it is best simply to learn whether each verb is transitive or intransitive. This is the case of crantzun "answer", as in ez du crantzuten he doesn't answer, or of deitu "call", as in egunero deitzten du he calls every day, or of begiratu "look", as in beti begiratzen dut I always look. (In these verbs, what may seem to be direct objects, such as "he answer me," "he calls me," "I always look at it," are indirect (dative) objects in Basque.) In all such cases the transitive verb form implies an "anonymous" third-person-singular direct object.

The opposite also occurs: seemingly transitive verbs may be intransitive in Basque. We have already seen gustatu "like", which is intransitive and has a dative complement corresponding to the English subject: liburu (neri) gustatzen zait "I like the book." A somewhat different example is oroitu (or gogoratu) remember, which is intransitive: (ni) oroitzten (gogoratzen) naiz I remember. The English direct object of oroitu and several other such verbs is put into the instrumental case: Liburuaz oroitzten naiz I remember the book (9:4).

Compound verbs (10:2) take their transitivity from the helping verb, such as egin, and so again may be transitive although the corresponding English verb is intransitive, as in lan egin "work", hitz egin "talk", lo egin "sleep", etc.

We have seen that ALTAXATU has different meanings according to whether it is used intransitively or transitively, although there is a clear relationship between the intransitive and transitive senses. There are numerous other verbs that can be used intransitively or transitively according to the meaning: ateratzen naiz I go out but ateratzen dut I take out; aurkitzen naiz I am (see Unit 8) but aurkitzen dut I find; betetzen naiz I fill up, become full, but betetzen
dut I fill up, make full; bukatzen da it finishes, comes to an end, but bukatzen du he finishes, brings to an end; deitzzen naiz I am called but deitzzen dut I call; egiten naiz I become but egiten dut I make, do; erretzen naiz I burn, get burned, burn myself, but erretzen dut I burn, cause to burn, I smite; galtzen naiz I get lost, Lose my way, but galtzen dut I lose; hassten naiz I commence, start (to do something), but hassten dut I initiate, start (something); ibiltzen naiz I go (about) but ibiltzen dut [coll.] I cause to go, move; irekitzen da it opens (intr.) but irekitzen du he opens (tr.); itzultzen naiz I return, come/go back, turn around (intr.), but itzultzen dut I return, give back, turn around (tr.), I translate; izaten naiz I am (habitually) but izaten dut I have (habitually) (8:1); joaten naiz I go but joaten dut [Lap.] I take, convey; pozten naiz I am glad, become glad, but pozten dut I please, gladden; sartzten naiz I enter, come/go in, but sartzten dut I put in.

You should be warned that there are some minor variations regarding the regimes of verbs from dialect to dialect and even from person to person. For example, gosaldu, bazkaldu and afaalku, when there is no specific object (e.g. araztzeak gosaltzen ditu I have eggs for breakfast), are transitive in some dialects (Gipuzkoan included) but intransitive in others.

Any transitive verb can take an impersonal construction in which it takes an intransitive form, the agent being left out. For example, ogia saltzen da hemen bread is sold here, they sell bread here; Liburu horiek ez dira irezkurtzen those books are not read, people do not read those books; itsasoa ikusten da hemendik the sea is seen here, you can see the sea from here; nola esaten da hori? how does one say that?, how do you say that?; nola idatzen da? how does one write it?, how do you spell it?; euskara ez da egiten han Basque is not spoken there; gauza hauek asko entzuten dira one hears these things a lot; askotan galdotzen da it is often asked; ohe honegan ondo lo egiten da one sleeps well on this bed. This construction is much used in the third person singular or plural; in other persons, it is possible but rarer, e.g. ezagutzen naiz hemen I on known here, they know me here.

As can be seen in all the examples above, the formation of the present habitual tense is as follows:
1. the auxiliary is the present of IZAN or UKAN, depending on whether the verb is intransitive or transitive; (2) the main verb takes the form of the gerund in N (11:a), which in compound tenses marks the habitual aspect.

Although we call the tense "habitual", this, like many other grammatical labels, is not to be taken too literally. It is true that this tense is often used to express a habitual action or state, e.g. goizetan Edunek
lan egiten du; arratsaldeetan, berriz, ikasten du in the mornings Edurne works; in the afternoons, on the other hand, she studies; Bilbora joaten da egunero she goes to Bilbao every day, and many other examples in the study text. But like the English "present habitual" ("I come," "she works," etc.), it has various non-habitual uses. Remember that it is the most frequently used present tense, except for verbs that have a present simple in common use such as IZAN, UKAN, EGON, EDUKI, JAKIN and so on, and compound verbs formed with these (10:2).

Here are some examples in which the sense is not habitual: Mikeleko Donostia ezagutzen du Michael knows San Sebastián; zer ontzuten duzu? what do you hear?, what can you hear?; ikasten dut, baina ez dut ulertzen I see it, but I don't understand it; asko poztzen naiz I'm very glad; hasten gara? shall we begin? (here perhaps the future, hasiko gara?, is preferable, but in reality both are used). You will come across many other uses of this tense.

Note that the habitual is used in conditions and certain time clauses to refer to the future: here English too uses a present: bihar bero egiten badu, hondartzara joango gara if the weather’s warm tomorrow, we’ll go to the beach; Edurne etortzen denean, hasiko gara when Edurne comes, we’ll begin.

EXERCISES

Exercise 1: Fill in the appropriate form of each verb:
Edurne Itziarren laguna (IZAN), eta Gernikan (BIIZ IZAN). Edurnek goizetan (LAN EGIN), eta arratsaldeetan Bilbora (JOAN) ikasten.

Exercise 2: Imagine you are Edurne, and retell the text in ex. 1 in the first person; you will begin thus:
Itziarren laguna naiz, eta Gernikon bizitza izan. Goizetan lan egiten dut, eta arratsaldeetan Bilbora joaten naiz ikasten....
Exercise 3: Translate:

"Where do you live, Eduardo?"
"In Gernika."
"Ah, then you're a Bizkaian. Do you live alone?"
"No, I live with my father and mother, with my sisters and with my brother."
"Are you a student?"
"Yes, I study at university, but I work too."
"Where?"
"I work in a school, but in the mornings only."
"Do you teach class?"
"Yes, I'm a teacher."
"Do you go to work by car?"
"No, I don't go by car. Either I walk or I go by bus. Usually I walk."
"Do you start at eight o'clock in the morning?"
"No, I don't start at eight. I start at nine."
"At what time do you come out to have lunch?"
"At one."
"Do you want to go to have a wine at one, then?"
"No, thank you. I always go straight home. I have to do a lot of things in the afternoon."
"Okay then. See you later."
STUDY TEXT

Mikel, gure amerikanoa, hasi da Euskal Herria ezagutzen¹.
"Gernikan egon al zara?" galdetzen dio Iñakik Mikel iagande goiz batean.
"Ez," erantzuten dio Mikelak, "ez naiz inoiz egon."
"Orduan ez duzu inoiz ikusi Gernikako Arbola famatua?" esaten dio Itziarrek.
"Ez, baina entzun bai, entzun dut hartaz."
"Eta Gerniko izeneko Picassoren koadroa ikusi duzu?" galdetzen dio Iñakik.
"Bai, noski, hori ere oso famatua da."
"Ba al dakizu koadro horren historia?"
"Ez oso ondo."
"Noiz baitz ezango dizute. Baina gaur, Gernika ikustera joan nahi al zenuke?" 
"Bai, joan nahi nuke, noski. Beti gustatzen zait toki berri bat ikustea."
"Goazen bada. Baina oraintze hasi behar dugu; bestela berandu egingo zaigu. Goazen azkar, eta Gernikan egongo gara bazkaltzeko."

⁰"Nik lagun bat daukat Gernikan," esaten du Itziarrek.
"Joan baino lehen, deituko diot telefonoz."


Hiru lagunak zuzen Iñakiren kotxera doaz eta barruan esertzera dira: Iñaki eta Itziar aurrean, eta Mikel atzean. Eta Gernika aldera!

¹has started to get to know the Basque Country
²sometime
³I'll tell you
⁴would you like to go...?
⁵I'd like to go
⁶I'll call her
⁷to look for Edurne, to meet E.
VOCABULARY

ar'bola n. tree
ar'tean pp. between, among
a'tzean pp. behind
au'rrean pp. in front (of)
a'kar adv. quickly, fast
az'pian pp. under
'bheean adv. below
'bhero he/him, she/her, it
bes'tela adv. otherwise
e'liza n. church
fa'matu adj. famous
gai'nean pp. on top (of), on, over
'goian adv. above
'inoiz adv. ever (negated, = never)
'koadro [kwa-] n. picture
nahi make I'd like to

LANGUAGE NOTES

a.
Barruan, azpian, erdian etc. are called postpositions (pp.) because they are comparable to our prepositions except that they follow rather than precede the noun:

mahaiaren gai'nean
mahaiaren azpian
etxearen aurrean
etxearen a'tzean
herriaren erdian
herriaren ingaruan
herrien a'teian
tabernaren barruan
tabernaren ondoan

"on the table"
"under the table"
"in front of the house"
"behind the house"
"in the middle of the town"
"around the town"
"between/among the towns"
"inside the bar"
"next to the bar"

All the above postpositions govern the possessive-genitive case; there are also postpositions that govern other cases. Try to learn these words, as they are in frequent use. They can also be used with no preceding noun, that is adverbially: gai'nean dago it's on top; aurrean gaude we're in front; a'tzean bizi naiz I live at the back; erdian barruan stay inside. The words goian, behean, kanpoan are similar, but are only used adverbially: zain daude behean they're waiting below (or downstairs); kanpoan egiten du lan he works outside. For "outside", one also says kakean.

GRAMMAR

§1 GERUNDS AND THE VERBAL NOUN

We have already met (8:4) the three most common gerunds, those in -N, -RA and -KO, e.g. ikusten, ikustera, ikusteko. We are now going to look more closely at the uses of such forms.
The gerund in -N is of course used to form the present habitual (11:1), and also as a continuous adverb (7:a) in the present continuous (7:1). It has other uses too, and these present some difficulty as they don't really correspond to the function of any particular verb form in English, French or Spanish. The principal such use is in the complement of certain verbs, such as jakin "know [how to do]", ikusi "learn [(how) to do]", ahantzi "forget [how to do]", hasi "start, begin [doing]", salatu "try [to do]", lagundu "help [to do]", utzi "let [do]", permit [to do]", and verbs of perception like ikusi "see, watch," entzun "hear, listen," aditu "hear," sentitu "feel," "hear," aurkitu "find," naboritu and hauteman "notice," etc. E.g. ez dakit idazten I don't know how to write; irakurtzen ikasten ari naiz I'm learning (how) to write; hasten naiz ulertzen I'm beginning to understand; ez dizut utzikoa pagatzen I won't let you pay; erretzen ikusi dut I've seen him smoking.

In these constructions nonverbal continuous adverbs may take the place of the gerund: ez dakit franksez I don't know (how to speak) French; kartetan ikasten ari naiz I'm learning to play cards (karta "(playing) card"); hasten naiz berriketan I'm starting to shout; hizketan ikusi dut I've seen him talking.

The gerund in -N is also used in the complements of some adjectives, e.g. ulertzen erraz da it's easy to understand. The verbal noun is also possible: ulertzea erraz da; see below.

The gerund in -RA is also used in the complements of certain verbs, particularly those expressing motion and directionality: joan "go," etorrri "come," eraman "take, carry," ekarri "bring," bidali "send," etc. Other verbs such as behartu "force, oblige [to do]," utzi "let, permit," etc., take this gerund too. (There is some overlapping here with the gerund in -N, e.g. with utzi.)

A periphrastic future tense, analogous to the English "I am going to do," exists with the verb JOAN and the gerund in -RA: hemen eserteren na I'm going to sit here.

The gerund in -KO has several functions. It is used independently of the verb of the clause in which it is found, expressing purpose: liburu hau euskara ikasteko irakurtzen ari naiz I am reading this book in order to learn Basque; eman nori bostehun peseta liburuoa pagatzeko give me five hundred pesetas to pay for the book; hau erosten dut ez erretzeko I am buying this so as not to smoke; Zeratorako da gauza hori? Botilak irekitzeko, What is that thing for? To open bottles with.
Because it ends in -ko, this form may be used adjectively: ikasteko liburua a learning book, a book for learning; euskara
ikasteko liburua a book for Learning Basque; botilak irekitzeko
gauza bat a thing to open bottles with. Like any other adjectival
(see 8:3), the qualified noun phrase may be omitted, the declension
endings or determiner of the latter being added straight onto the
adjectival: botilak irekitzeko bat one to open bottles with; botilak
irekitzekoa the one to open bottles with; botilak irekitzekoarekin
with the one to open bottles with, etc. etc.

The gerund in -ko is something like a future participle:
it expresses not just purpose, but "destined to do," or even just
"about to do." Ekarri liburua irakurtzeko bring a book to read;
gauza asko dauzkat egiteko I have a lot of things to do. This is seen
particularly in a periphrastic future tense consisting of the gerund
and intransitive IZAN: Bihar-Bilbora joateko(a) naiz I'll be going
to Bilbao tomorrow; the article -a is optional.

The gerund in -ko is also used in the complements
of certain particular verbs; its use in indirect commands,
as complement of esan "tell" and some other verbs, is
especially important: Esan Mikeli etortzeko Tell Michael
to come; Zer esango diot Itziarri? Bere lagunak ekartzeko,
What shall I tell Itziar? To bring her friends.

Other verbs of commanding and requesting, such as eskatu
"ask [to do]," agindu "order [to do]," exijitu "demand [that... do],"
etc., are used with the gerund in -ko by some speakers and with the
verbal noun (see below) by others.

The gerund in -an is used in a temporal sense,
and means "when [doing]" or "on [doing]"; it can also be
translated by a "when" clause in English: Gernikara sartzean
when entering Gernika, on entering G., when they (you, I,
etc.) enter G. Sometimes it is more causal or circumstantial
than temporal, as in Edurne asko pozten da Itziar entzutean
Edurne is very happy to hear Itziar ("on hearing Itziar").

The gerund in - tik, in the temporal sense of "since [doing],"
"from the time when [... do]," is less frequent.

There are gerunds formed with compound suffixes. That
in -ko(?)an may mean "with the intention of [doing]," but also "in
the event that...": Gernikara joateko tan with the intention of going
to Gernika, in the event that I (you, he,...) should go to Gernika.

That in -raoan means "when about to [do]": etxotik ateraz-
terskoan, telefonoa ontzuten du just when he's leaving (about to
leave) the house, he hears the telephone ring.

All these forms that we call gerunds are derived
from a stem ending in -tze or -te, depending on the verb,
by addition of endings --N, -RA, -KO, -AN, -TIK, etc.
that are in origin declension suffixes. This stem in
-tze or -te is the verbal noun.

If you learn by heart the gerund in –N of each verb, as given in the vocabularies (see IIIa), you can obtain any verbal noun by dropping the –N of this. But there are rules for forming the verbal noun from the infinitive, as follows:

1. In general, add -tze: afal-tze, alltka-tze, aurki-tze, bente-tze, etor-tze, ozagii(t)-tze; except that:

2. Add -te:
   a) if the infinitive ends in s or z: eros-te, has-te, poz-te;
   b) if the infinitive ends in ts or tz, which are reduced to s and z respectively: idatz + idaz-te, herts + hers-te;
   c) furthermore, if the infinitive ends in nts or ntz, the n is optionally dropped in the verbal noun: ahantz + ah(n)z-te, erants + era(n)s-te;
   d) if both infinitive and supine end in n (e.g. egin, egon, entzun, erantzun, esan, jakin, joan), the n disappearing when -te is added: egi-te, ego-te, entzu-te, etc.

The verbal noun functions like a noun, as its name suggests. Like any common noun, it requires a determiner, which may be the singular article, the partitive article –IK, or another determiner such as a demonstrative, and it is declinable: joatea, jolateak, joteari, jotearen, etc. It expresses a nominalization of the action or state in question, and is often used, especially in the absolutive singular form (-tzea, -tea): ikastea ona da it is good to learn ("to learn, learning, is good"); eta hori lan egitea deitzen duzu! and you call that working!; gustatzen zait liburuak irakurtzea I like to read (reading) books; ez zaitondo irudizten autobiusetan erretzea I don't think it's right ("it doesn't seem all right to me") to smoke in buses.

The complement of nahi izan can be a verbal noun: Mikelek liburu hau eroastea nahi dut I want Michael to buy this book. However, Liburu hau eros nahi dut I want to buy this book. If the supine (erosi) is used, the subjects of "want" and "buy" (or whatever verb is used) must be identical. If nahi izan is in the negative, the partitive form of the verbal noun may be used: ez dut nahi Mikelek liburu hau eroasterik I don't want Michael to buy this book.

Obligation and impossibility can be expressed by constructing the verbal noun positively or negatively, respectively, as complement of either EGON (intransitive) or EDUKI (transitive): liburu hau irakurtzea dautak I have to read this book; ez dago hori galtzerik that can't be lost ("there is no losing that").

As shown in some of the above examples, both the verbal noun and the gerunds retain their ability to
take subjects and all kinds of complements, so that although non-finite, they may at times translate complete subordinate clauses: hau esaten dut zuak Euskal Herriaren historia ulertzeko I'm saying this for you to understand (so that you may understand) the Basque Country's history; ez naiz etxean egongo Itziar estortzean I won't be at home when Itziar comes; kanpotarrek euskara ikastea ona da it is good for foreigners to learn (that foreigners should learn) Basque.

In northern dialects (but not elsewhere), a determined direct object of a verbal noun or gerund is placed in the possessive-genitive case, e.g. kanpotarrek euskararen ikastea ona da. (8:3).
So also euskararen ikasten ari da he is learning Basque; but this does NOT occur in compound tenses (11:1), e.g. the present habitual: euskara ikasten du.

EXERCISES

Exercise 1: Translate:
My house is in the middle of the town, between the plaza and the church. Behind the house we have a garden. Inside the house, there is a living room and three bedrooms, and a kitchen and a bathroom of course. We stay in the kitchen for "to have" breakfast, lunch and dinner, next to a big table. The kitchen and living room are downstairs ("below"), and the bedrooms, on the other hand, upstairs ("above"). This is my room. Would you like to come and see it (ikustea)? Excuse me, some clothes are on ("on top of") the bed. Upon looking (begirotu) out the window (lohottk) one sees those mountains. There are many mountains around the town. My brother is not at home now; he's outside. I see him from here; he's in front of the church. And where is my little sister? I don't know. Listen! Do you hear that? What is there under the bed? I know: it's my sister! She's listening to everything!

Exercise 2: Choose the appropriate form (gerund, verbal noun) of the verbs in parentheses, e.g.
Gernikara goaz Edurme (IKUSI). + Gernikara goaz Edurme ikustera.
UNIT THIRTEEN

STUDY TEXT

Ba al dakizu Donostiatik Gernikara joateko bidea?

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Gernika</th>
<th>Lekeitio</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>BILBORA</td>
<td>Galdakoa</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Zornotza</td>
<td>Durango</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(BIZKAIA)</td>
<td>(GIPUZKOA)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Donostia</td>
<td>Toruiz</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Deba</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>


Zuzen Arbolara joaten dira, baina ia ordu erdia berandu. Eta Edurne? Joan da? Ez da joan; besteen zain dago oraindik. Urrutitik ikustean, Edurnek Itziarri deitzen dio:

"Itziar! Hemen nago! Azkenean etorri zarete!"
"Edurne, barkatu!" esaten dio Itziarrek. "Oso berandu etorri gara, baina..."
"Lasai, meska! Galdu zarete ala...?"
"Horri, guti gora behera," esaten du Iñakik.
"Zornotzan eskuina hartu beharrean ezkerra hartu dut, eta gero buelta eman behar izan dugu."
"Bazkaltzeko ordua da," esaten du Itziarrek.
"Goazen jatetxe batera zerbait jatera."
"Zu zara hemengoa," esaten dio Iñakik Edurneri.
"Nora joan ahal gara?"
"Etorri," erantzuten du Edurnek, "jatetxe bat ezagutzen dut, eta badaiteke zabalik egotean."
"Hori espero dut," esaten du Mikelek; "ni behintzat goseak nago!"

1 as far as Deba, up to Deba (allative with suffix -lno).
2 next to the border between G. and B.
3 from Deba onwards
4 the inland (interior) one: barruko, genitive of barru
5 one must go (impersonal)
6 straight ahead: ourreko, allative of ourren
7 "Iñaki and the three," i.e. Iñaki and the other two
8 Where can we go?
9 (Bizk.) = Lreakta
10 maybe it's open

VOCABULARY

ba'daiteke maybe (tokes verbal noun)
be'harrean cj. instead of
be'rehala adv. straight away
bi'de n. way, route
'beuela eman [beu] vt. turn around; go for a walk
o'dan, -ten vt. drink
elkarri, elkar, -tzen; dakart vt. bring
erruman, -ten; darumat vt. take (to a place), carry, lead
es'khuin (also es'kubi) n. right
es'pero ukan (izan) vt. hope; expect
ez'ker n. left
'gainki adv. bad, badly, wrong
gu'ti go'ra beho'ra more or less, approximately, thereabouts
ha'sorreta adv. angry, angrily
herts [hi'tsi], herts, hersten
[i'tsin] or [i'tsisen] vt., vt. close
ho'be adj. better
jan, -ten vt. eat
jatetxe n. restaurant
'lehen adj., adv. first
po'liko adv. slowly

GRAMMAR

§ 1 THE PRESENT PERFECT

The present perfect is a compound tense. See the general observations on such tenses in 11:1.

The auxiliary verb in the present perfect tense
is the same as that in the present habitual: IZAN when intransitive, UKAN when transitive. But in the present habitual, the main verb takes the form of the gerund in -N; and in the perfect, it takes the form of the supine (which, as we shall see, is the same as the participle). This form, then, is the mark of the perfect aspect. Examples:
afaltzen dut I have dinner; afaldu dut I have had dinner; aitzatzen naiz I rise; aitzatu naiz I have risen; ateratzen zara you go out; ateratzen zara you have gone out; betetzen du he fills; bete du he has filled; egiten dugu we make, we do; egin dugu we have made, we have done; egoten dira they are (habitually); egon dira they have been; ekartzen dituzue you (pl.) bring them, ekarri dituzue you (pl.) have brought them.

Once again, the name given to the tense is not a very exact indication of its use. We call it the present perfect because the auxiliary is in the present tense, as in the English equivalent "I have risen," "he has filled," etc. The translation aitzatu naiz = "I have risen" is sometimes but not always correct: Basque also often uses the present perfect where English prefers the simple past. For example we say "What time did you get up this morning?" (not "what time have you gotten up...?") yet Basques say zer ordutan aitzatu zara gaur goizean? But if the question was about yesterday morning, a different tense would be used. Consequently we could perhaps say that the Basque present perfect expresses the recent past. If you try translating the study text into English, you will find that in some cases this tense corresponds to an English perfect and other times to a simple past.

EXERCISES

Exercise 1:
Reread the study text for Unit 11. Now suppose that it is Monday night, and Edurne is in bed. Following the text, tell what Edurne has done today (using the present perfect wherever appropriate). For example, the first paragraph of the study text will stand as it is, but the second will read like this:


Now rewrite the last three paragraphs similarly.
Exercise 2:
Repeat exercise 1, but now in the first person, as if you were Edurne.
The first paragraph will begin:
Itzlarren lagun bot naiz. Bizkaitarren naiz, eta....
The second paragraph will begin:
Zortzean altzatu naiz gaur, eta zortzi t'enderlon gosaldun
dut. Kogetsnea gosaldun dut....
Rewrite the whole text thus.

Exercise 3:
Now imagine you are Mikel, and you are telling someone what happened
on your journey to Gernika this morning. Using the second paragraph
of this unit’s study text as the basis, begin like this:
Ondo labi gura Zornotzarako,...

Exercise 4:
Ordi zu Edurne zara. Hesaklak eta haren lagunek Donostiarren itzuli
behore dute. Zuzen esan hesaklak hoxan. Honetako hasten zara:
“Leku, hox han hoxak Zornotzarako. Gero,...”

Exercise 5: Translate:
This morning ("today in the morning") we got up early and before
breakfast ("before having breakfast") we went for a walk (bulta
bot emon). Everything was closed at that time, and we found the
streets empty (hustak). To the left and to the right, the town was
ours. The sky was blue above. "Maybe there'll be good weather today,"
I said; "I hope so. I'd like to go to the beach this afternoon."
We walked on (aurerako) slowly. "Where does this lead to?" I asked, on
seeing a new road. "I don't know," answered my brother. "We can
go and see (tukustero)." We walked a lot. At last we found ourselves
(orkitxu gara) on top of a little mountain. From there we saw the
town and the land below. It was very beautiful. I saw the church
in the middle of the town, and around the church, streets and plazas.
"Look," said my brother, and he put out (etera) his hand. There
were some drops of water (ur tonta) on top of his hand. "It's started
raining," said he, looking up (gora) at the sky (zeruko). And straight
away, the rain started pouring (geltxu behoro). "We'd better (hobe
Lzongo duko) go (jootea) down (behoro) to the town quickly," he called,
and he straight away started running (korrikoko). I did just that
(horixe), of course, but angrily. Everything has turned out (etera
zalat) badly for me today. Instead of going to the beach, I got wet
(bustl naiz) with the rain. When we returned to the town, we went
into the first bar and drank hot coffee and ate something. Maybe
we'll have better weather tomorrow (bihar)!
GERNIKAKO ARBOLA (Iparragirreko idatzia')

Gerrikako arboleta da bedeinkatua¹, cuskaldunen artean guztiz² maitatua³; eman 'ta zabal ³zazu⁴ munduan frutua⁵; adoratzen zaitugu⁶ arbola santua⁷.

¹written by Iparragirre (a 19th century poet)
²blessed, holy (bedeinkatu "to bless")
³wholly, completely
⁴loved, beloved (maitatu "to love")
⁵zabal ezazu: extend!, spread! (imperative)
⁶fruit
⁷we adore you, we worship you
⁸sacred, holy
STUDY TEXT


"Eta badaiteko dena bukatuta egotea!" esan du Mikelak, erdi txantxetan.

"Egon lasai, mutil," esan du Itziarrek; "hiruak arte behintzat ez dute bukatzen."

"Hori espero dugu; bestela, ez dakit nora joan," esan dío Edurnek Itziarrí.

"Orduan bazkaldu gabe geldituko gara!" esan du Iñakik.

Baina ez dute hertsita aurkitu, ez eta beteta ere. Irekita aurkitu dute, eta erdi hutsik gainera.

"Non jarriko gara?" galdetu du Iñakik, barrura sartzean eta mahai batzuek libre ikustean.

"Hemen ez dago inor," esan du Itziarrek, leiboaren ondoko mahai batera joan ondoren. "Etorri denok?!" Edurnek "Ederki" esan eta Itziarren ondora joan da. Mutilak ere, hori ikusiz, neskak aurkitutako mahaira joan eta hortxe jarri dira. Gero, denak jarrita, neska batek, mahaiaren gainetik gauzak kenduz eta mahaiar garbituz, esan die:

"Egun on; zer nahi duzue? Badago entsalada eta salda; gero badago txuleta, solomoa, legatza,..."

"Guk pentsatu bitartean, ekarri ardoa, mesedez," esan dío Edurnek.

"Nolako ardoa edango duzue? Beltza?"

"Bai, beltza mesedez."

Eta Edurnek esan bezala, neskak botila bat eta lau baso eraman eta mahaiaren gainean jarri ditu. Mahaiaren aurrean gelditu da.


Neskak laster platerak eraman ditu. Iñakiri salda eman dío, berak eskatu bezalaxe; entsalada eman die besteei. Eta berrala denak hasi dira jaten eta edaten. Gosearekin, dena oso gozoa iruditu zale, eta lehen platera² bukatu arte ez dira hasi hizketan!

¹to the restaurant that Edurne had said
²all of you, everybody
³the first course
VOCABULARY

arte pp., cj. until
'baso n. [drinking] glass
be'zala pp., cj. like as
be'zalaxe pp., cj. just like, just as
den-a pl. den-ak [dan-] everything, all, everybody
e'lman, -ten vt. give
esirkatu, eska, -tzen vt. ask for; order (in restaurants, etc.)
gar'bitu, garbi, -tzen vt. clean, clear
gel'ditu, geldi, -tzen vi. stay, remain; be left; stop; be, get
thutsik adv. empty

i'nor pron. anyone, anybody
(negated, no one, nobody)
'jarri, jarr, -tzen vi. place oneself, sit; vt. place, put, put on
'kendu, ken, -tzen vt. take (from), remove, take off
'laster adv. soon, quickly
'nolako (adj. f. nola) what kind of; what ... like?
pen'tsatu, pentsa, -tzen vt. think
plater n. plate, dish, bowl
'salda n. (clear) soup, broth
so'romo n. loin steak
txan'txetan adv. jokingly, kidding
bi'tarteo pp., cj., adv. between; while; meanwhile

LANGUAGE NOTES

a.

In 12:a we considered the postpositions and adverbs gainea, azpian, aurrea, aztean, erdian, inguru, artean, barru, ondoa, guian, behean and kanpoan. All these contain the inessive singular suffix -an, because they denote position, place where (at rest): "on the table," "in front of the house," "below," "outside," etc. These words are declinable throughout the local cases—they can be put into the allative, ablative or local genitive—either as postpositions or as adverbs. The case is determined by the sense, according to the basic meanings of each of these cases, e.g. aurre-ra "forward" ("front-wards"), atze-ra "backwards," "back," barru-ra "in, inside" ("to the inside"), kanpo-ra "out, outside" ("to the outside"), behe-ra "down, downwards," go-ra (irregularly formed) "up, upwards," jate-xcaren barru-ra into the bar, mahaiaren gain-ero onto the table, gelaren erdi-ra to the middle of the room, Itxiarren ondo-ra to Itzilo's side; gain-etik "from on top, off," azpi-tik "from beneath," aurre-tik "from in front," "before, in front," atze-tik "from behind," "after, behind," ondo-tik "from one's side," "beside," goi-tik "from above," behe-tik "from below," kanpo-tik "from outside," goi-tik behe-tik "downwards," "down from above," from top to bottom," atze-tik aurre-ra "from back to front"; inguru-ko herriak the surrounding towns "the towns [of] around," gure arte-ko hizketa the conversation between us, lehoaren ondo-ko mahai the table next to the window, erdi-ko bidea the middle road, aurre-ko egunean (on) the day before, ondo-ko egunean (on) the day after.
§ 1 THE SUPINE AND PARTICIPLE

The supine is the nonfinite form most commonly used to cite Basque verbs in dictionaries etc.; it is also, apart from compound tenses, probably the most frequently used of Basque nonfinite forms. It is derived from the infinitive by adding one of the suffixes -cu (-du after l, n) or -i (occurs after l, n, c, (t)s, (t)z), or else has the same form as the infinitive (infinitives in l, n, c, a, e, o). For examples see I I I a.

The supine form is taken by the main verb in various periphrases: we have already seen the types ikusi nahi dut and ikusi behar dut.

So also ikusi ahal dut "I can see," ezin dut ikusi or ezin ikusi dut "I cannot see," ikusi ohi dut "I habitually see."

But in dialects to the east, with ahal and ohi the gerund in -N is used: ikusten ahal dut, ikusten ohi dut.

The supine is followed by various conjunctions, with some of which English prefers to use a finite verb form; in Basque the supine + conjunction come at the end of the clause, in English at the beginning. Among these conjunctions are arren or -agatik "although," arte "until," aurrekiz or baino lehen "before," beharrean or ordez "instead of," bezala "as," bitartean "while," ezik "unless," gabe "without," ondoren "after." E.g. hona etorri baino lehen (hona etorri aurrekiz) before coming here, mahaira joan ondoren after going to the table, guk pentsatu bitartean while we think (about it), pagatu gabe without paying, Edurnek esan bezala os Edurne had said.

A supine with the instrumental suffix -(e)z and followed by gero or geroz expresses "after (doing)," "since (doing)," "having (done)."

The conjunction nahiz (eta) "although, even though" takes the supine too; but nahiz (eta) itself stands at the beginning of the clause, while the supine remains at or near the end: nahiz (eta) nere anaia izar even though he is/ro my brother, in spite of being my brother.

In some of the above examples the supine is seen to translate an English finite verb, the tense and person being simply understood. In independent clauses too the supine is able to stand in place of a finite verb: Zer egingo duzu? Hemen gelditu What will you do? Stay here (i.e. hemen geldituko naiz I will stay here); ez jakin I don't know (i.e. ez dakit).
This is one of the most typical, thought not the only, pattern for such verbal ellipses. The main verb in a compound tense may appear in its appropriate form, only the auxiliary being omitted: ikusi beharko (we'll) have to see (likewise, ondo, esan beharko, see Unit 0). Similarly, in periphrastic tenses such as those in nahi, behar, ezin, the finite auxiliary part may be omitted: Ian egin nahi baina ozin joan lanera. Finally, common verbs such as EZAN, EGIN, EDUKI, EGIN, EZAN may be left out altogether: gu beti hemen; zu k zer? These resources are heavily exploited in modern Basque "journalese," particularly in headlines; but they are also a genuine feature of idiomatic spoken Basque.

It is common to use these constructions in one or several of coordinate clauses: hemen eseriko gara eta zerbait jango dugu we'll sit here and we'll eat something can be reduced to either hemen eseriko gara eta zerbait jan (compare English: we'll sit here and eat something), or hemen eseri eta zerbait jango dugu (in English this is impossible: "sit here and we'll eat something"). So: Edurnek "Ederki" esan eta Itziarren ondora joan da Edurne said "fine" and went over next to Itziar; mutilak mahaira joan eta hortxe jarri dira they went to the table and sat there; neskak botila bat eta lau baso eraman eta mahaiaren gainearen jarri ditu the girl took over a bottle and four glasses and put them on the table.

Now remember the above example: Zer egingo dugu? Hemen gelditu. Now in the Basque of Gipuzkoa and Bizkaia it is actually possible, and common, to say hemen gelditu egingo gara we'll stay here, which literally seems to mean "stay here is what we're going to do." So also, Edurnek ikasi egiten du Edurne studies ("study is what Edurne does"), joan egin dira they've gone ("go is what they've done"), etc. (egin is commonly pronounced [in], and other forms accordingly. This construction serves to highlight the main verb. Observe that the intransitivity or transitivity of the main verb is transferred to egin.

With the inarticulate or singular instrumental suffix (the inarticulate form is preferred literally, but the singular form is current in Gipuzkoan), we obtain from the supine a kind of present participle used adverbially: mutilak, hori ikusia (or ikusiai), hortxe jarri dila the guys, seeing that, sat there; neska batek, mahaiaren gainetik gauzak kenduz (or kenduaz) eta mahaia garbituz (or garbituaz), esan die: "Egun on" a girl, taking the things off the table and cleaning the table, said to them: "Good morning."

The participle of every Basque verb is identical in form to the supine; the difference is in function. The participle is basically adjectival; the supine never,
The participle is often felt to be perfective in aspect; nik egina mode (or done) by me, kanpotik etorria having come from outside. Furthermore, in transitive verbs it is often used "passively", though not of course in intransitive ones; this is seen in the examples just given. But these are tendencies, more than absolute rules.

We have seen that the participle is used in compound tenses to express the perfect aspect, see 13:1.

The participle may be used like any adjective, i.e. predicatively, attributively or in apposition: gure irakaslea oso ikasla da our teacher is very educated, learned (like gure irakaslea oso gaztea da); ardi galduak lost sheep (like ardi zuriak); gauza bat oso entzuna a thing widely heard, lit. "very heard," (like gauza bat oso ederra). The participle (like the verbal noun and gerund, see 12:1), can take a subject and/or any kind of complement, e.g. 'Gernikako Arbola' Iparragirrek idatzi da 'Gernikako Arbola' was written by 'Iparragirre; merkatua eroisiak bought in the market. Like any adjective, participles are fully declinable.

However, with subject or complements the participle cannot be used attributively, and some other construction is necessary. To say "eggs bought in the market," we must either (1) employ the apposition arrauntzeak merkatua eroisiak, or (2) place the participial phrase before the qualified noun, merkatua eroisiak arrauntzeak (this is a northern construction), or else use the redjectivalized form of the participle, as described below.

A periphrastic perfect is obtained by employing the predicative participle with IZAN or UKEAN (according to the main verb's transitivity): hori egina dut I've done that (lit. "I have that done"), ez gara hasiak we haven't begun (lit. "we are not having-begun"). This construction differs in form from the standard compound perfect (13:1) in that in the latter the participle is not declined: hori egina dut, ez gara hasi. The difference in meaning is not very pronounced, but in the periphrastic (declined) perfect there is more stress on the aspect of perfectivity. A similar effect is also obtained by "doubling" the compound perfect construction, which in practice amounts to inserting izon after the participle: hori egina izon dut, ez gara hasi izon.

Berri lit. "new" is added to a participle with the meaning of "having just (done something)": hasi berria da he has just (recently) started or he is a beginner, a novice; musika hori entzun berria dugu we have just heard that music. But a more common way to translate this "just" is with the adverb oraintxe "just now" and the perfect: oraintxe hasi (or hasia) da, musika hori oraintxe entzun(a) dugu.
Any participle is adverbialized by adding the partitive suffix -(r)ik, or (in Gipuzkoan and Bizkaian) the special suffix -ta (-da following n or l): altxatu-rik or altxatu-ta, ireki-rik or ireki-ta, bete-rik or bete-ta, egin-ik or egin-da, etc. The adverbs so obtained are used predicatively (cf. 4:e), e.g. jatetxe hau beteta (or beteri) dago this restaurant is full ("filled"), ikusita daukagu we've seen it (lit. "we have it seen"). They are also used as adverbs of manner or circumstance: nekatutu itzultzen da etxera she returns home tired (nekatu, neka, -ten "tired," "get tired"); eserita, hasi da hizketan seated, she began to talk.

The predicative constructions with the participial adverb are mostly replaced in northern dialects by constructions with the plain participle (with IZAN or UKAN): betea da, ikusia dugu. Not so in Zuberoan, which has ikusirik dugu.

Participles with -(r)ik or -ta (-da) are adverbs, and so invariable. However, to them can be added the further suffix -ko which converts them into adjectives: altxaturi(ka)ko or altxatutako, irekiri(ka)ko or irekitako, beteri(ka)ko or betetako, egini(ka)ko or egindako, etc. These readjectivalized participles are used like other adjectivals (§5:1), and are often translated by complete relative clauses in English: etorritako neska the girl who has (had) come; egindako lana (the) work done.

Both adverbialized and readjectivalized participles can have their own subjects and complements: ohetik altxatuta, atera ireki du having got out of bed, he opened the door; Estatu Batuetatik etorritako neska the girl who has (had) come from the United States; Edunek esandako jatetxea to the restaurant that Edurne has (had) sold.

Like other adjectives and adjectivals, both the plain participle and the readjectivalized participle may be used with ellipsis of the qualified noun, the participle often taking declension suffixes: Estatu Batuetatik etorritakoa the one who has (had) come from the United States; Edunek esandakora to the one that Edurne has (had) sold.

As if this were not enough, the readjectivalized participle can be readverbialized by adding the inessive suffix -an, giving rise to a perfect participial adverb used temporally: etorritakoa "on having come."
12 THE INFINITIVE

The infinitive is the unsuffixed, unconjugated stem of a verb, from which both the supine and the verbal noun are derived by suffixation: sup. altxa-tu, v.n. altxate, inf. altxa; sup. eros-i, v.n. eros-te, inf. eros; sup. bete, v.n. bete-tze, inf. bete; sup. egin, v.n. egi-te, inf. egin. As is seen, the infinitive of some verbs is identical in form to the supine. (see 11:a).

In the modern western dialects, the infinitive has been ousted from practically all its uses by the supine, which takes its place; in the spoken language of the west, therefore, the infinitive doesn't really exist. However, today Basque writers everywhere generally respect the infinitive. The uses described below, then, are those of the infinitive in the northern dialects and in writing, and of the supine-cum-infinitive in western colloquial Basque. Note that in the study texts so far we have followed the western colloquial style.

The infinitive or supine-cum-infinitive is employed in compound tenses of aorist aspect; such tenses are studied later on. E.g. eros dezakezu (Bip. erosi dezakezu) "you can buy," altxa nintzeke (Bip. altxatu ninteketo) "I could get up," "I would get up," buka ezazu (Bip. bukatu ezazu) "finish!", etor dadin (Bip. etorri dadin) "that he may come," "so that he comes," etc.

The Basque infinitive (or supine-cum-infinitive) is appropriate in terse, elliptical expressions such as are very characteristic of Basque idiom (see also 14:1). Egia esan to tell the truth (with the gerund in -KO, the phrase becomes more precise but less concise: egia esateko); similarly oro har altogether, on the whole (lit. "take all," "all taken"); nor konpon! tough luck! (lit. "resolve there," i.e. "it's your problem, you resolve it!"). The first two of these expressions are fashionable in written Basque; the third is colloquial and popular, and is an example of the infinitive form employed in western dialects. Har eta jan is the designation of self-service restaurants ("take and eat"); but some establishments choose the more colloquial hantu eta jan, with supines.

These "infinitives of brevity," so to speak, are often found in questions, direct or indirect, of the type zer egin? what should we do?, what is to be done?; nola has (hasi) how can I begin?; ez daikit nora joan I don't know where to go, etc.

The infinitive, or supine-cum-infinitive, often has the value of an imperative: etor (etorri) hona! come
here!; ekar (ekarri) ardoa, mesedez bring wine, please;
ez egina hori! don’t do that. Note that imperative verbs
are often, though not necessarily, placed at or near the
beginning of a sentence. In on egin: "bon appetit!"
(more fully, on (eg)in 'zula = on egin diezazula), the
infinitive stands for an imperative (optative, more exactly)
with third-person subject, lit. "may it do you good!"

EXERCISES

Exercise 1:
Go through the study text and note down every nonfinite verb; then
decide which nonfinite form is found in each case; finally, say why
each form is used (because it is followed by..., in order to express..., etc.). Note: the forms used may be: gerund In -N, -RA, -KO, -AN
(ikusten, ikustera, ikusteko, ikustean); verbal noun (ikuste(-a, -ak,...));
supine (ikusi) or instrumental supine adverb (ikusi(a)z); participle
(ikusi(-a,...)), adverbialized participle (ikusiker or ikusita) or
readjectivized participle (ikusitako); Infinitive or supine-cum-
Infinitive (ikus, ikusi).

Exercise 2: From memory, replace each nonfinite verb, here given in
infinitive form, with the appropriate form as found in
the study text:

Denak Edunnek (ESAN) jaitezera joaun dira (BAZKAL). "Badasleko
edo (HERTS) edo (BETE) (EGON)," esan du honek bigean.
"Eta badasleke dena (BUKA) (EGON)!" esan du Nikolok, erdi txan-
tzetan.

"(EGON) Lasa, mutxi," esan du Itziarrek; "hiriak arte behin-
tzat ez dute bakatzen."

"Hori espero dugu; bestela, ez duki nora (JOAN)," esan dio
Edunnek Itziarrri.

"Orduan (BAZKAL) gabe gelditu gara!" esan du Iñakik.
Beloa ez dute (HERTS) aurkitu, ez eta (BETE) ere. (IREKIK)
aurkitu dute, eta erdi hutsik gainera.

"Non jarriko gara?" galdetu du Iñakik, barrura (SAR) eta mahai
batzuek libre (IKUS).

"Hemen ez dago inor," esan du Itziarrrek, lehoaren ondoko mahal
baterea (JOAN) ondoren. "(ETOR) denoki!" Edunnek "Ederkik!" (ESAN)
eto Itziarren ondora joan da. Mutxiak ere, hori (IKUS), neskak
(AURKI) mahalra (JOAN) eta hortze joart dira. Gero, denak (JAR),
neska batek, mahalaren galnetik gauzak (KEN) eta mahalo (SARRIK),
esan dio: "Egun or; zer nahi duzue? Badago enatsalada eta salda;
gero badoago txuleta, solomea, legatza,..."
"Gük (PENTSA) bitartean, (EKAR) ardoa, mesedez," esan dio Edunek.

"Nolako ardoa edango duzue? Beltza?"

"Bai, beltza mesedez."

Eta Edunek (ESAN) bezala, neskak batlla bat eta luo baso (ERUMAN) eta mahaiaren gainean jarri ditu. Mahaiaren aurkean gelditu da.


Neskak laster platerak eroman ditu. Iñaki salda eman dio, berak (ESKA) bezalaxe; entsalada eman dle bestel. Eta berehala denak hasi dira (JAN) eta (EDAN). Gozarekina, dena aso gozoa urditud zale, eta lehen platera (BUKA) arte ez dira hasi hizketa! 

**Exercice 3:**
Make up your own sentences to practice the different nonfinite verb forms you have studied.
"Arraioa!" esaten du Itziarrek azkenean, "denok isilik, jan eta jan; inork ez du hitzik ere ateratzen!"
"Horixe," esaten du Edurnek; "badakit gosea zaudetela", baina.... Zer edo zer ez esan ahal duzue jan bitartean, ez da? Hau jendea!"
"Bada niko esango dut," erantzuten dio Iñakik txantxetan, "txuleta hau gozo-goza dela!"
"Bai eta nerioa ore," esaten du Mikolet.
"Zu," esaten dio Edurnek Iñakiri, "zelai duzu izena?"
"Iñaki Goikoetxea. Zergatik?"
"Ezagutzen zaitut", ez da? Nonbait ikusi egin zaitut?"
"Ez dakit; beharbada Donostian ikusi nauzu?"
"Etxa zu ingleesa zara, ez da?" esaten dio Edurnek Mikeli.
"Inglesoa ez; amerikanoa."
"Hori harrigarria da, amerikano batek euskara ikastea!"
"Baina ez da hain zaila!"
"Bada ez da erraza izango hizkuntza bat ikasten!"
Nik behintzat ezin inglesa ikasi!"
"Hizkuntza bat ikastea ez da hitzak eta gramatika ikastea bakarrik. Hizkuntza bakoitza kultura bat da."
"Etxa zu zergatik zaude euskara ikasten?"
"Bada, horregatik!; euskal kultura ezagutzeko edo,"
"Ederto!"
"Nik uste dut Euskal Herria ezin dela" ondo ezagutu eta ulertu, euskarajak jakin gabe.
"Zer," galdetzen dio Iñakik Mikeli, bere txuleta bukatu ez duela" ikustearen, "ezin duzu bukatu?"
"Ez, ezin dut txuleta osoa jan, beteta nago eta."
"Utzi18; bada. Kafea non hartuko dugu, hemen ala kanpoan?"
"Kafetege batean, ez da?"
"Ordun zeriaro bat erre egingo dut" orain, esaten du Edurnek. "Gura" duzu?"
Mikolet ez du erretzen; beste hiruak bai. Edurnek zuzendik atera eta besteek su ahamen die. Gero, "Neskari kontua eskatuko diogu?" esaten die; eta eskatzen diote.
"Bi mila eta berrehun," esaten du Itziarrek, kontua irakurriiz. "Bakoitzak..."
"Bakoitzak, bostehun eta berrogeitahamaren jarri behar ditu," esaten du Edurnek.
"Zerbait utziko dugu?" galdetzen du Iñakik.
"Agur, eta eskerrik asko," esaten diote jatetxeko neskari kalera ateratzean.
"Zuei, zuei eskerrik asko; agur!" erantzuten die.

'no one says a word; ere here means "even"
'i golosk zazate-0a: that you are hungry
'zer eso zer [seeser] (coll.) = zerbait
'What people! Demonstrative + noun + article produces an exclamation.
dela (= da-la): that (it) is; pr. [dala]
'(Bzik.) = noha
'I know you
'I've seen you; for eg. a, see 14:1
'you've seen me
'ikosteao is also correct
'because of that, for that reason
'(Bzik.) = ederk
'ezin delo: that (one) cannot (cf. note 5)
bukatu ez du-ela: that he hasn't finished
'leave it! (imperative, with direct object understood)
'i'm going to smoke (cf. note 8)
'(Bzik.) = noha
'i.e. shall we leave a tip?
'noha ba-duzu: if you want

VOCABULARY
agur Int. goodbye; greeting
ahal ukan vt. (15:2) be able, can
arraiao! Int. goodness me!, well
I'll be!, what the...!?
bakioitz adj. each
beharbada adv. perhaps
dirua n. money
eiruz adj., adv. easy, easily
ezin adj. (15:3) unable, impossible
gramatika n. grammar
hain so

harrigarri adj. surprising, amazing
hitz n. word
in'gleses adj., n. English, -man
i'silik [išik] adv. quiet, silent
kon'tu n. account, bill
kul'tura n. culture
nonbait adv. somewhere
osoa adj. whole, all (of), complete
pox'polu n. match
'su n. fire; (a) light (e.g. a match)
'tutzi, utzi, uzten vt. leave; let
'zail adj. hard, difficult | zer'gatik adv. why?
jakin, -ten; dakit vt. know

LANGUAGE NOTES

a. Study:

Edurnek Itziarri sua ematen dio. Edurme gives Itziar a light.
Edurnek basteak sua ematen die. Edurme gives the others a light.
(Nilk) Itziarri sua emango diot. I'll give Itziar a light.
(Nilk) basteak sua emango diet. I'll give the others a light.
(Haiek) neskari dirua ecran diote. They gave the girl the money.
(Haiek) neskari dina ecran diet. They gave the girls the money.

Dio, die, diot, diet, diote, diete are present-tense forms of the transitive verb UEAN (sing) with a dative complement. They are used as auxiliary with transitive verbs when there is a dative indirect object either explicit, as in these examples, or understood (Edurnek sua ematen dio Edurme gives (her) a light). Compare 10:1d, where we considered the dative forms of the intransitive verb IZAN (zait, zaio...).

In transitive-dative forms there are three personal variables: the subject, the direct object and the indirect object; there are therefore a lot of forms (eighty-eight, to be exact). But their formation is extremely regular, and therefore easier to learn. For the moment, study the paradigms for a third-person singular direct object (e.g. "a light," "the money") with a third-person singular indirect object (e.g. "Itziar," "the girl") and with a third-person plural indirect object (e.g. "the others," "the girls"):  

**DATATIVE OBJECT PERSON 3:** diot | **DATATIVE OBJECT PERSON 6:** diet
---
(diot/diogu) | (diek/dien)
dio | die
diogu | diegu
diozu | diezu
diozue | diezue
diote | diote

b. So far you have encountered indefinite pronouns and adverbs that are derived from interrogative words and belong to two series:

**FIRST SERIES**
zerbait "something"
norbait "someone, somebody"
nonbait "someone somewhere"
noizbait "sometime"
rolbait "somehow"

**SECOND SERIES**
ozer "anything"
inor "anyone, anybody"
inon "anywhere"
inioiz "anytime, ever"
inola "anyhow, in any way"

which are of course derived from zer "what," nor "who," non "where," noiz "when," and nola "how." The first series is formed by adding
the suffix -bait, and is used just like the English series beginning with some-. The second series is formed with the prefix i- (e- if the interrogative word begins with z); these are used in sentences such as ez daukat ezer I don't have anything, inoiz ikusi duzu? have you ever seen?, inor etortzen bada If anyone comes. There are no negative pronouns or adverbs in Basque like nothing, no one/nobody, nowhere, never, in no way; to translate these, a second-series word must be used and negated, e.g. ezer ez nothing ("not anything"), ez dago inon he's nowhere ("he isn't anywhere"), inor ez da etorriko no one will come (lit. "anyone will not come"), inoiz ikusi gabe never seeing (lit) ("without ever seeing (it)", etc. Words of this second series are often emphasized by adding ere (here, "even") to them: ezor ere ez, ez dago inon ere, etc.

**GRAMMAR**

§1 THE FUTURE TENSE

The future is another compound tense (11:1). Like the present habitual and the present perfect (13:1), the auxiliary of the future tense too is IZAN with intransitives and UKAN with transitives.

To indicate the future aspect, the main verb takes a special form, the future participle. This is obtained by adding to the supine/participle form (i.e. the form used for the perfect) the suffix -ko (go after n): afalduko dut I will have dinner, altxatuko naiz I will rise, aterako zara you will go out, beteko du he will fill, egingo dugu we will make, we will do, egongo dira they will be, ekarriko dituzue you (pl.) will bring them, etc.

These future participles are the only type used colloquially in Gipuzkoan and Bizkaian. However, all the other dialects know a second type, obtained by adding -en (t) instead: afalduren, egiren. A mixed pattern of usage has been suggested for literary Basque: -en after n, and -ko elsewhere (so afalduko, altxatuko, aterako, beteko, ekarriko, but egiren, egonen). Just the same, many western writers and publications continue to employ the forms in -go.

Besides expressing future time, the future tense in Basque can also convey wish, as in pixka bat gehiago hartzuko duzu? will you have a little more?; note also atea irekiko dut shall I open the door? This tense may be used whether the English future has will (shall) or going to: nik egingo (egiren) dut = (1) I'll do it, (2) I'm going to do it. It may also express conjecture: ez da erraza izango hizkuntza bat ikasten It can't be easy, it must not be easy, to learn a language.
To make the future of compound verbs in IZAN or UKAN (10:2),
the forms expected would be bizi izango naiz (bizi izanen naiz),
behar izango dut (behar izanen dut, behar ukanen dut), etc. Such
forms are quite often found in careful writing and speaking, but
are in fact rather pedantic and conscientious. In more spontaneous
usage, the word izan (or ukan) is omitted, and -ko (-go) is added
directly onto the element that remains, e.g. biziko naiz I will live,
behrako dut I will need, I will have to.

§2 AHAL-UKAN

One of the ways of translating "can" into Basque
(we will be studying another way later on) is by means
of the compound verb AHAL UKAN (ahal dut I can; ahal duzu?
con you?; ahal izatea to be able).

Seemingly this ahal is originally the same word as the
Gipuzkoan interrogative particle al (1:i, 1:2); in Gipuzkoan they
are both pronounced [al]. Consequently some people use the spelling
ahal for all meanings; we have preferred to follow the usage of others
who observe the distinction in spelling.

Note that there is a third ahal, the modal particle,
as in itoko ahal zara you may drown or may you drown!

Unlike NAHI UKAN and BEHAR UKAN (8:2), which
are always transitive in standard Basque (except when
used impersonally, of course), AHAL UKAN becomes AHAL IZAN
when the main verb is intransitive. In western dialects
it takes a supine: eraman ahal duzu you can carry; joan
ahal zara you can go.

To the east, on the other hand, it is used with the gerund
in -N: eramanen ahal duzu, joaten ahal zara. Even in the future,
there is eramanen ahalko duzu, joaten ahalko zara. But in other
tenses and when nonfinite, the supine occurs: eraman ahal izan dut,
I have been able to carry; eraman ahal izatea to be able to carry.
In Gipuzkoan and Bizkaian the supine is found throughout: eraman
ahalko dut (or eraman ahal izango dut, see 15:1) I will be able to
carry.

§3 EZIN

To say "cannot," one way is simply negating
ahal ukan, e.g. ez naiz joan (joaten) ahal I can't go.
This form is current in eastern dialects, but not in Gipuz-
koan and Bizkaian.
A way to express inability or impossibility is with the adjective ezin "unable," "impossible," which gives rise to the compound verbs ezin izar "to be impossible," ezin ukar "to be unable": ezin da it can't be, it's impossible; ezin dut i can't, I'm unable.

When used with another verb, these expressions always take a supine; EZIN IZAN is used with intransitives, EZIN UKAN with transitives. Syntactically, EZIN IZAN/UKAN is treated as a negative expression: nik behintzat ezin dut inglesa ikasi I certainly can't (am unable to) learn English; ezin naiz joan i can't go; Euskal Herria ezin da ondo ezagutu eta ulertzat euskara jakin gabe the Basque Country cannot be properly known and understood (it's impossible to know and understand the Basque Country properly) without knowing Basque.

There is an alternative way of constructing ezin with a verb: ezin immediately precedes the supine, after which comes a form of IZAN or UKAN: nik behintzat ezin ikasi dut inglesa; ezin joan naiz; Euskal Herria ezin ezagutu da euskara jakin gabe.

EXERCISES

Exercise 1: Translate:

Goodness me! There's someone at the door! Who can it be?
I'll go and see. I'll go and open the door.

Ah, it's you (zu zaro)! Hello! How are you? Come inside, don't stay in the door! Have you ever seen my house? Well, here it is (hona hezen)! Sit down, sit down in the living room. What shall I get out? Wine? Beer? Something else (beste zerbitzak)? Nothing?? What do you mean (Noto), nothing? You'll have a little wine, won't you? I'll bring it right now.

Well, then, what's new (zer berrl)? Have you seen Xabier?
Perhaps we'll see him today. I called him (trans.-dat.) this morning. I told him to meet us (gurekin getitzeko) this evening (gou) after finishing work. He can't come before nine, but nine's okay (ondo dago) for me; and for you? Ah, you can't today? Ah, you can't come until ten. Yes, that's late, isn't it. Then I'll call him again and I'll tell him not to come.

Cigaret? No? Have you got a light? Ah, you don't smoke.
I've left my matches somewhere. I'll have to go (joan beharreko dut) to the kitchen. That's very good, not smoking. I'd like to stop (utzl), but I can't. It's very difficult, having started (hasitz gero).

Gradually (polkit-polkit) one smokes more and more (gero eta genlogo). And it isn't easy to stop afterwards. I often think: "This is going to be my last one!" I say that, but they're only words. Then, I don't know why, but I always start smoking again. It's amazing.
Exercise 2: Vocabulary: review and use the following words: oteroa, aurkitu, azken, barruan, bozkadu, berandu, berriz, bukatu, dena, egon, entzun, erantzun, eskola, ezagutu, goldetu, gauza, gero, golz, hartu, hasi, hondartza, lektu, kafe, lantegi, lasai, nor, ondoan, ondoren, orduan, ostatu, probintzia, txuleta, urte

Exercise 3: Invent a dialog.
UNIT SIXTEEN

STUDY TEXT


"Ez dakit bada. Euskal Herria txikia da. Nonbait ikusi nauzu, agian...."

"Adizue!" esaten du Itziarrek; "barkatu, baina nora goaz?"

"Non hartuko dugu kafea? Edurne, zuk eraman behar gaituzu kafetegi batera, bale?"

"Ondo bada, eroango zaituztet... Hona hemen. Begira, hor dago nagusia1. Berak ezagutzen nau, sarri erortzen naiz hona eta."


Denek baietz erantzuten diote.

"Zelan gura dituzue kafeak?"

"Nik, ezer barik," esaten du Edurnek. "Zuk ere hutsa nahi duzu?" galdetzen dio Iñakiri, "ala kafesnea hartuko duzu?"

"Hutsa mesedez."

"Eta zuek?" galdetzen die besteedi.

"Nik kafesnea nahi nuke, mesedez," esaten du Itziarrek.

"Neretzat kortaua, mesedez," esaten du Mikelek.

"Jose," deitzen dio nagusiak mutil bati. "Lau kafe egingo dituzu mesedez? Bi huts, kafesan bat eta kortau bat."

"Kopak gura dituzue?" galdetzen die gero. Mikelek eta Itziarrek patxaranar eskatzen dute. Edurnek, berriz, esaten du koñak pixka bat hartuko duela, baina ez gehiegia.

"Patxarana eta koñaka erarkiko dituzu mesedez?" esaten dio nagusiak mutilari, honek kafeak ekarri ondoren.


1'nagusi (here) = boss, owner
VOCABULARY

a'gian adv. perhaps, surely
aur'pegi n. face
ba'letz adv. affirmatively, so
b'ale int. okay, all right then
ba'rik (Blzk. = gabe)
e'derto (Blzk. = ederki)
el'roan (Blzk. = eraman)
e'zetz adv. negatively, not
gel'hegi st., adv. too much, too many
gu'ra (Blzk. = nahi)
hil, -tzen vt. die; vt. kill
ho'na (he'men) here is/are, here it is, here they are

'huts adj. pure, absolute: (kafe)
huts black coffee
ko'nak n. brandy, cognac
kon'duzitu, kon'duzi, -tzen vt. drive
'kopa n. stemmed glass (as opposed to baso, tumbler); glass of brandy or liqueur
kon'tau or c'baki n. coffee with a drop of hot milk
'maito ukat vt. love
'sarri (Blzk.) adv. often
se'gur 'adj., adv. sure
za'balik (Blzk. = irekita)
'zelan (Blzk. = nola)

LANGUAGE NOTES

a.
Consider: seguru dago aurpegi hori nonbait ikusi duela she is sure (that) she has seen that face somewhere, esaten du ko'nak pixka bat harto ko duloia she says (that) she will have a little bit of brandy. Ikusi du "she has seen," ikusi du-ela "that she has seen"; harto du "she will have," harto du-ela "that she will have." In Basque the verb in a subordinate clause generally takes a prefixed or suffixed marker, which indicates a mode of subordination. There are four distinct markers of mode, and they must be affixed to the conjugated form of a main or auxiliary verb. The suffix -ela or -la is that of the complete mode. The above examples contain a kind of subordinate clause called a complete clause or indirect statement: in such clauses in Basque the complete mode is used; in English the conjunction that may or not be present at the beginning of the clause. So: arrazoa duzu you're right - ikusten du arrazoa duzu | see (that) you're right; onak dira they are good - badakit onak direla | know (that) they are good; irakaslea hemen dago the teacher's here - ustela dute irakaslea hemen dagoela | think (that) the teacher is here. So with negative clauses: esan diot ez maizela joango gaur I've told him I'm not going today. The ending is usually -ela after consonants, and sometimes after vowels too, e.g. naiz-ela, nabili-ela, dato-ela, dago-ela, du-ela; note, in particular, dela (da+ela), direla (dira+ela), garela/zarela (gara/zara+ela). Some other forms ending in a vowel take -la, e.g. zarete-la, dute-la, dugu-la, duzu-la, daude-la, doa-la,
dauka-la. Forms ending in -t, the Person 1 marker, change this into
-da-, then add -la, e.g. (dut +la) = dudala, (ditut +la) = ditudala,
(zait +la) = zaldala, (diot +la) = diodala. (These are the literary
forms, but colloquial forms may differ. Common dipuzkoan forms are
dala, dirala, gorala, zorala, dagola, dula, detola or detala (= dudala),
etc.) A positive completive clause can be reduced to the adverb bailetz,
and a negative one to ezetz, e.g. Buria egindo du? —Uste dut bailetz
(i.e. Uste dut eria egindo ducia); or —Uste dut ezetz (i.e. Uste
dut ez duela cuirik egindo). Bailetz esan du he has said "yes"; ezetz
esan du he has said "no".

GRAMMAR

II THE FULL PRESENT OF UKAN

In Basque transitive verbs agree not only with the subject but with the direct object too (8:c). In 8:1
we laid out the partial paradigm of the transitive verb
UKAN in the present tense. In that paradigm, all the pos-
sible subjects are included, but it is partial because
the only persons of the object given are 3 and 6; Persons
1, 2, 4, 5 and 5’ are missing. There are distinct forms
of the verb for direct objects in these persons too.
For example, "you see him/her/it" is ikusten
duzu, while "you see them" is ikusten dituzu; this much
you already know. But how do we say "you see me" or "you
see us"? They are expressed by once more changing the
form of the verb: ikusten nauzu "you see me"; ikusten gaituzu
"you see us." Or again: you have learned that "I know
him/her/it" is ezagutzen dut, and that "I know them" is
ezagutzen ditut. But "I know you (sg.)", on the other hand,
is ezagutzen zaitut; and "I know you (pl.)" is ezagutzen
zaituztut.

You will soon notice that the construction of these
forms is not arbitrary, for in them we can observe the
system of initial consonants corresponding to person that
you are familiar with from intransitive verbs (see 1:2,
5:1, etc.): 1 n-, 2 h-, 3 d-, 4 g-, 5-5’ z-, 6 d-. But
observe that in the forms now being introduced these pre-
fixes correspond to the direct object.

Thus it is seen that the paradigm of a transitive
verb in a given tense, such as the present of UKAN, con-
sists of many more forms than those given in 8:1. Roughly,
the number of forms in such a paradigm will be the number
of possible persons of the subject multiplied by the number
of possible persons of the object (in this case, eight times seven = 56: with a Person 2 subject there are different forms for male and female). We say roughly; in fact the total is somewhat less, since there are no reflexive verb forms in Basque: except by periphrasis we cannot say "I see myself," nor "you see yourself," nor "we see ourselves," nor "I see us," nor "we see me," etc. Therefore some "slots" in the paradigm are empty. Note, though, that "he sees him" and "they see them" are not reflexive in meaning, and of course such forms exist in the paradigm (ikusten du, ikusten dituzte). Altogether, then, there are forty forms in the paradigm of the present of UKAN, which you should now examine in GS2.

A couple of examples will show how this table can be used. Suppose we want to say "I have bought the books": in Basque this will be (nik) liburuak erosia X; let us imagine that we are unsure of the correct form of the auxiliary ("huk"). First, we notice that a transitive form is required, since there is, expressed or understood, a subject and a direct object; there is no dative complement in the clause. The auxiliary, then, will be UKAN. Next we note the persons: the direct object is "the books" = liburuak, i.e. "them." haiek, that is to say, Person 6. Consequently the auxiliary will take one of the forms in the rightmost column in the table. The subject is "I" = nik, Person 1; we find the subject "(NIK)" on the left, and read across to the column chosen, where we see ditut. This, then, is the correct form of the auxiliary in this sentence, which is completed as follows: (nik) liburuak erosia ditut.

Now suppose we want to say "the boss has seen us": nagusiak (gu) ikusi X. In this sentence the direct object is "us" = gu, that is, Person 4; so we go to the column in the middle of the table so marked. The subject is "the boss" = nagusiak, i.e. "he," hark, which is Person 3; so we find "(HARK)" on the left, and read across to the column for Person 4, where we find gaitu, which is our form: nagusiak (gu) ikusi gaitu. And so on.

Although a paradigm of forty personal forms may appear forbidding at first sight, we insist that they follow a regular pattern which is a considerable aid to the learner. Nonetheless, the student is warned that such paradigms as these are to be learned bit by bit over a period of time. It is not productive to memorize these forms parrot-wise as if they were a multiplication table; nor is the solution to be found in a purely deductive approach, treating the
task like a problem of algebra. Neither of these procedures will lead to fluency, which is the object of language learning.

Rather, the best way to learn these verb forms—and the student of Basque must learn many of them—is slowly, with patience, in context, utilizing the spontaneous procedures of association and analogy. Begin with a few of the commonest forms. In this case you already know sixteen forms, those in the third and last columns; the best forms to learn next are zaitut and nauzu (look them up in the table and figure out their meaning). You have already seen these two forms used in context in the study text: nik ezagutzen zaitut; nondik ezagutzen zaitut? non ikusi zaitut? nonbait ikusi nauzu. You can easily memorize these few phrases, remembering the context in which they occur; in so doing, you will have learned the use of the forms zaitut and nauzu, contained in them. By a process of association, you should find it easy now to say things like "I'll see you" (ikusiko zaitut), "I want to know you" (ezagutu nahi zaitut), "I don't know you" (ez zaitut ezagutzen), "I need you" (behar zaitut), "you know me" (ezagutzen nauzu), etc.

Some other day, you will learn similarly forms such as gaituzu and zaituztet, after which you will know at least one form in each column. You can of course learn in the same way learn several forms from a single column: zaitut and zaitu; nauzu, nau and naute, and so on. You will learn each form on an occasion when it occurs in context, or when you need it to express yourself.

In practice, by the time you have learned something like half of the forms in this way, you will find that you have mastered the rest of the forms in the paradigm even without assimilating them individually. This is because you will be able to arrive at the remaining forms by a simple process of analogy, such as we sometimes use even in speaking our own language. In brief, never try to learn too many verb forms in one go, and only learn forms in a context or when the need of them arises.

EXERCISES

Exercise 1: Fill the blanks with the appropriate auxiliary forms, in accordance with the study text:
   Bdurne Iñakiaren aurpegira begira dago. "Nik ezagutzen _____; seguru nago," esaten dio. "Baina nondik ezagutzen _____? Non ikusi _____?"
"Ez dakit bada. Nonbait ikusi ____, agian..."
"Non hartuko ______ kafea? Edurme, zuk eraman behar ______ kafe-tegi batera, bale?"
"Undo bada, eroango ______... Begira, hor dago negusia. Berek ezagutzten ____, sarri etortzen naiz hona eta."

Exercise 2: Form indirect statements, e.g.
Buskal Herrira joan nahi dutu. Badakit hori.
* Badakit Buskal Herrira joan nahi duzula.
Bihar istoriko da. Hori uste dut.
  * Uste dut bihar istoriko dela.

Exercise 3: Translate:
**JOSETXO:**  I love you.
**MIRENTXU:**  What? What did you say, Josetxo?
**JOSETXO:**  That I love you.
**MIRENTXU:**  Really? Do you really love me?
**JOSETXO:**  Really, Mirentxu. I want you. I need you. Mirentxu, say that you love me too!
**MIRENTXU:**  I can't.
**JOSETXO:**  What can't you (do)?
**MIRENTXU:**  I can't say I love you.
**JOSETXO:**  Why not? Don't you love me?
**MIRENTXU:**  Yes, but that isn't the problem.
**JOSETXO:**  What is it then?
**MIRENTXU:**  That I love your brother Joseba.
**JOSETXO:**  What? That's impossible! You don't love Joseba!
**MIRENTXU:**  Yes, I love him, and he loves me.
**JOSETXO:**  He loves you? Are you sure he loves you?
**MIRENTXU:**  Yes, I'm sure he loves me.
**JOSETXO:**  Joseba! I'll kill Joseba!
**MIRENTXU:**  No, Josetxo. If you kill Joseba (Joseba hitzzen baduzu), I'll kill you!

Exercise 4: Study the following ways of offering something:
Zuk ere zerbait edango duzu, ez da?
a) You are offering some people something to drink—beer, wine (red? white? rosé?), cider, etc. Think of all the expressions you could use.
b) Now you are offering things to eat—salad, meat, fish, etc., etc. What are the things that you could say?
c) Someone visits your house. Invite him or her to sit down, drink something, eat something, see the house, and so on.

**Exercise 5:** The owner of the café treats his employee, Jose, politely. Study the way in which he asks Jose to do things:

Lau kafe egingo dituzu mesedez? Patxaran eta koñaka ekarriko dituzu mesedez?

Ask someone if he or she will please:
a) close the window; b) sit by the table; c) write his or her name and address; d) come to the kitchen; e) look for a sheet of paper; f) speak slowly; g) be quiet.

What else could you ask someone to do?
STUDY TEXT

"Zer asmo duzue orain?" galdetzen die Edurnek Donostiako hiruari.

"Ez dakit," esaten du İňakik; "zer iruditzen zaizue?" galdetzen die honek beste biei.

"Zergatik ez zarete Gernikan geratzen?" esaten du Edurnek. "Hemengo gauza guti ikusi dituzu orainik."

"Edu kotxean bueltat bat emango dugu inguruko herri batzuetara?" esaten du İňakik.

"Neri berdin zait," esaten du Mikelek; "gustatzen zait herriak ikusteak, baina berdin zait hementxe pasieztzea edo buelatzat bat ematea."

"Zuk zer esaten duzu?" galdetzen dio İňakik Itziarri. Itziarrek emanitzen du berak Germika ezagutzen duela; baina beharbada Mikeli gehiago interesatzen zaiola Germika ikusteak. Baina Mikeli berdin zaio, dena interesatzen zaiola. "Germika interesatzen zait, eta herriak ere gustatzen zaizkit,"
esaten du.

"Kotxean joaten bagara, gurekin etorriko zara?" galdetzen dio İňakik Edurneri. Edurnek baietz esaten du.

"Baina irekete hori asmode badugu, berehala hasi beharko gomuk,", esaten du Itziarrek; "bestela berandu egingo zaigu."

"Kopak amaitu dituzu?" galdetzen du Edurnek. Itziarrek berea bukatu du, baina Mikeli paxarap pixka bat gelditzen zaio orainik.

"Nik ere nahia go dut oraintxe irtetea," esaten du Edurnek. "Bestela denhordako berehala joango zaigu. Eta berandu joaten banaiz etxera, larregi kostatuko zait altxatzea bihar!"

Tabernako nagusiari agur esaten diote, eta kalera irteten dira.

"İňaki, badakizu kotxera joaten?" galdetzen dio
Itziarrek.

"Uste dut aurkituko dugula," erantzuten du İňakik.

1 if we go in the car
2 if we intend to go out
3 we ought to...
4 if I go...
VOCABULARY

a' maitu, amai, -tzen (Bizk. = bukatu)
asmo n. idea, intention; (zerbait egiteko) asmoa ukan intend, plan (to do something)
bihar adv. tomorrow
egin vt. do, make; vi(d). get, become
e'rori, eror, -tzen vt. fall, fall down; vi(d). drop
garbi adj., adv. clean, clear
gelditu vi. stay, remain, be left; vi(d). have left
ge'ratu, gera, -tzen (Bizk. = gelditu)

ho'ri adj. yellow
interesatu, interesas, -tzen vi.d. be interested in
irten, irtetan vi.* go out, leave
ka'tu n. cat
kosti, kostas, -tzen vi.d. have
difficulty, find it a lot of trouble
larregi (Bizk. = gchiegi)
'lo egin vt. sleep
'nahiago ukan vt. prefer
pa'sciatu, pasea, -tzen vi. go for a stroll, a walk, a ride, etc.
tren n. train
za'kur, fam. txa'kur n. dog
denbora n. time

* In Bizk., irtetan [urten] is transitive in form: irten du he has gone out.

LANGUAGE NOTES

a.
Observe: ez du gehiago edan nahi konduzitu behar duelako he does not want to drink too much BECAUSE he has to drive, baina Nikeli berdineko zaio, dena interesatzen zaiolako but Nikel doesn't mind, BECAUSE he is interested in everything. In the Basque sentences, the verb of the subordinate clause is in the complete mode (see 16:a) with the suffix -ko, producing a compound ending -(e)lako. This form of subordination, as is seen, is used to translate the English conjunction "because", and answers the question zerzagatik? why? Zerzagatik irakurtzen ari zara liburu hori? —Bihar azterketa bat duelako Why are you reading that book? —Because I have an exam tomorrow.

GRAMMAR

11 INTRANSITIVE-DATIVE CONJUGATION OF IZAN
(PRESENT TENSE)

See 10:d and 10:1. The study text gives an opportunity to review the uses of the dative case, in particular in conjunction with intransitive verbs. The dative often indicates the affected party: berandu egingo zaigu it will get late ("for us"), denbora joango zaigu lit. "the time will go for us" (or "from us").

Quite often English will use a different construc-
tion, such that the Basque indirect object corresponds to the subject of the English sentence: zer iruditzen zaizue? what do you think?; nerī berdīn zait I don't mind; gustatzen zait I like (it); Mikeli gehiago interesatzen zaio a Gernika ikustea that Mike is more interested in seeing Gernika; Mikeli patxaran pixka bat gelditzen zaio orainindik Mike still has a bit of potxorox left; Larrog'in kostatuko zait altxatzea bihar I will have too much difficulty getting up tomorrow.

Remember that a transitive verb can be employed impersonally by conjugating it as intransitive, the agent being omitted (11:1). Therefore, a transitive-dative verb, when used impersonally, will take an intransitive-dative form. For example, the impersonal form corresponding to Josebari diru gehiago emango diogu we will give Joseba more money, is Josebari diru gehiago emango zaio "one will give Joseba more money," i.e., Joseba will be given more money.

Since there are two persons that vary in the intransitive-dative conjugation, the subject and the indirect object, this paradigm contains the same number of forms, forty, as the transitive paradigm of UKAN (16:1). The paradigm of the present of IZAN with dative object is seen in GS2. This paradigm can be used in the same manner as that of the present of UKAN.

Suppose we wish to say "they seem happy to me": (haiek) (nerī) pozik iruditzen X. The indirect object is "to me" = nerī, Person 1; so we go to the first column of the table. The subject is "they" = haiek, so we go to the last line, marked "(HAIEK)", and read off the correct form of the auxiliary: zaixkit.

The forms of this paradigm placed in the lines corresponding to a Person 3 (HURA) and a Person 6 (HAIEK) subject, are by far the most frequently used ones. The remaining forms need not worry you for the moment. Eventually you will learn them by the same method described in 16:1.

EXERCISES

Exercise 1: Fill the blanks with the appropriate auxiliary forms, in accordance with the study text:

"Zer asmo duzuc orain?"
"Er daxit," esaten du Iñakik; "zer iruditzen ____?" galdetzen die beste bici.
"Nerī berdīn ____" esaten du Mikeslek; "gustatzen ____ berriak
ikustea, baina berdin _____ hemen txe pasiatsa edo buelta bat ematea."

"Beharbada Mikeli gehiago interesatzen ____ Gernika ikustea,"
esaten du Itziarrekin. Baina Mikeli berdin _____, dene interesatzen ___
lako. "Gernika interesatzen ____ eta herriak ere gustatzen ____," esaten du.

"Berehala hasi beharko genuke," esaten du Itziarrekin, "bestela berandu egingo ____ ."
Mikeli patxaran pixka bat gelditzen ____ oraindik.

"Nik ere nahiago dut oraintxe irtetea," esaten du Edurnek.
"Bestela denbora berehala joango ____ . Eta berandu josten banaiz
etxera, larregi kostatuko ____ altzatzea bihar!"

**Exercise 2:** Make up an answer to each question, using the words provided
in parentheses, e.g.

Zergatik joan nahi duzu Buskal Herrira? (nera aita)
+ Nere mita euskalduna delako, or Nere aitari gustatzen zailolako.
etxean? (garbi) 4. Zergatik egiten duzu lo? (nekatuta) 5. Zergatik
zaude lurraen (on the floor)? (erori) 6. Zergatik nahiago dituzu
txakurrak xatuak baino (to cots)? (paseiatu ahal). 7. Zergatik esaten

**Exercise 3:** Notice how Itziar asks Iñaki if he knows how to
the car: Badakizu kokxera joaten? Ask someone if he or
she knows how to:

a) drive; b) make coffee; c) say these words in Basque; d) close that
window; e) buy clothes; f) pour cider; g) understand that dialect;

b) write in Spanish or French (erordo); i) work in a café; j) read
those books.

**Exercise 4:** Study these different ways of expressing likes and interests:
Neri berdin zait; Gustatzen zait herriak ikustea; Berdin zait hemen txe
pasiatsa edo buelta bat ematea; Gernika interesatzen zait; Herriak
ere gustatzen zaizkit; Nahigo dut oraintxe irtetea.
a) Tell some of the things you like, are interested in, prefer, or
don’t mind about.
b) Now talk about things you don’t like or are not interested in
(... ez zait/zaizkit gustatzen; ... ez zait/zaizkit interesatzen,
etc.)
"Non dago kotxea, bada?"
"Hurrengo kalean dago."
"Seguru zaude hurrengoan dagoela?"
"Noski!"
Baina hurrengo kalera iristean, ez dute aurkitzen kotxea.
"Ez dut ulertzen!" esaten du Iñakik. "Ez dakit non dagoen...."
"Agian hurrengo kalean egongo da..." esaten du Itziarrek.
"Ez, esaten dizut kale honetan utzi dudala.... Begira! Hor dago! Zer esan dizut bada? Arrazoia nuen', e!"
"Bai, arrazoia zenuen," esaten du Edurnek.
"Eskerrak aukitu dugula!" esaten du Itziarrek.
"Beno, nora goaz?" galdetzen du Íñakik, mapa bat ateraz.
"Bermeora? Elantxobera?"
"Badakizu non dagoen Arratia?" galdetzen dio Edurnek.
"Zeanuri, Dima, Areatza,..."
"Bai, badakit non dauden herri horiek: Zornotza pasa eta'...

"Horixe da."
"Baina ez ditut ezagutzen. Ez dakit nolakoak diren. Joango gara? Zer esaten didazu, Itziar?"
"Ondo, baina badakizu nola joaten den?"
"Bai, noska, lasai! Maparekin, ez gara galduko.
Ea nola den hau... Beno bada, hasteko, Areatza izeneko herria eramango zaituztet... eta gero Zeanurira. Aurrera!" Eta abiatzen dira.

Zornotza pasatu eta, aurrera doaz Arratiaarako bidean. Aurreragoa, eskulinean dagoen bide estu bat hartzen dute.

"Hemendik Areatzara joaten da," esaten du Íñakik.
"Beste bide hark berriz Zeanurira eramaten du." Eta aurrera.
Baina ibili eta ibili, eta ez dute Areatzaren arrastorik erc ikusten! Azkenean, herri batera iristen dira; baina Zeberio du izena, eta ez Areatza.


Aurrera jarraitzen dute. Gero beste herri batera iristen dira; baina ez da Areatza.

"Non gaude orain?" galdetzen du Itziarrek.
"Ez dakit non gauden, Itziar. Sentitzen dut, baina esan behar dizut ez dakidala," erantzuten dio Íñakik.

"Norbaitei galdetu beharko dugu," esaten du Edurnek.

"Begira; gizon hark esango digu non gauden eta nondik joan behar dugun."
Deitzen diote gizonari. "Mesedez, hau ez da Areatza, ez da?"

"Areatza, hau? Ez, hau Ugao duzu."
"Eta Areatzara joateko?"

"Gaizki joan gara, orduan," esaten du Mikelek.
"Bai, txarto joan zarete," esaten du gizonak.

"Eta bide honek norantz! eroaten du?" galdetzen du Edurnek.
"Eskerrik asko," esaten diote gizonari.
"Azkenenean, nik nuen arrazoia, e!" esaten dio Itziarrek Iñakiri.

1. I was right
2. you were right
3. past Zornota
4. further ahead
5. (a narrow road) [that is] on the right
6. that way (handikke or handiek is the intensive form of handik: 9:i)
7. (the road) [that is] behind them
8. which way, lit. towards where?

VOCABULARY

a'biatu, abia, -tzen vt. set out, start out
a'rroaro adj. strange, odd
a'rrasto n. trace, track
a'rrazola ukan vt. be right
'beno int. veil; let's see
bi'hurtu, bihur, -tzen (Btzk. - itzuli)
'e'rakutsi, erakuts, erakusten vt(d). show
'es'kerrak int. thank goodness!
es'tu adj. narrow, tight

hul'rengo pr. adj. next
i'ritah, irita, iristen vt. arrive, reach
ja'rraitu, jarrai, -tzen vt. go on, continue; vtd. Follow
legez [lez] (Btzk. = bezala
'mapa n. map
pa'satu, pasa, -tzen vt., vt. pass, pass by, cross
sen'liitu, senti, -tzen vt., vt. feel; sentitzen dut I'm sorry
'txarto (Btzk. = guzti)

LANGUAGE NOTES

a.
By replacing the letters -ta of the completive mode (16:a) with the letter -n, we obtain the conjunctive mode of subordination, e.g.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>INDEPENDENT FORM</th>
<th>COMPLETIVE MODE</th>
<th>CONJUNCTIVE MODE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>du</td>
<td>duela</td>
<td>duen</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dago</td>
<td>daguela</td>
<td>dagoen</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>naiz</td>
<td>naizela</td>
<td>naizen</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dute</td>
<td>dutela</td>
<td>duten</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>duzu</td>
<td>duzula</td>
<td>duzun</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>da</td>
<td>dela</td>
<td>den</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dira</td>
<td>direla</td>
<td>diren</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>gara</td>
<td>garela</td>
<td>garen</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>zara</td>
<td>zarela</td>
<td>zaren</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
The conjunctive mode is used in various types of subordinate clause, being the most frequently employed mode of subordination. One use of the conjunctive is seen in these examples: ez *dakit non dagoen* I don't know where it is; *badakizu non dagoen Arratia?* do you know where Arratia is? *badakit non dauden herri horiek* I know where those villages are; *ez dakit nolakoak diren* I don't know what they're like; *badakizu nola joaten den?* do you know how one goes? i.e., do you know the way? *ez dakit non gauden* I don't know where we are; *gizon hark esango digu non gauden eta nordik joan behar dagan* that man will tell us where we are and which way we have to go. The subordinate clauses in these examples are indirect questions; they can be derived from the following direct questions: *non dago?* where is it? *non dago Arratia?* where is Arratia? *non daude herri horiek?* where are those villages? *nolakoak dira?* what are they like? etc. Observe that in Basque the indirect question is distinguished from the direct question by the form of the conjugated verb: conjunctive in the indirect question, independent in the direct question. Note also these indirect questions: *ez dakit Edurne hemen dagoen* I don't know if (whether) Edurne is here; *gizonak esango digu hau Arcatzia den* the man will tell us if (whether) this is Arcatzia. The corresponding direct questions are *Edurne hemen dago?* Is Edurne here? and *hau Arcatzia da?* Is this Arcatzia? In these examples the indirect question is preceded by "if" or "whether" in English, but this word is not translated into Basque, where only the mode of the verb indicates the subordinate clause's function.

GRAMMAR

§1 TRANSITIVE–DATIVE CONJUGATION OF UKAN (PRESENT TENSE)

Review 15:a. The student is now referred to the full paradigm of the present of UKAN with a dative object, which is given in 852. This paradigm contains approximately twice as many forms as those for the present of UKAN (without a dative complement) and the present of IZAN with an indirect object. This is because in this paradigm there are three personal elements that can vary, rather than two: the subject the direct object, and the indirect object. In fact this paradigm is in a way defective in Basque, for only two persons are admitted for the direct object: Person 3 and Person 6. (note the numbers "3" and "6" down the left margin of the table).

Suppose, for example, we wish to render the sentence "I will give you the book tomorrow" = (nik) liburua bihar emango X (zuri). To find the correct form of the
auxiliary, we must answer three questions: (A) person of the indirect object? "to you" = zurí, Person 5 (go to the fifth column); (B) person of the subject? "I" = ník, Person 1 (go to the first line, marked "(NIK)#"); (C) person of the direct object? "the book" = liburuak, i.e. "it", hura, that is to say, Person 3 (read across from the number "3" opposite "(NIK)" to the fifth column). Correct form: dizut. If the sentence were "I will give you the books tomorrow," the direct object would be Person 6, and the answer would be liburuak bihar emango dizikut. And so on.

Regarding the way to learn these forms, the student is once more referred to the remarks offered in 16.1. You are already familiar with the forms for a singular direct object and a third-person (singular or plural) indirect object. The forms for a plural direct object are easily to learn, for they are invariably obtained from the "singular" forms by inserting -zki- after the initial letters di-. This device should be learned early. Other important forms to master are di(zki)zut and di(zki)dazu.

EXERCISES

Exercise 1: Find the following forms of the transitive-dative auxiliary on the table in 65.1: a) NIK-ZURI-HURA; b) ZUK-NIWI-HURA; c) GUK-HARI-HURA; d) HARK-GURI-HURA. Now insert one of these forms in each of the following, then check your answers against the study text, where the sentences occur:


Exercise 2: Create indirect questions, according to the following example. Then repeat the exercise according to the second example, and finally according to the third example.

Example A: Non dago kotxea? + Ez dakit non dagoen kotxea.

Example B: Non dago kotxea? + Edurnek esango digo non dagoen kotxea.

Example C: Non dago kotxea? + Galdetuko digu Edurneri non dagoen kotxea.
Exercise 3: Translate:
1. I'll pass him the sugar. 2. I'll give him the matches. 3. I'll show you the map. 4. I'll return the books to you tomorrow. 5. Will you give her this money? 6. What have you done to me? 7. Will you lend (utzi) me some plates and glasses? 8. Why do you say those strange words to him? 9. Xabier sets out, and Joseba follows him. 10. Perhaps he asks her for too many things (gouzo gehleg). 11. What name have they given (jorrl) him? 12. They'll bring him better cigarettes.
UNIT NINETEEN

STUDY TEXT

"Orain zer egingo dugu?"

"Arratian zehar itzultzen bagara, oso berandu egingo zaigu, ez da? Zergatik ez gara Arrigorriatik itzultzen Gernikara?"

"Eta Bilbon buelta bat ematen badugu lehen?"

"Hori ez da ideia txarra. Mikel, inoiz egon zara Bilbon?"

"Ez, eta banuen Bilbo ikusteko gogoa, gainera."

"Ondoko. Bilbora joango gara. Mikel ikusteko aukera emateko, bada?"

"Ez zaigu oso berandu egingo, Bilbora joaten bagara orain?"

"Bilbotik zuten Gernikara itzultzen bagara ondoren, ez."

"Bada, Bilbora joan nahi baduzuc, ondo iruditzen zait."

"Beno bada. Nor dago Bilboren alde? Denok. Bilbora joango gara, orduan?"

"Goazen bada."

Irratiraren ordeza, bada, Euskal Herriko hiririk handienera abiatzen dira. Iristen direnean, aparkatzen dute, eta bueltatxo bat ematera abiatzen dira.


"Zein duzu nahiago, Mikel, Donostia ala Bilbo?" galdetzen dio Itziarrek.

"Donostia," erantzuten dio Mikelak, "lasaiagoa? delako, eta..."

"Eta politagoa!" esaten du Itziarrek. Baina Edurne ez dago konforme, Bilboko jendea jatorragoa dela.
uste duelako. Barre egiten dute.


"Arraioa," esaten du, "zer gertatzen da hemen?"
"Zer, apurturik dago orain?" galdetzen du Edurnek.

"Badauka gasolinariik?" galdetzen dio Itziarrek.
"Bai, gaur goizean bete dut. Uste dut puskatuta dagoela kotxea. Ez da ibiltzen."

'to the biggest city
'quieter, calmer

VOCABULARY

al'boan pp. beside
alde pp. for, in favor of
a'parkatu, aparka, -tzen vt. park
a'purru, apur, -tzen (Bizk. - puskatu)
a'arrankatu, arranka, -tzen vt. start (a car)
auncera n. chance, opportunity; choice
ban'ku n. bank
'barre egin [safa], [p-] vt. laugh
bu'lego n. office
diputazio n. provincial government (within the Spanish state)
gase'olina n. gasoline
gel'tok i n. station
gor'tatu vl(d), happen (to)
'giltza, 'giltz n. key
go'go n. wish, desire; mind
i'deia n. idea
i'txaron, -ten [i'tjoin vt(d), wait (for)

ja'tor adj. nice (of a person)
ka'tedral n. cathedral
kon'forme egon agree
le'ku n. place
lu'ze adj. long
or'dez pp. instead of
pus'katau, puska, -tzen vt., vt. break; break down
sa'liatu, sala, -tzen vt. try (with gerund in -N)
uda'letxe n. city hall, town hall
zu'bi n. bridge

LANGUAGE NOTES

a. Study: iristen direnean, aparkatzen dute when they arrive, they park; alde zabarretik ateratzen direnean, Hareatza izeneko lekuak aurkitzen dira when they come out of the old district, they find themselves in a place called Hareatza; amaitu dutenean, Moiua izeneko plaza batera joosten dira when they have finished, they go to a square called Moiua; kotxean sartu direnean, Haski kotxeen arrakatzen saiatzen da when they have gotten into the car, Haski tries to start the car. The Basque suffix -(e)nean, which translates the English subordinating conjunction "when," is derived from the conjunctive mode (18:a) by adding on -eon (which is the inessive singular ending).

b. Study: Arratian zehar itzultzen bagara, oso berandu egingo zaigu if we go back through Arratia, it will get very late for us; eta Bilbon bueltela bat ematen badugu lehen? and if we have a look around Bilbao first? (i.e. how about having a look around Bilbao first?); Bilbotik zuzen Gernikara itzultzen bagara, ez ez if we go straight back from Bilbao to Gernika; Bilbora joan nahi baduzue, ondo iruditzen zait if you guys want to go to Bilbao, it's all right with me, etc. The conditional mode is the third Basque mode of subordination (see 16:a); it expresses conditions, translating the English conjunction "if," and takes the form of the prefix ba-, placed before the conjugated verb form. Thus it is identical in form, but distinct in meaning, from the prefix ba- discussed in 5:2, as in banuen Bilbo ikusteko gogoa, gainora I was wanting to go to Bilbao anyway. Care must be taken not to confuse these: the context will help, but the syntax provides clues too. In speech, intonation is a further guide.
c.

If buelta bat eman means "go for a walk," bueltatxo bat eman is "go for a little walk." From Jose "Joe" we obtain similarly Jose txo "Joey." The diminutive suffix -txo can be added to practically any noun. There are other diminutive suffixes in Basque—-txu, -sko, -ko, -to, -tia. Different regions prefer different suffixes, and the choice is also partly lexical.

GRAMMAR

§1 POSTPOSITIONS


The possessive-genitive is the case governed by the majority of postpositions in Basque, but there are postpositions governing other cases. This provides one way of classifying the postpositions.

Some of the following postpositions are only heard in certain regions of the country. Various others are omitted from this list, which presents the most important ones.

GOVERNING THE POSSESSIVE-GENITIVE:

For arte(an), atze(an), aurre(an), azpi(an), barru(an), erdi(an), gain(can), inguru(an), ondo(an) see 12:a and 14:a.

Others:

- aitzincan in front (of), and so aitzin-era, -etik, -eko
- alboan beside, and so albo-ra, -tik, -ko
- alde for, in favor of, pro-
- antzera like, resembling, in the manner of
- arauera [a'ræ̃e-ra] according to, in accordance with
- barnean inside, within, and so barne-ra, -tik, -ko
- ondoren after, afterwards
- ordez instead of
- ostean behind, and so ostea-ra, -tik, -ko
- pean beneath, and so pe-ra, -tik, -ko

These postpositions may directly follow the stem of the noun rather than taking the genitive case, e.g. lagun artean for lagunen artean, katu antzera for katu baten antzera, etc. (An exception is alde, which in the meaning given here must take the case form.)
GOVERNING THE ABSOLUTIVE:

arte until
bezala like
legez

gabe without
barik

Arte is used with the allative by some: gaua arte or gauera arte (gaurarte) "until (the) right". Bezala (legez), meaning "like," is really more a conjunction than a postposition, and so the preceding noun will be declined according to its function in the clause, e.g. bere irakasleak bezala bizi da "he lives like his teacher," but bere irakasleak bezala hitz egiten da "he speaks like his teacher," etc. Bezala or legez may directly follow the noun stem, in which case they translate "as (s)"; irakasle bezala "as a teacher, as teachers" versus irakasleak bezala "like a teacher," irakasle bat bezala "like a teacher," etc. Sometimes a more elegant way to say "as a teacher" is achieved by omitting the postposition, e.g. irakasle etorri da (or irakasle bezala etorri da) "he has come as a teacher." With gabe a noun can take the partitive article when indefinite in meaning: dirurik gabe "without (any) money" versus diru gabe "without the money." The indefinite sense may also be expressed with the stem form: diru gabe "without money, penniless." Such forms, compounded, can be used adjectivally: gizon dirugabea "the penniless man."

GOVERNING THE DATIVE:
buzur about, concerning; in the direction of
esker thanks to, owing to

GOVERNING THE CONATITIVE:
batera together (with); at the same time (as)

GOVERNING THE INSTRUMENTAL:
gainera besides, other than, as well (as)
gero after, following, since (also geroz)

GOVERNING THE INESSIVE:
barna
gaindi) through, across
zehar

GOVERNING THE ABLATIVE:
apartxe apart from, besides
hurbil) near
gertu
kanpora out (of), away (from)
urrun ) far (from)
urruti
EXERCISES

Exercise 1: Fill in each blank with an appropriate postposition from among those given in 19:1 (pay attention to case government):
Josetxoa, umbertsitate ikasle asko ____, etxetik ____ bizi da.
Bainoa gaur, jai bati ___, etxean dago. Josetxoa ____, hohen abrera
Miren ere etorri da bere senarrarekin (husband) ____. Josetxoa ama
oso pozik dago, gehienetan bere senarrarekin bakarrik egoten delako, seme-alabak
(children) ____. Eguneroko baskariaren (lunch) ____, baskari berezi
(spectre) bat jarri die gaur. Josetxoa eta harren ama baskariari __
hizketan ari dira.

"Joan den (last) udaz (summer) _____ ez dut honelako platerik
jan, amatxo!" esaten du Josetxok.

"Gure etxetik _____ biziko bazina (if you lived), urtean _____
egingo nizkizuke (I would make you) honelakoak!" erantzuten du amak.

Exercise 2: Answer each question by naming a condition, e.g.
"Ulertez didazu? (poliki) + Poliki hitz egiten baduzu, bai.
Mendira joango zara? (eguraldi) + Eguraldi ona badago, bai.
1. Btxean geldituko zara? (urtia) 2. Bihar bulegora joango zara?
(lan asko) 3. Katedrala ikusiko dugu? (sparkatu ahul) 4. Ardo hau
edan nahi duzu? (zuri) 5. Lurrrean leh egin beharko dugu? (ohen pus-
katuta)

Exercise 3: Say when so-and-so will happen, e.g.
Noiz joango zara mendira? (eguraldi) + Eguraldi ona dagoenean.
Noiz irekiko duzu eta? (giltza) + Giltza aurkitzen duzanean.
1. Noiz joango zara bankura? (dirurik) 2. Zer ordutan altzatzen
zara ohetik goizteta? (gogoa) 3. Noiz erosten dituxu arropa berriak?
(Bilbora) 4. Noiz izaten da garestia gauza bat? (diru asko) 5. Noiz
joaten gara hondartzara? (bera)

Exercise 4: You are planning a trip to Bilbao with friends. You say:
Bilbora joango gara. Golz oblatuko gara. Elbarko bideko
hortuko dugu. Iristen garenneoa, aparkatuko dugu....
Continue making your plans. You plan to:

a) leave the car next to the City Hall; b) from there go straight to the
cathedral; c) try to see all the main places; d) walk through the
long, narrow streets; c) have lunch in a cheap restaurant.

Exercise 5: (A) You are suggesting to your friends that you should
do these things. You make your suggestions like this:
Zergatik ez gara Bilbora jooten? Zergatik ez gara golz
oblatzenu? Zergatik ez dugu Elbarko bideko hortzuten?...
Continue with your suggestions according to the cues in
Exercise 4.

(B) These suggestions may be worded in a conditional
Form, as follows: Bilbora joaten bagara? Eta goiz abiatsu- 

tzen bagara? Eta Elbarko bidea hartzten badugu?... Con-

Continue making your suggestions in this way.

Exercise 6: (A) You are telling a friend the things you would like 
to do today. You say: Bilbora joan nahi nuke. Goiz abiatsu nahi nuke. Elbarko bidea hartzu nahi nuke.... Go on saying what you would like to do, following the cues in Exercise 4. 
(B) Your friend agrees that you ought to do these things. 
He tells you: Bai, Bilbora joan beharko zenuke. Bai, goiz abiatsu beharko zenuke. Bai, Elbarko bidea hartzu 
beharko zenuke.... What else does he say you should do?
joan beharko dugu etxera. Badakizue nola joaten den autobus
geltokira Donostiara joateko? Erakutsi egingo dizuet....

1 a man who is passing by in the street
2 to the garage that is open
3 I'll arrange the [business] of the car.

VOCABULARY

a'ditu, adi, -tzem ['aityu] vt.
hear; understand (adizu and
adizue are imperative forms)
bil'garren adj. second
es'kuma (Btzk. = eskuin)
ez ho'reregatik "you're welcome"
(polite answer to eskerrik asko)
i'taundu, itaun, -tzem (Btzk. =
galdetu)
komp'ondu, konpon, -tzem vt.
arrange, fix, repair
me'kaniko n. mechanic
os'teau (Btzk. = atzeau)
set'maforo n. traffic light(s)
tailer n. workshop; car repair
shop, garage

LANGUAGE NOTES

a.
Haraino ['aranyo] up to there, tailerreraino [ta'lyeferanyo] up to
the garage, as far as the garage. These forms consist of the allatives
hara, tailerrera with a suffix -ino [nyo], which has the postpositional
value of "as far as," "up to." Another postpositional suffix that is
added to the allative is -ontz, which means "in the direction of," 
"towards": harantz that way, in that direction, etxearantz homeward,
etc. (In Gip. -(r)ontz is pronounced [-(r)onts] or [-(r)onts].)

b.
In galdu egin dira they got lost, kotxea puskatu egin zaie their car
broke down, erakutsi egingo dizuet I'll show you, the verb egin adopts
the grammatical function of making a verb in a compound tense the
focus of the sentence (compare §2). The verbs that are put into
focus in the above examples are galdu, puskatu and erakutsi respectively.
Any verb can be focused on in this way; this device is characteristic
of the western dialects, and is colloquial in flavor. The focused
verb takes the supine form (galdu, puskatu, erakutsi), while the verb
egin adopts the form of conjugation—tense, person, transitivity—
that corresponds semantically to the main verb: the unfocused forms
of the examples would be galdu dira, puskatu zaie and erakutsiko dizuet.
You should at least recognize this construction when you come across
it, whether or not you attempt to imitate it.
c. All ordinal numbers, except "first," are obtained by adding -garren to the corresponding cardinal, thus bi'garren second, bi'garren third, lau'garren fourth, bostgarren [boš'kafen] fifth, ha'margarren tenth, ha'makagarren eleventh, ho'olagarren twentieth, hogoita'batgarren twenty-first, etc. "First" is lehen [‘len] (also lehenengo, lehenbizioko, lehenbizioko). Ordinal adjectives, like azken, are prepositive (see 3:1).

GRAMMAR

§ 1 THE PAST OF IZAN AND UKAN

Following is the simple past tense of IZAN, and the commonest forms of the past of UKAN. These paradigms are given side by side with the forms of the present for comparison.

IZAN

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Person 1</th>
<th>naiz</th>
<th>nintzen [ni(n)tsan]</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>(Person 2</td>
<td>haiz</td>
<td>hintzen [i(n)tsan]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Person 3</td>
<td>da</td>
<td>zen [san]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Person 4</td>
<td>gara</td>
<td>ginen [ginyan]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Person 5</td>
<td>zara</td>
<td>zinen [ginyan]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Person 5*</td>
<td>zarete</td>
<td>zineten [sinvaten]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Person 6</td>
<td>dira</td>
<td>ziren [siran]</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

UKAN

| Person 3 Object |
|-----------------|-----------------|
| Present         | Past            |
| Person 1  | dut | nuen [nu(e)n] |
| (Person 2  | duk/dun | buen [u(e)n] |
| Person 3  | du  | zuen [su(e)n] |
| Person 4  | dugu | genuen [sen(d)u(e)n] |
| Person 5  | duzu | zenuen [sen(d)u(e)n] |
| Person 5* | duzue | zuten [sen(d)uten] |
| Person 6  | dute | zuten [suten] |
Several observations could be made about the composition of the past-tense forms, but we leave it to the curious student to examine the paradigms and come to his own conclusions.

The most obvious feature common to all the past forms is the ending -(e)n, which is a past-tense marker. In form this ending is identical with the marker of the conjunctive mode of subordination (18:a), though distinct in function of course. In past conjunctive forms only one -(e)n is added, so that these are identical to the independent forms. Compare:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>INDEPENDENT</th>
<th>CONJUNCTIVE</th>
<th>INDEPENDENT</th>
<th>CONJUNCTIVE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>da</td>
<td>den</td>
<td>zen</td>
<td>zen</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dira</td>
<td>diren</td>
<td>ziren</td>
<td>ziren</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>naiz</td>
<td>naizen</td>
<td>nintzen</td>
<td>nintzen</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>du</td>
<td>duen</td>
<td>zuen</td>
<td>zuen</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dute</td>
<td>duten</td>
<td>zuten</td>
<td>zuten</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dut</td>
<td>dudan</td>
<td>muen</td>
<td>muen</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ditut</td>
<td>ditudan</td>
<td>nituen</td>
<td>nituen</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

For complete past forms, -lo is substituted for the final -n: zela, zirela, dintzela, zuela, zutela, muela, nituela, etc. For the conditional mode, ba- is prefixed to the independent forms: bazen, baziren, banintzen, bazuen, etc.

The simple past tense is generally used in an imperfect sense: lehen ikaslea nintzen; orain, berriz, irakasleaz naiz I was a student before; now, I am a teacher; gizon batek baztuen bi seme or gizon batek bi seme zituen a man had two sons.

The past of IZAN and UKAN retains this sense in compound verbs (10:2): hemen bizi nintzen gazte nintzenan I used to live here when I was young; Bilbora joan nahi genuen we wanted to go to Bilbao. So also in periphrastic tenses, such as the past continuous: liburu hau-irakurtzen ari nintzen I was reading this book.
EXERCISES

Exercise 1: Put these sentences into the past, e.g.
Mikel amerikanoa da. → Mikel amerikanoa zen.

Exercise 2: Put these sentences into the past, e.g.
Josetxok etxe handi bat du. → Josetxok etxe handi bat zuzen.

Exercise 3: Translate:
1. The fishermen were working, but the workers had the day off (jotuko). 2. What were you doing in that room? 3. I needed somebody's address. 4. The repression was great. 5. Spanish was the official language, as today. 6. I think that was Inaki. 7. I don't know where they were living. 8. She says she loved him before. 9. If you had a lot of money, why did you live in that place? 10. I though they couldn't, but I don't know if I was right.

Exercise 4: You are at the City Hall (udoetxe) in Bilbao, and you wish to go to the Provincial Government (diputazio). You ask someone, "Aduzu, noita joaten do diputazioa hemendik?" In answer, you are given the following instructions: "Zubiltik posatu behar duzu, gero zuzen ourrene Espainiko Plazan. Plazon eskuinero joan, eta ourrena. Ezkerroldean ikusilko duzu." Follow these directions on the map of Bilbao in Unit 19. Now imagine you are in Bilbao, and want to go from somewhere to somewhere else. Ask the appropriate question; then give the answer you might expect to hear from a passer-by.

a) you are at the train station and you want to go to Hareatza;
b) you are in Nolua Plaza and you want to get to Zabalburu Plaza;
c) you are at the Provincial Government and you want to go to the City Hall; d) you are in Zabalburu Plaza and you want to get to Hareatza.
Exercise 5: Someone reminds you that you had to do something; you respond that you have already done it. For example:
Bilborra joan nahi zemen, ez da? + Bai, joan egin naiz.
(Note: In eastern dialects, the answers would be simply "Bai, irakurri dut"; "Bai, joan naiz.")
"Pernando Amezketarraren ipuinak ezagutzen dituzu?" galdetzen dio Iñakik Mikeli egun batean.
"Ez, baina atzo liburudenda batean liburu bat ikusi muen, Pernando Amezketarran izenekoa," erantzuten du honek.

"Bada ipuin horiek oso ezagunak dira. Nik txikitan1 ikasi nituen batzuek."
"Esango didazu bat?"

"Oso ona!"
"Badaude ipuin pila bat Pernando Amezketarrari buruz." 
"Pernando Amezketarraren gezurrezko gizonra izan zen?"
"Ez, esaten dute egiazkoa izan zela. Amezketan bizi izan zen. Oso gizon alferra izan zen; ez zuen lanik egin nahi."
"Beste ipuin bat entzun nahi nuke. Badakizu bat?"

saltzaileari, eta honek berriz erantzun zuen batek bakarririk ez zuela ezer balio. 'Oso ondo bada,' esan zuen Pernandok, eta oinetako pare bat eraman zuen, esanez: 'Honek ez duela ezer balio, eta beste honek ere ez? Bi hauek hartuko ditut orduan? eta pagatu gabe atera zen korrika.'

Mikelak barre egiten du. "Pernando hori oso azkarra zen!"

"Bai, alferra bai, baina tontoa ez."

"Atsegin ditut ipuin horiek."

"Gehiago kontatuko dizkizut beste batean."

'in (my) childhood
'playing dumb

VOCABULARY

alfer adj. useless, idle, lazy
apaiz (also apaz) n. priest
atzegun ukan vt. like, enjoy
atzo adv. yesterday
azkar adj. smart, clever
buruz pp. gov. dot. about
egia n. truth; egiauko true, real
Espiritu Santo Holy Ghost
ezagun adj. well-known
gaiasto [-st-] adj. bad (of a person's character); evil
gezur n. lie, untruth; gezurrezko untrue, false, imaginary

gala ere cj. however
ipuin [-ui] n. story, tale
kontatu, konia, -tzen vt. tell; count
korrika adv. running; in a hurry
liburudenda n. bookstore
oinetako n. shoe
pare n. pair, couple
pila bat dt. a lot, piles (of)
saltzaile n. seller
sone n. son
tonto adj., n. dumb, stupid
zarapata n. shoe

LANGUAGE NOTES

a.
Note the following simple past forms of some common verbs:
SOUND: 1 nengo, 2 hengoen, 3 zeozen, 4 zeuuden, 5 zeuudenten, 6 zeuuden
Similarly, JOAN: nindoan, zihoan, etc.; ETORRI: nentorren, zetorren, etc.; IBI: nebilien, zebilien, etc.
SDUKI: (sg.) 1 neukan, 2 heukan, 3 zeukan, 4 geneukan, 5 zeneukan, 5' zeneukaten, 6 zeukaten; (pl.) neuikan, etc.
JAIN: 1 nekien, 2 hekien, 3zekien, 4 genekien, 5 zenekien, 5' zenekiren, 6 zekiren
THE PAST PERFECT

Corresponding to the three present compound tenses, the present habitual, present perfect and future (11:1, 13:1, 15:1), there are three past compound tenses. The past perfect (joan nintzen, ikusi nuen) corresponds to the present perfect (joan naiz, ikusi dut).

We saw (13:1) that the present perfect tense has two different senses: joan naiz may mean "I went" or "I have gone," ikusi dut "I saw" or "I have seen." We shall call these the preterit and the perfect senses. The same two senses are shared by the past perfect tense:

PRESENT PERFECT TENSE: joan naiz, ikusi dut
Preterit sense: "I went," "I saw"
Perfect sense: "I've gone," "I've seen"
PAST PERFECT TENSE: joan nintzen, ikusi nuen
Preterit sense: "I went," "I saw"
Perfect sense: "I had gone," "I had seen"

In the perfect sense, the past perfect tense translates the pluperfect. In the preterit sense, it is translated into English just like the present perfect: "I went," "I saw." Nevertheless Basque distinguishes the two: the present perfect is used for things that happened recently, e.g. today, and the past perfect for things that happened longer ago, e.g. yesterday, or last year.

The past habitual and future-in-the-past tenses will be dealt with later.

EXERCISES

Exercise 1: Translate the following story:

Tonto was the name of a lazy student. In Tonto’s house there was no money, and his parents only had a pig. Tonto took the pig to sell it. But to go to town he had to pass through a wood, and some thieves (lopur) lived in a house in the wood.

The chief (nogus) of the thieves came out and said: "Hello Tonto. That’s a very fine ass (osto)!

"Ass?" said Tonto, and he laughed. "This isn't an ass. It's a pig!"

"No, no," said the thief, "that’s an ass, and a fine one too."

"It’s a pig," said Tonto again.
"Look," said the thief, "if that's a pig, I'll give you a pile of money, and if it's an ass, you'll give the ass to me."
"Fine."
Then another thief came out, and the chief said: "You! What is this, a pig or an ass?"
"This? This is an ass."
"Yes?" said the dumb student. "Well, if it's an ass, it's yours." And the thieves took the pig.

Exercise 2: Translate:
1. My sister had money, and she paid (for) the gasoline.
2. She left the clothes in the closet.
3. Which room did you sleep in yesterday?
4. Those are cheap lies!
5. The priest spoke about the truth.
6. We waited, but nothing happened.
7. Why don't you tell us another story?
8. I need a new pair of shoes.
9. What did you write about?
10. What kind of person was he?

"Nongoa zara? Donostian jaio ziren?" galdetzen dio.

"Ez, ez naiz donostiarrara. Nafarroako naiz. Gu nafarrak gara."

"Noiztik bizi zaretene Donostian?"

"Uf! aspalditik. Hogeitahamur urte eman ditugu Gipuzkoan."

"Lehenago non bizi zineten?"


"Gure aita Iparraldean ibili zen lehenago, lanean," esaten du Iñakik.

"Bai. Gure seme-alabak jaio aurretik, nere senarra hara joan zen behin aldi batean lan egitera."

"Frantsesez ikasi zuen, orduan?"

"Ez, hangoak ere euskaldunak ziren, eta euskara egiten zuten. Ongi konpontzen ziren elkarrekin euskaraz."

"Eta gero?"


"Oraing ege gauzak gaizki daude, amatxo," esaten dio Arantxak.


"Nafarroa ezagutzen duzu?" galdetzen dio Arantxak Mikeli.


"Uf! ederragoa!" esaten du amak. "Nafarroak ditu Euskal Herriko lekurik ederrenak."

"Noizbait ezagutu beharko duzu!" esaten dio Arantxak.
VOCABULARY

alaba n. daughter
aldi n. period, time
Amerika pn. America (in local cases it is usually plural)
aspaldia adv. some time ago, long ago
aurretik pp., cf. before
bizitza n. life
donostiar adj., n. (native) of San Sebastian
esan vt. spend (of time)
emaitze n. wife; woman
fabrika n. factory
gigor adj., adv. hard
hobeki (or hobeto) adv. better
jaio, -tzen vt. be born
kompondu vt. get along
lehenago adv. earlier, before
nafar adj., n. Navarrese
nolzbaist [-sp-] adv. sometime
ongi adv. well
senar n. husband
behin [behin] adv. once

GRAMMAR

§1 THE PAST HABITUAL

The past habitual is a past compound tense that corresponds exactly to the present habitual tense (11:1). It is used in the same senses, habitual or not, as the present habitual, but refers to past time: batzuek Ameriketara joaten ziren some went (used to go) to America; hemen lan asko aurkitzen zen here there was a lot of work.

§2 COMPARISON

The comparative of adjectives and adverbs is formed by adding the suffix -ago: errazago "easier," gogorrago "harder," ederrago "more beautiful," gaizkiago "worse," polikiago "more slowly," etc. Comparative adjectives are declined normally: hau handiagoa da, horiekin txiikiagoak dira.

The only irregular comparative forms belong to the adjective on "good" and the adverbs ongi (ondo) "well" and asko (anitz) "many," and are respectively hobek, hobeki (hobeto), and gehiago (also haboro). Hobe! or hainbat hobe! means "so much the better!"

Colloquially the ending -ago is often contracted to [-ay] or [-o:].
"Than X" is X baino, e.g. frantsesa euskara baino errazagoa da or frantsesa errazagoa da euskara baino French is easier than Basque; libera bat hamar peseta baino gehiago da or libera bat gehiago da hamar peseta baino a franc is more than ten pesetas. A noun or pronoun before baino can take any case, according to the sense: nik zuke baino diru gehiago daukat or nik diru gehiago daukat zuke baino I have more money than you.

The suffix -egi forms the excessive degree of adjectives and adverbs, expressed in English by the adverb "too": handiegi "too big," polikiegi "too slowly," etc. Again, excessive adjectives are declined as always: handiegia da it's too big.

On has the regular excessive form onegi, but asko (anitz) has gehiegi (also sobera, larregi). Alternatively, excessive forms are obtained by placing sobera or lar before the adjective or adverb.

The superlative is formed by adding -en (if the stem ends in -a, this letter is dropped: handien(a) "(the) biggest," ederren(a) "(the) most beautiful.") Superlatives usually take the article, but otherwise are declined like any adjective. Superlative adverbs tend to take the singular article -a or the partitive -ik, but can also be used with no ending.

The preferred superlative forms of on and ongi are soberen and hobekien, but onen and onglen are usual in Gipuzkoa. Asko (anitz) has gehien.

To say "the -est X," "X" in Basque is either placed directly in front of the superlative adjective that qualifies it, e.g. etxe handiena the biggest house, or else the partitive article is used with the noun, etxe berik handiena the biggest house. To say "the -est X in Y," "in" is translated by a local genitive: kaleko etxe(rik) handiena the biggest house in the street. "The -est of the X's" can be variously rendered: nesketatik ederrena, nesken artean ederrena, the most beautiful of the girls.

In "one of the -est," "of" is translated by the local genitive or the hybrid suffix -etariko, so neska(rik) ederrenetar(ri)ko or neska(rik) ederreneta(ri)ko bat one of the most beautiful girls.

"As (adjective) as X" and "as (adverb) as X" are expressed as X bezain (adjective/adverb), e.g. nere etxea bezain handia da it is as big as my house; nik bezain ongi hitz egiten du he speaks as well as me. The word order is rigid in this construction. "As much as X" is X adina [anya]/hainbat/hainbeste/beste: nik adina diru daukazu.
EXERCISES

Exercise 1: Translate (story of the dumb student, continued):

The dumb student went to town without his pig, and there he went straight to the house of the most beautiful girl in the town. He said: "Please will you lend (utzli) me your prettiest dress (jantzi)? I'll bring it again straight away."

Tonto put on (jantzi, jantz, jonzt'en) the dress. Then, taking a big stick (mokito) under the dress, he returned to the thieves' house. The thieves saw Tonto and thought he was a young woman. The chief of the thieves said: "Why don't you come into our house and spend (pasotu) the night with us?"

"I am afraid (beldur noiz) among all these men," said Tonto.

"Don't worry; these twelve men will sleep in one room. We'll close their door, and you will have the keys if you wish. You and I alone will get along well."

They put the twelve men in a room, closed the door with the key, and then they went to the chief's room. "You get into bed first," said Tonto. When the chief was in bed, Tonto took out his stick and started to hit (jo, -tzen) the thief, saying: "Was it an ass, or was it a pig? Was it an ass, or was it a pig?"

"Oh, oh (ot, ot, oj)," said the thief, "it was a pig! A pig!
There's money in that cupboard. Please take it, and go!"
And Tonto was very happy to take the money and leave the thieves.

Exercise 2: Translate:

1. My daughter's husband spent five years in America, but he says that life was hard there. 2. My wife's from San Sebastian. 3. I worked in that factory a long time ago. 4. Once I told a lie. 5. You spoke more slowly yesterday, and I understood more. 6. He poured the most expensive brandy in my glass. 7. This month is too cold for me. 8. Soon you will be as angry as me. 9. Before, I always felt tired. 10. The teacher said he preferred geography to (bolno) history.

Exercise 3: Two people are complaining about life today. They think every thing used to be better. E.g.

Gaurko ardoa osa txerra da.
+ Bai; lehenago ardoa hobea izaten zen.
Eta gaurko gazteek lan guti egiten dut.
+ Bai; lehenago gogorraro lan egiten genuen.
STUDY TEXT

Lehengo ikasgai batean, ikusi genuen Iñaki euskarakozko irakasleak zela. Mikel Iñakiren eskolan ikasten ari dela ikusi genuen.

Lehengo egunean, Mikel Iñakiren etxean zegoenean, Iñaki bere lanari buruz aritu zen. Esaten ari zen ez zekieloa zer egingo zuen, ikasle guti joaten bait ziren klaseetara.

"Askorentzat klaseak garestiegiak dira," esan zuen. "Klaseak merkeagoak balira...."

"Egia da," esan zuen Arantzak; "klaseak merkeagoak balira, jende gehiago joango litzateke euskara ikastera?"


"Eta dirua, gobernuaik eman beharko luke," esan zuen Arantzak.


"Noski bada. Euskara gure hizkuntza nazionala da; eta herriak, euskara ez dakienean, ikastea eskubidea dauka. Gainera, erdara debalde irakasten digute: eskoletan, telebistan, eta alde guztietan!"


"Eta orain ikusten duzu jende askok ez dakiela euskara," esan zuen Arantzak.

"Orain gobernu honek diru gehiago emango balu euskara ikasteko...."

"Nola lortu ahalko dugu hori?" galdetu zien Mikelek.

"Bai, nola?"
"Beharbada kanpaina bat egingo balitz...."
"Bai, hori; herri-kanpaina bat, esateko gobernuari euskararentzat diru gehiago nahi dugu eta euskara debalde ikasi nahi dugu. Gustatzen zait ideia!"
"Asanblada bat egingo bazen lan eizan ideia horri buruz aritzeko?" esan zion Arantxak Iñakiri.
"Bai; eta ikasleek ere parte hartuko balute, hobe!"

Errabaki zuten hurrengo larunbatean berriz bilduko zirela honetaz gehiago aritzeko.

'that he didn't know (zechen, past of doki)
'more people would go to learn Basque
'like it or not
'we didn't know (genekten, past of dokiagu)

VOCABULARY

aberats  adj. rich
aritu, ari, -tzen  vt. busy oneself; talk, consider
asanzlada  n. meeting, assembly (often political)
bai. izik cj. (with a negation) only; except, but
bildu, bil, -tzen  vt. meet, gather; vt. collect, gather
debalde  adv. free
debekatu, debeka, -tzen vt. forbid, prohibit
errabaki, -tzen  vt. decide
eskubide  n. right
euskaldunze  n. activity of learning/teaching Basque
guztiz  adv. utterly, totally

herri  n. (the) People
ikasgai  n. lesson
importante  adj. important
irakatsi, irakats, irakasten  vt(d). teach
jo, -tzen  vt. hit, strike (also used in various idiomatic exp.)
kampaina  n. campagne
lebengo  adj. previous, earlier
lortu, lor, -tzen  vt. get, achieve, obtain
mahiko(a)  adj., adv. enough; quite (a lot)
nazional  adj. national
parte hartu  take part, participate
projektu  n. project
goberrua  n. government

LANGUAGE NOTES

a.
In reported speech, when the subordinating verb is in the past, the verb of the subordinate clause may show tense agreement and go into a past tense too, in Basque as in other languages. For compound tenses this is achieved by replacing the present form of the auxiliary with the corresponding past form, so that the present habitual (egiten du)
becomes the past habitual (egiten zuela/zuen); the present perfect (egin du) becomes the past perfect (egin zuela/zuen); and the future
(egingo du) becomes the future-in-the-past (egingo zuela/zuen).
Examples of indirect statements: "Eñakik euskara irakasten du" + Uste
genuen Eñakik euskara irakasten zuela; "Euskara hiru urdetan ikasi
dut" + Esan zuen euskara hiru urdetan ikasi zuela; "Datorren (next)
laruntxean berriz bilduko gara" + Erabaki zuten hurrengo laruntzean
berriz bilduko zirela. Indirect questions: "Norekin ikasten duzu?"
+ Ez neki (i didn't know) norekin ikasten zemuen; "Zer erabaki dute?"
+ Galdetu men zer erabaki zuten; "Noiz lortuko da hori?" + Inork
ezin zuen jakin noiz lortuko zen hori.

b. Compare: nahi dut "I want," but nahi nuke "I would like"; beharko
dut "I'll have to," but beharko nuke "I ought to." This auxiliary
form nuke, which is transitive (like dut), is conjugated as follows
for a third-person-singular direct object:

1. nuke
2. (h)uke
3. (h)uke
4. genuke
5. zenuke
5* zenukete
6. lukete

Just like nahi dut and beharko dut (8:2), nahi nuke and beharko
nuke, though themselves transitive, may be used with transitive or
intransitive supines, e.g. ikusi nahi nuke I'd like to see it, joan
nahi nuke I'd like to go, hori jakin beharko luke he/she ought to
know that, etorri beharko luke he ought to come.

c. Except in western dialects, where this construction has disappeared
from the colloquial language, the prefix bait (it is written as a
separate word) is added to conjugated verb forms to form the coordinative
mode: Eñak ikaslea bait da; ikusten bait dut, etc. Take care with
the pronunciation of these forms: the t of bait always combines with
the following letter, i.e. with the initial of the conjugated form, with
the following results: bait + o→ [bait-]; bait + g→ [baik-]; bait + z→
[bajts-]; bait + n→ [bain-]; bait + l→ [baïl-]; bait + h→ [baï(h)-].
In the negative, oz precedes bait, whose initial b is then pronounced
[-p-]: oz bait dut ikusten [espaitut]. This mode can be used in
various ways, but it most commonly has the sense of "as, for, because,
since": oz zekilen zer egingo zuen, ikasle guti joaten bait ziren
klaseetara he didn't know what he was going to do, because not many
students were going to classes; oz genekilen gur euskaran bazik;
euskaran egiten bait genuen txezen we only knew Basque, for we spoke
Basque at home. The western dialects employ a different construction
with the same meaning; the conjunction eta is placed at the end of the clause: ikasle gati joaten ziren klaseetara eta; euskaraZ egiten gemoen etxean eta. As we have seen (17:a), "because" is also rendered by the suffix -lako.

GRAMMAR

§1 THE HYPOTHETIC TENSE

Consider the following three conditions (introduced by "if"): (a) If he is rich, we’ll soon find out; (b) If he was rich, he certainly didn’t show it; (c) If he were rich, he would give money. We use three different tense forms in English in these examples: in (a), which refers to the present or future, we say "if he is rich; in (b), which refers to the past, we say "if he was rich"; and in (c), which refers to a hypothetical situation set in the present or future, we say "if he were rich."

Basque, too, distinguishes these three types of condition by using three tenses, which we call the present, the past, and the hypothetical; thus: (a) aberatsa bada ("if he is rich"); (b) aberatsa bazen ("if he was rich"); (c) aberatsa balitz ("if he were rich").

In most sentences containing conditions in English, this system is blurred by using the same tense form, the past, in types (b) and (c), even though the sense is very distinct, since (b) refers to the past, and (c) to the present or future; (b) to a supposedly real situation, (c) essentially to a hypothesis. Thus we say (b) If he had money, he certainly didn’t show it; (c) If he had money, he would give it. We also say (b) If he went yesterday, why is he going today? but (c) If he went today, he wouldn’t go tomorrow. In Basque the past and hypothetic tenses are not confused in this way. Here, to be compared, are the three tenses—present, past and hypothetic—of IZAN, and of UKAN with Person 3 and Person 6 direct objects:
IZAN

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Person 1</th>
<th>Present</th>
<th>Past</th>
<th>Hypothetical</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Naiz</td>
<td>Nintzen</td>
<td>Ba-nintz</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(Person 2) Haiz</td>
<td>Hintzen</td>
<td>Ba-hintz</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Person 3</td>
<td>Da</td>
<td>Zen</td>
<td>Ba-litz</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Person 4</td>
<td>Gara</td>
<td>Ginen</td>
<td>Ba-gina</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Person 5</td>
<td>Zara</td>
<td>Zinen</td>
<td>Ba-zina</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Person 5' Zarete</td>
<td>Zineten</td>
<td>Ba-zinetete</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Person 6</td>
<td>Diria</td>
<td>Ziren</td>
<td>Ba-lira</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

UKAN

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Person 3 Object</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Present</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>----------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Person 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(Person 2) Duk/dun</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Person 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Person 4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Person 5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Person 5'</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Person 6</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Person 6 Object</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Present</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>----------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Person 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(Person 2) Dituk/ditun</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Person 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Person 4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Person 5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Person 5'</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Person 6</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

In the hypothetic forms we have included the conditional prefix ba- (19:b) since the forms of this tense cannot stand alone, in the independent mode: "nintz," "nu" etc. do not mean anything. Yet the prefix ba- is not actually part of the tense, for we have seen that it can also be added to non hypothetic forms, e.g. ba-naiz, ba-nintzen. That is why we have separated off the ba- with a hyphen in this table; normally, however, no hyphen is written: banintz, banu, and so on.

As you can see, the hypothetic tense forms can be derived from the past ones, to which they are clearly related, as follows: (1) drop the ending -(e)n of the past; (2) change the third-person initial z-, if this occurs, to l-, which is typical of the hypothetic tense. These rules work in general; but note especially ba-litz.
As they stand, banintz means "if I were," banu means "if I had (but I don't)," etc. As such they constitute the simple hypothetic tense of IZAN and UKAN. But like other tense, these forms of IZAN and UKAN are very frequently used as auxiliaries forming compound tenses in combination with an unconjugated form. The "hypothetic future" tense, in which the auxiliary in the hypothetic tense is combined with the future participle (15:1), has exactly the same sense as the simple hypothetic tense (and therefore refers to a hypothetical situation set in either the present or the future). Thus "if he went today" is expressed as gaur joango balitz; and even "if he were rich," which we have already seen translated aberatsa balitz, is just as well rendered by the compound form, aberatsa izango balitz.

Verbs that possess other simple tenses (see 11:a) have a simple hypothetic tense too: for example, "if he went today" can be expressed in simple form as gaur balihoa. But modern colloquial Basque avoids the simple forms, which are considered literary, by always employing the compound ones: joango balitz, izango balitz, jakingo banu, etc.

Another compound form expressing a hypothetical situation in the present or future, restricted to eastern dialects or literary style, consists of the infinitive of the main verb with the hypothetic forms of the asist auxiliary (see later units), e.g. joan baledi, izan baledi, jakin baneza. The forms of the auxiliary are:

**Intransitive:** 1 ba-nendi, 2 ba-nendi, 3 ba-ledi, 4 ba-ginteze, 5 ba-zintez, 5' ba-zintezte, 6 balitez

**Transitive:** (sg.) 1 ba-neza, 2 ba-noza, 3 ba-leza, 4 ba-geneza, 5 ba-zeneza, 5' ba-zenezate, 6 ba-lezate; (pl.) ba-nitza, etc.

Basically, the verb forms we have considered express a certain type of condition. But they are also employed sometimes to express a wish or a suggestion. As a wish: Jakingo banu! If only I knew!, i.e. I wish I knew! As a suggestion: Leihoa irekiko banu? And if I opened the window?, i.e. Why don't I open the window?

**EXERCISES**

**Exercise 1:** Translate (story of the dumb student, continued):

Tonto went to the town again, returned the girl's dress, and went to the house of the barber (barberu). He told (esan zion) the barber to put a beard (bizor) on his face. Then he asked him (eskotu zion) to lend him his horse (zalde), and told the barber that he would return the horse soon.

So, well-dressed (ongl jontzita) and bearded (bizordun), he
went to the thieves' house on horseback (zaldiz). When the thieves
saw him coming (estortzen), they asked him if he was a doctor (medikua),
and he answered that he was (boietz). The thieves asked Tonto to
come straight away, as their chief was very badly.

Tonto went into the chief's room, looked a little, and said:
"Ahah! Somebody's beaten you with a stick. Yes, with a big stick."
"Yes, that's right. You've guessed (osmatu) everything!"
"I know what to do. You need some herbs (belar): but they're
difficult to find. How many men do you have here?"
"Twelve."
"Well then, they must all go out and search for these herbs.
If they go far from here, so much the better." And all the thieves
went out in search of herbs.
"I'll go and search too," said Tonto, and he went out,
took his stick, and, alone, returned to the chief's bed, and started
hitting him, saying: "Was it an ass, or was it a pig? Was it an ass,
or was it a pig?"
"Oh, oh, it was a pig! A pig! There you have more money.
Take it, and go!"

And Tonto was very happy to take the money and leave with the
horse.

Exercise 2: Translate:
1. If I were a rich (man)! 2. If I taught that lesson tomorrow,
I ought to discuss (uritu + buruz) this project. 3. When did they
decide that they would meet to talk (uritu) about the government's
new campaign? 4. The national government doesn't have the right
to ban (debekotu) our project! 5. What did previous assemblies achieve?
Nothing! 6. It is extremely (guztiz) important to participate.
7. If you spent a couple of days (agun pare bat) in one of these
factories, hard at work.... 8. That's enough. 9. Before teaching
the truth, you ought to discuss these lies. 10. I heard that you
would meet outside (Lit. "in front of") the provincial government
to hold (egin) a meeting in favor of the Ikastolas.

Exercise 3: Wish that these things were otherwise, e.g.
Nere alaba Ameriketan bizi da. + Nere alaba Ameriketan bizi ez balitz!
Ez daukat emaztea hemen. + Emaztea hemen edukiko banu!
1. Nere senarra hain gaiztoa da. 2. Eta gure apaia ez da hobea.
3. Ez dakit non dagoen alder hura. 4. Beti nere kontra egoten dira.
7. Askok ez ditu beren eskubideak ezagutzen. 8. Hori guzti ezaguna
da. 9. Ez ditu zu ikasgaiak ongi ikasten. 10. Ez dugu ezer lortuko.
UNIT TWENTY-FOUR

STUDY TEXT

Irakasle-ikasle asanbladak kanpaina berria erabaki

DONOSTIA.— Euskal irakasle talde batek erabaki zuen atzo kanpaina berri bat egin behar zela gobernuary diru gehiago eskatzea.

Egunkari honek jakin duenez, atzo gauean berrogei-tahamar irakasle eta hogei euskar ikasle bildu ziren Donostian herri-kanpaina berriari buruz aritzeko. Asanblada honek, kanpainaren izena "Diru Gehiago Euskararentzat" izango zela erabaki zuen, eta herri osoak parte hartzea nahi luke.


Goikoetxea jaunak esan zuzenez, gobernua diru gehiago emango balu, klasen merkeagoak aterako lirateke; eta klasak merkeagoak edo debalde izango balira, jende gehiagok ikasiko luke. Haren ustez, honela euskalduntzeara hobekiko lortuko litzateke.


"Gobernuarekin hitz egingo bagnu, beharbada zerbait lortuko genuke," esan zuen Goikoetxea jaunak.

"Baina lehen, kanpaina hau egin beharko dugu. Borroka egiten ez badugu, eta jendea arazo honetaz konturatzen ez bada, ez bait dugu ezer ere lortuko. Irakasleak eta ikasleak, denok parte hartu beharko genuke borroka honetan euskararen alde."
VOCABULARY

andre  n. lady; Mrs.
arazo  n. question, matter, issue
askoz  adv. much (with comparatives)
borroka  n. fight; struggle;
borroka egin  vt. fight; struggle
egunkari  n. newspaper
erabili  vt. use
horregatik  for that reason,

that's why
irratz  n. radio
jakin  vt. know; find out; learn
jaun  n. gentleman; Mr.
kartol  n. poster
konturatu, kontura, -tzen  vi.
realize
manifestazio  n. demonstration
talde  n. group

LANGUAGE NOTES

a.
Consider: egunkari honek jakin duenez ze this paper has learned;
Goikoetxea jaunak esan zuenez ze Mr. Goikoetxea said, according to
Mr. Goikoetxea. The suffix -(e)nez, consisting of the conjunctive
mode with the instrumental suffix -ez, translates "as" in the sense
illustrated here.

b.
We mentioned in 1:1 that there are several articles in Basque. We
have met the ordinary article, singular (-a) and plural (-ak), and
the partitive article (-ik). The last of the articles you need study
is the proximate article, plural (-ak). (We can ignore the singular
proximate article, which is uncommon.) For the declension of this
article, see G81. One use of the proximate article is shown in this
lesson's text: irakasleak eta ikasleak, denok parte hartu beharko
geneke teachers and students, all (of us) should take part;
euskara ikastea eta erabiltzea denon eskubideak da to learn and use Basque
to the right of all (of us); euskarako klaseak denontzat debalde
izatea eskatuko geneke we would ask for Basque classes to be free
for everybody. As is seen, use of the proximate article in these
examples implies the identification or involvement of the speaker.

GRAMMAR

§1 THE POTENTIAL MOOD

We have seen (23:1) that Basque has three basic tenses:
present, past and hypothetic. These three tenses belong to the non-
potential or indicative mood, in opposition to a second set of three
tenses that constitute the potential mood. All forms in the potential
mood are characterized by an element -ke- or, in the case of the
verb IZAN and the "intransitive acrost auxiliary," -te-ke-. The addition of this element gives rise to three new tenses: the present potential, the past potential and the hypothetic potential.

For example: corresponding to the present nonpotential (e.g. duft, naiz) there is the present potential: du-ke-t, naiza-teke. Corresponding to the past nonpotential (e.g. muen, nutzen) we find the past potential: mu-ke-en, nintza-teke-en. And corresponding to the hypothetic nonpotential (e.g. ba-mu, ba-nintz), the hypothetic potential: mu-ke, nintza-teke.

The basic function of the potential mood is to express a nuance of uncertainty, possibility, probability or futurity. However, the present and past potential tenses are only used in eastern dialects and in literary style. Therefore, the only potential tense that we are concerned about here is the hypothetic potential, which is in common use everywhere.

Following is the hypothetic potential tense of IZAN and the commonest forms of UKAN; placed next to the hypothetic nonpotential (studied in 23:1) for comparison:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>IZAN</th>
<th>UKAN</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Person 1</td>
<td>ba-nintz</td>
<td>ba-nu</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Person 2</td>
<td>ba-bintz (Person 2)</td>
<td>ba-lu</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Person 3</td>
<td>ba-litz</td>
<td>ba-genu</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Person 4</td>
<td>ba-gina</td>
<td>ba-zenu</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Person 5</td>
<td>ba-zina</td>
<td>ba-zenuete</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Person 5'</td>
<td>ba-zinetke</td>
<td>ba-zenuete</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Person 6</td>
<td>ba-lira</td>
<td>ba-lute</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>POTENTIAL</th>
<th>POTENTIAL</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Person 1</td>
<td>nintzateke</td>
<td>nuke</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Person 2</td>
<td>hintzateke</td>
<td>huke</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Person 3</td>
<td>litzateke</td>
<td>luke</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Person 4</td>
<td>ginateke</td>
<td>genuke</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Person 5</td>
<td>zinateke</td>
<td>zemuke</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Person 5'</td>
<td>zinatkeke</td>
<td>zenukete</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Person 6</td>
<td>lirateke</td>
<td>lukete</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Person 6 Object

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Person</th>
<th>NONPOTENTIAL</th>
<th>POTENTIAL</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>ba-nitu</td>
<td>nituzke</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>ba-hitu</td>
<td>hituzke</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>ba-litu</td>
<td>lituzke</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>ba-genitu</td>
<td>genituzke</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td>ba-zenitu</td>
<td>zenituzke</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5'</td>
<td>ba-zenituzte</td>
<td>zenituzkete</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6</td>
<td>ba-lituzte</td>
<td>lituzkete</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Note that whereas the hypothetic nonpotential only occurs in conditional mode (23:1), this is not true of the hypothetic potential.

You have already met the hypothetic potential forms of UKAN with a Person 3 object (23:b), used with nahi and beharko. The hypothetic potential tense corresponds to what we call the "conditional" tense in English: mintzateke is "I would be," nuke is "I would have." Thus a conditional sentence such as "If he were rich, he would give money" is expressed in Basque with the hypothetic nonpotential in the supposition, and the hypothetic potential in the resultant clause: Aberatsa (izango) balitz, dirua emango luke.

Any verb that has simple tense forms has a simple hypothetic potential, e.g. lihoake "he would go." But as with the hypothetic nonpotential, in colloquial Basque compound tense forms are preferred to simple ones. Once again it is the "hypothetic future" that is employed as equivalent to the simple tense: joango litzateke "he would go."

Again, eastern dialects use a different compound tense for this purpose, consisting of the infinitive and the hypothetic potential of the aorist auxiliary (compare 23:1), e.g. joan liteke, eman lezake. In the remaining dialects, this tense has a different sense, as we shall see later. The forms of this auxiliary are:

| Intransitive: 1 minteke, 2 hinteke, 3 liteke, 4 ginteke, 5 zintezke, 5' zintezkete, 6 litezte |
| Transitive: (sg.) 1 nezake, 2 hezake, 3 lezake, 4 genezake, 5 zenezake, 5' zenezakete, 6 lezakete; (pl.) nitzake, etc. |
EXERCISES

Exercise 1: Translate (story of the dumb student, continued):

Tonto went to the town again. Having returned the horse, he went to the house of a fiddler (bibilin-jotselk), and he told (esonzion) the fiddler that if he would go through the wood singing (kontatu) "Was it an ass, or was it a pig?" he would pay him (pogotuko zloto) very well. The fiddler said that he would (boletz).

So the fiddler went by (ondotik) the thieves' house, singing "Was it an ass, or was it a pig?" Meanwhile, Tonto went through the wood by (abl. case) another route (bids).

When they saw the fiddler, the chief said to the other thieves: "Boys! Here he is, here he is! Catch him (horroko ezauzu)!"

All the thieves started running (korrika) after (ostetik) the fiddler, and the chief remained in bed, alone. Into the house went our Tonto, and started hitting him again, saying: "Was it an ass, or was it a pig? Was it an ass, or was it a pig?"

"There you have more money. Take it (eremon ezauzu) and leave me (utz noazuz) in peace (baken)!!"

"You send it to me (bidol Lazaroazu) to my house," said Tonto.

The thief told him he would send (bidoli, bidol, -tzen) it to him.

Exercise 2: Translate:
1. Who is that lady? If I knew, I would say. 2. According to the newspaper (lit. "as the newspaper says"), they've banned the teachers' demonstration. [The speaker is a teacher.] 3. If our group met to discuss this question, would you come? 4. According to this poster, the workers are struggling (borroko ortu dero) against the boss in that factory. 5. First I would settle (konponto) that issue. 6. The other (lehengo) day I heard something on the radio about the women's struggle. 7. Ladies and gentlemen (jaun-ondrero)! Would you go out quickly, please? 8. That's why I only (use bazik) use good shoes. 9. It's much easier to teach grammar. 10. I would write about the second subject (gol); it's your only (bakor) chance.

Exercise 3: Express the Following in "hypothetical" form, e.g.
Bz dugu borrokakirik egiten, eta ez dugu ezer lortzen.
+ Borroko egingo bagunu, zerbait lortuko genuke.

1. Ez du eguzkire egiten, eta inor ez da hondartzara joaten. 2. Alferra zara, eta ez duzu bulegora etortzeko gogorik. 3. Ez zara nafarra, eta ez dituza horrialde haren arazoak ulertzen. 4. Ez dut senforo gorritik edo horrik ikusten, eta horregatik ez naiz gelditzen.... 5. Fabrika pila bat jartzen dituzte hemen; horregatik inmigranteak etortzen dira hona lan egitera. 6. Haren senarra ez da jatorra; horregatik ez dut atsegin haiakin ibiltzea. 7. Ez nagu Konforme haiakin, eta ez naiz haien alde aterako. 8. Ez dakizu ongi kondu-
zitzen, eta hau gertatu da. 9. Ez zara mekanikoa, eta orain ez duzu hori konponduko. 10. Ez dago surik hezen, eta hotz handia egiten du.
STUDY TEXT

JOSEMARI: Munduan asko bezala, etxe batean aita hiru semerekin bizi zen. Seme zaharrena morroi joan zen oso urrutira. Urrtea bete ondoren, bere nagusiak asto bat eman zion; eta asto horrek, berari "egin urea!" esanez gero, urea egiten zuen.

MIKEL: Ene! Nik horrelako bat izango banu!

JOSEMARI: Hala, bere etxera zetorrela, gau batean urrutiko ostatus batean geratu zen. Oherakoan, ostalariari esan zion: "Ez gero nere astoari 'egin urea!' esan!"

Baina mutila ohera joan zenean, ostalari gaiztoak esan zion astoari: "egin urea!" eta astoakurre pila bat egin zion. Ordun ostalariak asto haren tokian hura bezalako beste asto bat jarri zuen.

MIKEL: Ña! Mutil tontoa! Ezer esan ez balu! Ordun ostalari hark ez zuen ezer jakingo, eta mutilak ez zuen bere astoa galduko!


MIKEL: Noski! Lehengo astoak bai, urea egingo zuen; baina ostalariak utzi zuen hark, ez.


JOSEMARI: Bena bada, mutilak oherakoan esan zion ostalariari: "Ez gero mahai honi 'jarri bazkaria!' esan!" Baina ostalariak "jarri bazkaria!" esan zion mahaiari, eta mahaiak bertan bazkaria egin zuen. Ordun ostalariak mahai hura orde, eta hura bezalako beste mahai bat haren tokian jarri zuen. Goizean, mutilak hura bere mahai...
zeloa uste izan zuen, eta etxera eraman zuen. Eta etxera
iritsi zenean, esan zien bere aitari eta anaiei nolako
mahaia ze karren, eta halia, denen aurrean, esan zion: "jarrri
hazkaria!" Baina mahai hark ez zuen ezer egina, eta mutil
giza garsoa oso triste geratu zen.

MIKEL: Hori ez da harritzeko. 4 Urte luzean lan
egin ondoren, ez zuen ezer ekarri etxera, mahai bat baizik!
Eta hirugarren anaia?

JOSEMARI: Gero hirugarren anaia, gazteena, joan zen
morroi; eta honi nagusiak makila bat eman zion. Makilaren
aurrean inork "makilakizki!" esanez gero, makila hura
bertan zeuden beste guztiak5 jotzen hasten zin. Bere
anaia bezala, mutil hau etxera zetorrela, ostatura joan
zen lo egitera; eta ohora zioa,6 ostalariari esan zion
bere makilari ez osateko "makilakizki!" Hala ere, ostalari
lapur hark hartu makila eta "makilakizki!" esan zion.
Ordunak makila hasi zen ostalaria jotzen. Ostalariak mutilari
deitu eta eskatu zion mescedez makila geldiarazteko7
Makila gelditu ondoren, mutilak ostalariari esan zion:
"Nork esan dio 'makilakizki' nere makilari? Zuk 'makila-
kizki' esan ez bazen, makila honek ez zuen inor joko.
Zu zara nere anaiken astoa eta mahaia lapurtu dituena,8
eta nere makila ere lapurtu nahi zenuen: Astoa eta mahaia
ekartzen ez badizkidazu, makila honekin berriz ere joko
zaitut." "Ez, ez," esan zu en lapurrik, eta astoa eta
mahaia itzuli zizkion. Gure mutilak etxera eraman zituen,
ete handik aurrrera denak ondo bizi izan ziren.

1 "Like many in the world...," opening formula of Basque folk tales.
2 zetorren = past form corresponding to dotor; see 25:10
3 upon going to bed
4 'the donkey that wasn't his
5 zekorren = past form corresponding to dotor "he brings": "he was bringing"
6 'that (one) that the inn-keeper left
7 in the very inn where they had robbed the oldest brother
8 'That's not surprising, lit. "that's not (a thing) to surprise"
9 all the others who were there
10 zioa = past form corresponding to doo; see 25:10
11 geldiaraz, geldiaraz, -ten: make (someone, something) stop (causative
verb, from gelditu "to stop")
12 you're the one who has stolen my brothers' donkey and table
VOCABULARY

afari n. dinner, evening meal
asto n. donkey, male, ass
baskari n. lunch, noon meal
belar n. grass; herb
bealdur izen vt. be afraid
bertan adv. right there/here, in that/this very place; immediately
bidad, bidal, -tzen vt(d). send edozenin pr. st. any
gero may indicate a warning; esan gero you'd better not say...
gizagaiso [gizajaso] adj., n. poor (Fellow)
gorde, -tzen vt. keep; put away; hide
harrapatu, harropa, -tzen vt. catch
harritu, harri, -tzen vi., vt. (be) surprise(d)
halai adj. merry, happy, gay
hirugarren third
ipurdi n. buttocks, behind
jakina of course
jantzi n. dress
jantz, ja(n)zten vi., vt. (get) dress(ed)
kaka n. dirt; shit; kaka egint vt. defecate, shit
kantatu vt. sing
lapur n. thief
lapurtu, lapur, -tzen vi. rob
maindire n. sheet
makila n. stick
morroi n. lad, boy; servant
agusu n. boss, head, chief, owner
ostalari n. hotel-keeper, inn-keeper
triste adj., adv. sad
urre n. gold
zabaldu, zabal, -tzen vi., vt. spread
zaldi n. horse

LANGUAGE NOTES

a.
Study: bere etxera zetorrela as/when he was coming home; ohera zihoa as/when he was going to bed. These examples show that the completive mode, with or (as here) without the suffix -rik, can be used to form circumstantial clauses which may, but need not, have a temporal sense. Thus: "Nor da?" galdetu zuen, atea irekitzen zuela(rik) "Who is it?" he asked, opening the door or as he opened the door.

b.
Study: asto horrek, berari "egin urreal!" esan gero, urrea egiten zuen that donkey, upon telling it "make gold!" made gold; "jarri baskaria!" esan gero, mahini horrek baskaria bertan egiten zuen upon saying "make lunch," that table made lunch immediately. In these examples, the conjunctive mode with the suffix -ez gero [-eskero] expresses a temporal idea: "upon, after (doing)." It may also have a causal sense: etorri zarenez gero since you've come, as you've come.

c.
"Not X, but Y" is in Basque X ez, Y baizik. So: gorria ez, zuria baizik not red (utxa), but white; gaur ez da larunbata, igandea baizik today is not Saturday, but Sunday; ez dut hori nahi, hau baizik I don't
227

12 THE FUTURE-IN-THE-PAST

We give the name future-in-the-past to the past compound tense that corresponds to the future, since it consists of the future participle of the main verb and the past of IZAN or UKAN as auxiliary: joango nintzen "I was to go," "I would have gone," egingo zuen "he was to make/do," "he would have made/done."

As the name suggests, this tense may express that from a point of view situated in the past, something was or was not to happen in the future. When this occurs in reported speech, as is commonly the case, the English translation will have "would" (25:4): joango nintzela esan nuen, eta joango naiz I said I would go, and I will go (of course we can also have: joango nintzela esan nuen, eta joan nintzten I said I would go, and I went).

The future-in-the-past concept is on other occasions expressed by means of a periphrasis, such as joan behar nuen, joan nahi nuen, joatera nindoan or joateko nintzen.

But this same future-in-the-past tense is also used in Basque to express the "impossible" result of an "impossible" condition (see 25:1), translated into English as "(I) would have (done so and so)"; joango nintzen "I would have gone," egingo zuen "he would have made/done."

So: orduan ostalari hark ez zuen ezer jakingo, eta mutilak ez zuen bere astoa galduko then that inn-keeper wouldn't have known anything, and the boy wouldn't have lost his donkey; lehengo astoak bai, urrea egingo zuen; baina ostalariak utzi zuen hark, ez the first donkey now, it would have made gold; but not that one that the inn-keeper left; beste edozein etxetara joan balitz, ez zioten ezer lapurtuko if he had gone to any other house, they wouldn't have stolen anything from him; zuk makilikizki ezan ez bazen, makila honek ez zuen inor joko if you hadn't sold makilikizki, 'this stick wouldn't have beaten anybody.

In literature this sense can also be expressed by the past potential (and in Gipuzkoa, the future-in-the-past potential). (see 24:1). Simple past potential: aberatsa izan banintz, dirua mukeen if I had been rich, I would have had money; past perfect potential: ...dirua izan mukeen; future-in-the-past potential: ...dirua izango mukeen. But the commonest form is of course: aberatsa izan banintz, dirua izango nuen.

Finally, the future-in-the-past can express a conjecture about the past (compare 15:1): ostalari hark mahaia lapurtuko zion, seguru! I suppose that inn-keeper stole his table, no doubt!
EXERCISES

Exercise 1: Translate (story of the dumb student, conclusion):

The chief of the thieves sent Tonto his money with the brightest lad he had in the house (otxon zuen muttlik ozkorrenorek(e)), and with the finest mule he had in the house.

It was night when the lad arrived at Tonto's house. They decided that the boy would sleep in Tonto's house that night.

After eating a good dinner together, Tonto said to the other: "One night someone came and stayed to sleep (lo egiten). In the morning, I killed him, because he had dirtied himself (koza egin) in the bed. If you were to do that, I would do the same thing to you."

Upon going to bed, the thief thought: "If it ever happens to me, I hope it won't be today!" And he went to sleep (loka hortu zuen).

While the boy slept (muttlik lo egin bitartean), Tonto took some soft (gurt) dough (ore), and, without the thief realizing, placed it next to the poor fellow's behind. In the morning, our lad sat (up) in bed, and feeling something soft under his behind, said: "Well I'll be! Now we've done it (ederra egin dugul)!!"

And the poor thief, being afraid, got out through the window, and without looking for his mule, went running into the wood to hide, and never came back. So, Tonto, after losing his pig, ended up (gel-ditu zen) with the thieves' mule, and with a load of money too!

Exercise 2: Translate:

1. I wouldn't have been surprised if they'd caught him. 2. That lady is not merry, but sad. 3. However, I am not afraid. 4. You said you would put the clean sheets away. 5. Mind you don't miss (goldu) this opportunity! (use gero) 6. If it had been the only station, I would have stopped right there. 7. Isn't it surprising harri(garri)? No, I'm not surprised. 8. When shall we have (egin) the dinner?

This month? For me, any day. 9. Here is the yellow picture. How much are you ready to pay? If I liked (otsegine...) it, I would pay any price (prezio). 10. I would have studied more geography and culture.
Iñakiren kotxeaz gogoratzen zara? Iñakik joan den astean Bilbon utzi behar izan zuen, puskatu egin bait zitzaiointzakoak. Iñakik, Mikelak eta Itziarrek autobusez itzuli behar izan zuten.


Edurne tailerrera sartu eta "Arratsalde on" esan zion mekanikoa.

"Arratsalde on," erantzun zion honek, "zer behar duzu?"

"Jakin nahi nuke zer moduz dagoen utzi dugun autoa. Prest badago, eramango dut." "Zein auto da zurea?"


"Ez; ikusten duzu ondoan dagoen Seat horia?

Hori da gure autoa.

"A. Zure adiskideak nori eman zion? Zein mekanikori? Badakizu?"

"Bai. Bizar txiki bat duen mutil bati eman zion.


Beraz, Edurne ondoko egunean joan zen. Autoa konponduta zegoen, eta Edurnek pagatu eta eraman zuen.

Ondoko igandean, autoa Donostira eraman zuen, eta goizeko hamaitetan agertu zen harekin Iñakiren etxearen aurrean. Horrela, dena konpondu zen azkenean, baina Iñakik astebete egon behar zuen autorik gabe. Iñakik Edurneri eskerrak eman zizkion.

Arratsalde hartan, Mikel agertu zen Iñakiren etxearen Iñaki eta Arantxa ikusteko. Iñakik eman zion autoaren
berria:
"Ederki," erantzun zuen Mikelek. "Nahi duzun egunean, prest nago."
"Datorren astebukaeran joan gaitezke, eguraldi ona badago."
"Nik ere joan nahi dut," esan zuen Arantxak. "Ongi bada. Itziarri deiuko diot. Hura ere etor badaiteke\textsuperscript{1}, laurko joango gara elkarrekin."
\textsuperscript{1}because [his car] broke down (zitzolok, past of zalo)
\textsuperscript{2}by tomorrow, for tomorrow
\textsuperscript{3}the following day
\textsuperscript{4}the following Sunday
\textsuperscript{5}we can go
\textsuperscript{6}if she can come too

VOCABULARY

adiskide n. friend
artzain [aftsaj] n. shepherd
astebukaera n. weekend
auto n. car
beraz cj. therefore, so, thus
berri n. piece of news, information
bizar n. beard
datorren next, coming (Llt. THAT "that's coming")
esker(rak) n. thank(s)
gogoratu vi. remember, recall

(takes instrumental complement)
hazi, haz, -ten vi. grow
idazle n. writer
joan den last (Llt. "that's gone")
kapitulu n. chapter
literatura n. literature
mende n. century
mundu n. world
nobela n. novel
ospe n. fame, renown
pobre adj. poor
agertz, ager, -tzen vi. appear, show up

LANGUAGE NOTES

a.
With words that express periods of time, such as ordu "hour," aste "week," urte "year," and also with words employed as measures such as "bottle (of wine)," "handful," etc., the numeral bat may be replaced by bete: astebete "a week," botila bete ardo "a bottle(ful) of wine."
Note that astebete is only correct for "a week" in answer to the question "How long?", and botila bete ardo must answer the question "how much?" E.g. Astebete egon da kampoa He's been away for a week; Botila bete ardo edan du He's drunk a bottle of wine.
Consider the English sentence: "The boy I saw was Koldo." Here, "I saw" is a relative clause that refers to or describes "the boy." Notice that in English the relative clause always comes after its object of reference: "the boy I saw." In Basque, on the other hand, the relative clause normally comes before its object of reference: IKUSI NUEN mutila Koldo zen "The boy I saw was Koldo!" Nolakoak zen ATZO IRAKURRI ZENUEN liburua? "What was the book YOU READ YESTERDAY like?" This is rather difficult to get used to, but is an important feature of Basque grammar.

An English relative clause may (but does not always) begin with "that," "who" or "which": XERE AUTOA EROSI DUEN gizona Bilbok bizi da "The man WHO BOUGHT MY CAR lives in Bilbao." Here we may say that "who" placed at the beginning of "who bought my car" serves to indicate that this is a relative clause. In Basque there are no conjunctions like "that," "who" etc., but the last word of a relative clause must be the conjugated verb, and this takes the conjunctive mode (suffix -(e)n): nere autoa erosi DUEN "who bought my car."

Of course, when the verb of the relative clause is in the past tense, the conjunctive mode is, as we know, identical to the independent form; but the context helps us to decide what is a relative clause and what is a main clause:

MAIN CLAUSE: Mutila ikusten dut or Ikusten dut mutila "I see the boy"
RELATIVE CLAUSE: IKUSTEN DUDAN mutila "the boy (THAT) I SEE"
MAIN CLAUSE: Mutila ikusi nuen or Ikusi nuen mutila "I saw the boy"
RELATIVE CLAUSE: IKUSI NUEN mutila "the boy (THAT) I SAW"

The noun referred to may be the subject, the direct object or the indirect object of the relative clause, e.g.:
SUBJECT: nere autoa erosi duen gizona the man who bought my car; DIRECT OBJECT: hor ikusten dudan mutila the boy (that) I see there; INDIRECT OBJECT: Iñakik autoa saldu dion gizona the man (who) Iñaki has sold the car to. Ambiguity may arise occasionally: autoa saldu dion gizona might mean "the man (who) he sold the car to" or "the man who sold the car to him." The context will decide.
In all the examples given so far, the relative clause refers to something expressed in the sentence by a noun, and which we can call the "head" of the construction: the head of ikusi nuen mutilla is mutilla; of atzo irakurri zenuen liburu is liburu; of nere autoa erosieruen gizonan is gizona, and so on. We have seen that in Basque the head comes after the relative clause.

There also exist, in both English and Basque, what are called "headless" relative clauses, where the head is reduced to a minimal pronominal expression. If we make "the man who bought my car" headless, we get "he who bought my car" (or, more colloquially, "the guy/blake/fellow/... who bought my car"); from "the book you read yesterday," we get "what you read yesterday" or "the thing you read yesterday"; from "the boy I saw" we get "who I saw," and so on. Note that in English headless structures we frequently stick in a dummy noun such as "thing," "guy," "person," whose meaning is as vague as possible.

The Basque procedure for obtaining a headless relative clause is to simple drop out the head noun leaving everything else the same. When the noun "disappears," the determiner that accompanied the noun will remain, and now appears immediately following the relative clause. Take this phrase: irakurri dudan liburu bat "a book that I have read." The head is, of course, liburu "book." In English the headless form of this is "one that I have read." To say this in Basque, we omit the head noun liburu, and get: irakurri dudan bat "one that I have read." In this headless version, the determiner, bat, now appears immediately after the relative clause.

The commonest determiner in Basque is of course the article, which accompanies the head noun in, for example, irakurri dudan liburuA "the book that I have read." In this case, when the head, liburu, disappears, the result is irakurri dudana "the one that I have read," or "what I have read," or "the thing that I have read," with the article tacked onto the conjunctive suffix of the verb. The majority of headless relative clauses are determined by the article in this way. Further examples: nere autoa erosieruen duena he (the person) who bought my car, and so nere autoa erosieruen ducenarkin hitz egin nahiduto I want to speak to the person who bought my car; hor ikusten ditudanak ezagutzen ditut I know the guys I can see over there; hori xe da nik nahi dudana that's just what I want.

The student is best advised to begin by mastering the pattern of relative clauses with a head first, and then move on to the headless construction.
EXERCISES

Exercise 1: Translate:
Domingo Agirre is a major (nogusi) Basque writer of the twentieth century. Born in the year 1864 in Ondarroa, he died in 1920. He was a priest. Of the three novels that he wrote, two, Sezoter (Kresala) and Ferri (Goroa), have won (lortu) great fame within (borruon) Basque literature. Although he was a Bizkaian (Nohiz eta bizkaltarra Izan), Agirre wrote Goroa in Gipuzkoan dialect (gipuzkeraz).

The subject of Goroa is the life of the people who moved (zebiten) around a farm in Oñati. The world of the shepherds of Gipuzkoan's highlands (Golerrri) appears in this novel. The subject of Kresala, on the other hand, is a fishing village (orantzale herri) in Bizkaia.

Here is a story that appears in one chapter of Goroa. The name of the chapter is "Flowers and Thorns (orantzok)."

Jose was a young orphan boy (unezurri) who lived in the house. He was a handsome (galant) and merry lad. Jose only loved one girl: Malentxo, the daughter of the head of the household (etxeko nogusi).

Jose had always loved Malentxo. As children (untean), both of them (biak) had gone about (lbralat) together, like good friends. But the children grew, and when Malentxo started growing up (handa ojiten), Jose felt another kind of (bestelako) love (maltosun).

Since then (ordunok), Jose dreamed of Malentxo (Malentzorekin onets Ojiten zuen). But it was a useless dream (onets), for Malentxo who was rich and beautiful would never want Jose, a poor shepherd boy.

Exercise 2: Translate:
1. Last weekend I read a novel in Basque. 2. A writer of great fame wrote it. 3. Your beard has grown much more than mine. 4. We haven't had news of him lately (ospolon). 5. Our warmest thanks to all (of you). 6. His fame spread throughout the world in the last century. 7. Basque literature's being poorer than that of some other countries (herri) is not surprising. 8. Sometime, perhaps next month. I would like to read one of this writer's novels; I ought to go to the bookstore to buy it. 9. Take any chapter of this book, and study (aztertu) it for next Monday's literature class. 10. Who knows what the culture of the next century will be like (nolakoa...)?

Exercise 3: Translate:
1. The man I know has a beard. 2. What is the news that you have heard? 3. Who is the lady you said goodbye to? 4. The choice you made was dumb. 5. I missed (goldu) the only train that came to the station. 6. Who is that gentleman who lives above (golnoon) you? 7. Whose (norenok) are the cows that are in the garden? 8. What did the lady who appeared in the office yesterday want? 9. If you don't take it away (kendu), the bottle (that is) on the right will fall. 10. The things they say on the radio are lies.
UNIT TWENTY-SEVEN

STUDY TEXT


"Ibai hau Bidasoak da," esan zuen Iñakik; "muga egiten du."


"Horixe."

"Eta mugatzen da pasatzen da?"

"Bi lekutan pasa daiteke. Batetik, Irundik Hendaiara pasatzen da; bestea, Behbiakoa da, aurrean duguna."


Laster, Bera izeneko herribilaleko iritsirik, gelditu ziren tabernak kafesne bat hartzeko. Tabernaren barnean, Iñakik eta Mikelik kafesneka eskatu zioten tabernariari. "Zuretago deus ez?" galdetu zion tabernariak Itziari.

"Ur pixka bat hartuko dut, mesedez."


"Euskara asko egiten da hemen?" galdetu zuen Mikelik.

"Bai jauna, euskara anitz," esan zuen tabernariak; "eta hemen egiten den euskara, hobea da Gipuzkoan mintzatzen dena baino! Zer bada, paseatzera zatozte?"

"Bai, bueltu bat ematera."

"Nondik, Donostiatik?"

"Bai.

"Hona etortzen zaizkigu donostiar anitz..."

Eta hola. Azkenean, tabernariak "esker anitz" eta "adio" esan ziren, eta kanpora irtzen ziren.
Beratik Sunbillara jarraltu zuten, eta nahiko
denbora zutenetxeko arren, azken herri honetan gelditu ziren,
buela bat emateko, eta Mikelek herria ikusi ahal izateko.
Gero aurrera joan ziren Doneztebera, Iñakiren arreba bila-
tzera. Handi, Arantxak bere adiskide batekin aurkitu zuten.
Bostak taberna batera sartu ziren ardolxo bat hartzera
baskaltzera joan baino lehen. Mikel Arantxaren lagunarekin
mintzatu zen:
"Non bizi zara, Nafarroan?"
"Bai, Ituren go borda batean bizi naiz. Ituren
ezagutzen duzu?"
"Ez, zer da, herri bat?"
"Bai. Ikusten duzu zubi hori? Ondoan dagoen
karrakatik aitzinera dago. Lehen herria Elgorriaga da,
etra Ituren bigarrena."
"Atzo Karmeleren etxera etorri mintzen," esan
zion Arantxak, "haren eguna? baitzten."
"A, zorionak orduan!"
"Esker anitz!"

1(zehiltzen, past of dobitzta)
2ones can cross
3had just started...
4(East.) = zuretzat
5her birthday

VOCABULARY

adieto, goodbye
aitona n. grandfather
aitzinean (East. = -aurrean)
amets n. dream; amets egin vt.
dream (comituctive complement)
andregai n. fiancé
anzitz (East. = asko)
antzera pp. like, in the manner of
barnezai (East. = barruan)
borda n. farm, farmhouse
deus (East. = czer)
edertasun n. beauty
eguredi n. midday, noon
erreka n. stream
karrika (East. = kale)
kutsu n. flavor, touch, taste
mintzatu vt. speak
pox n. joy
tabernari n. barman, innkeeper
zorion n. happiness, luck; Zorio-
naik! Congratulations! Happy birth-
day! Merry Christmas! etc.
sitive-Dative, Transitive, Transitive-Dative), so you will also have
to learn, eventually, the full conjugation of these verbs in the
past. Of course, you are already on your way to learning this con-
jugation too, and you may be consoled to know that as you progress
through the apparent labyrinth of the Basque verb things get easier
and easier. This is because the more of the system you know, the
more do new forms tend to fall into regular patterns, until you eventually
acquire a sort of "instinct" for the right form. Meanwhile,
it is often easy to see what a given verb form, in context, means,
even when you couldn't have used the form yourself. Remember also
that as you proceed through these conjugations, the forms you learn
later on are on the whole those used far less frequently than the ones
you have learned earlier on, and may even cause some trouble to native
speakers; this means that mastering the new forms completely is less
important than ensuring your mastery of the basic forms. Refer when
necessary to GS3.

EXERCISES

Exercise 1: Translate (continuation of "Flowers and Thorns"): If Jose's dream came true (eglo bihurtuko bolitz), oh what
joy (a zer poza)! what happiness! How he would live with Malentxo
then! But he knew (bozeklen) it was a dream, no more (besterik ez).
"You started as a servant (Monrol sartu zilne) in this house," he
thought, "and you have grown here as if you were (bozina bezilo)
a son of here. The bread you have eaten has been (that) of this
house; the clothes you wear are what they have given you; and still
you dream of the only daughter (olobo bakorrorsken) of the house?
It cannot be (ezina do)." He didn't say anything to Malentxo. He
was silent; silent and sad.

One day he spoke with the grandfather, to say that he wished
(gogoza zuela) to go away (konporo). The grandfather was surprised
to hear (entzutean) that.

"Don't you have enough here, then?" the grandfather asked him.
"I have always had enough and more," answered Jose.
"I cannot understand you then. What's the matter with you
(zer duzu) in these last months?"
"If I could say it...."
"Come along (tico), tell me. Do you want a fiancée? Is that
it?"
"I don't know what I want."
"Well I had in mind (gogoon) a fiancée for you. Of course,
if she's not to your liking (zure gogoko), leave (her); but not
everyone would (ez Lukate denek) so leave our Malentxo.";
"Malentxo?"
"Malentxo."
Exercise 2: Translate:
1. Jose's fiancée is coming at noon for lunch (baskottzero). 2. His wife's beauty gives pleasure to all. 3. This region has a Basque flavor, and furthermore the people here speak in the manner of the Basques. 4. Goodbye, land of my dreams! 5. The stream goes through the middle (erdittik) of the garden. 6. The poor were [zauden] full of joy, but the rich were sad and angry. 7. Now fear (baldur) has spread throughout the world. 8. The shepherd was dressed to go to church. 9. We always go away on weekends. 10. If I catch you, I'll give you a beating (lit. "I'll give it to you on the behind"). 11. They always sing at dinners. 12. Political parties (alderd politikoak) use posters to call people to a demonstration. 13. I've told you once and again that you'll get along (konpondu) better if you do it this way; however, you go on (jarraitu) just as before. 14. I've bought in the bookstore that's in that street three times (hiru aldiz). 15. How many times did you knock (jo) at the door before entering? 16. I don't agree with what the official history says. 17. Thank goodness this cider house is open; otherwise we wouldn't have known where to go for dinner. 18. We'll have enough with a couple (pare) of omelets and a bottle of cider. 19. Have you ever seen a shepherd with his sheep? 20. What would Malentxo say, yes (boletz) or no (zetz)?
STUDY TEXT

"Donezteben geldituko zarete bazkaltzeko?" galdetu zien Karmelek.
"Ederki. Abiatuko gara orain, ordunau?" "Goazen bada." "Non bazkal dezakegu?" galdetu zuen Inakik, Elizondora heldu zirenean.
"Bai, eta oso ospe handia du Euskal Herrian.
Baina zuk esan dezakezu, jan ondoren!"
"Beno bada, adio;" esan zion Arantxak, "ea hurrengo Donostira etortzen zaren!"
"Badaiteke. Adio, adio!"
Eta aurrera! (edo eta, ekialdeko euskaldunek esaten duten bezala, "nitzina"). Baztango haran gozo eta berdean banna, gero aldapa gora igan, aldapa behera jaitsi, eta laster Dantzarian aurkitu ziren, mugan.
Mugan poliziak zeuden, jakina; bai eta soldaduak ere. Mikelek bere pasaportea polizia batetxera erakutsi zion; besteek beren karmetak erakutsi zituzten. Poliziak galdera batzuek egin zizkien erdaraz, ez bait zizkien euskaraerik bat ere. "¿Qué van o hacer en Francia?" galdetu zuen; honek esan nahi du: "Zertara zoaste Frantziarra?" Gero beste aldeko polizia batek galdetu zion: "Vous êtes dez en Espagne?", hau da, "Espainian bizi zarete?" Galdera guztian crantzun eta gero, aurrera jarraitu ahal izan zuten.

Ondoren kafetegi batean sartu ziren, kafetxoa eta gâteau basque delakoa hartzeko; Arantzak libera batzuek ekarri izan bait zituen etxetik.

*means

VOCABULARY

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Basque</th>
<th>English</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>aldapa</td>
<td>n. slope, hill</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>barna</td>
<td>(Eost. = zehar)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bat ere</td>
<td>at all; any; bat ere ez</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>[ba'tes]</td>
<td>not at all, none</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bihurtu</td>
<td>to become, turn into</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bhur</td>
<td>so-called</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ezkondu</td>
<td>vt. get married, marry</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Froatua</td>
<td>vt. test, try; prove</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>galderra</td>
<td>n. question</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>gibelean (Eost. = atzean)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>haran</td>
<td>n. valley</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>heldu, hel, -tzen</td>
<td>vi. arrive</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>igan, igaten (Glp. [igo], [-tsen])</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>vi. go up, rise</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>jaitxi [yetxi], jaits, jaisten</td>
<td>vt. go down, come down, get down</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
karnet [kañˈne(t)] n. identity
        card, (driver's) license
lasaitasuna n. Calm, tranquility
libera n. Franc
pasaporto n. passport
polizia n. policeman; police
sobera (Fost. = gehiegí)
soldadu n. soldier

LANGUAGE NOTES

a.
Note the Basque word order in the following: oso jatetxe ona a very
good restaurant, oso ospe handia very great fame, oso bide polita
a very pretty route, oso herribiko atsorgia a very pleasant village.
Besides oso, other degree modifiers such as gustiz, hain, etc. admit
the same construction: hain idazle famatuak such a famous writer.
The degree modifier for comparative adjectives, askoz, is used simi-
larly: askoz gauza harrigarriagoak much stronger things. In this
construction the determiner may only be the article, never bat, for
example. An alternative construction, though considered less elegant,
is nevertheless very common, and consists grammatically of an apposition:
jatetxe bat oso ona, gauza batzuek askoz harrigarriagoak.

GRAMMAR

§1 THE AORIST POTENTIAL TENSES

All the compound tenses studied so far have as
their auxiliaries the verbs IZAN and UKAN. We now come
to a second group of compound tenses in which two other
verbs—one intransitive and the other transitive—are used
as auxiliaries. We shall refer to these compound tenses
as the aorist tenses, and to the auxiliaries used in them
as the aorist auxiliaries. Besides using the same auxiliaries,
another feature common to all the aorist tenses is that
the main verb is always in the infinitive (the supine in
western colloquial Basque, see 14:2).

The aorist auxiliaries always appear as auxiliaries
and in conjugated form; thus they have no infinitive or
supine. However, to make it easier to talk about these
auxiliary verbs when discussing grammar, we can employ
the "invented" infinitives or supines "EDIN" and "EZAN".
"EDIN" is intransitive, like IZAN; "EZAN" is transitive,
like UKAN. "EDIN" and "EZAN" possess the six simple tenses
observed in IZAN and UKAN (24:1), plus a seventh tense
that is lacking in IZAN and UKAN, the imperative. See
GS5-6.
In this and the next two units, we shall examine the three aorist moods: indicative (or nonpotential), potential, and imperative. Let us begin with the potential, since it is commoner and easier to use than the indicative.

There are of course three aorist potential tenses: present, past and hypothetical. Here is the partial conjugation of the present tense of the two aorist auxiliaries:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>&quot;EDIN&quot;</th>
<th>&quot;EZAN&quot;</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Person 1 naiteke</td>
<td>dezaket</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Person 2 haiteke</td>
<td>dezake/k/n</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Person 3 daiteke</td>
<td>dezake</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Person 4 gaitzeke</td>
<td>dezakegu</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Person 5 zaitezke</td>
<td>dezakezu</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Person 5' zaitezketxe</td>
<td>dezakezue</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Person 6 daitezke</td>
<td>dezakete</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

These forms are quite easy to learn. In "EDIN," the potential mood is marked by the double element -to-ke- (compare IZAN, 24:1), and the verb's root, -DI-, is reduced to -i-; thus na-i-teke, etc. In "EZAN," the root, -ZA-, is followed by the potential marker -ke-; thus de-za-ke-t, etc. But note how each root is pluralized (ga-i-tezke, d-ITza-ke-t).

The present aorist potential tense, formed with the auxiliaries as above and the infinitive of the main verb, corresponds to English forms with can, except when these are translated by JAKIN in Basque (see 9:2): Elizondora joan gaitzke bazkaltzera we can go to Elizondo for lunch; etor zaitezke gurekin? can you come with us? Non bazkal dezakegu? where can we have lunch?

Similarly, the past aorist potential expresses "could" (past meaning) or "could have": atzo etor zitekeen he could (have) come yesterday. The hypothetic aorist potential is a commonly used tense; it translates English "could" in the "conditional" sense, e.g. orain egin nezake I could do it now. 

For the forms of the auxiliary, consult G5.

Thus there are two ways to say "I can go": joan ahal naiz (joaten ahal naiz in eastern dialects), and joan naiteke (and "redundant" forms such as joan ahal naiteke are not unknown). These forms are essentially synonymous; each dialect shows preference for one or another form. Note, however, that the aorist auxiliary cannot itself be compounded, so that to say "I'll be able to go," for example, we must use ahal: joan (joaten) ahalko naiz.
The hypothetic áorist potential tense does not always translate "could": in eastern dialects it is used to translate the English "conditional" in would: see 24:1.

To express "can" and "could" with transitive verbs, eastern dialects also employ another auxiliary verb specialized in this meaning, whose stem is -IRO--; like "EZAN" it requires the infinitive of the main verb; it is generally conjugated in the potential mood, but is also found without the potential marker -ke- in the same sense. Thus, in the present tense: (sg.) 1 diroket, 2 dirokeken, 3 diroke, 4 dirokegu, 5 dirokoe, 5' dirokoeze, 6 dirokote; (pl.) ditiroket, etc. In the hypothetic: miroke, etc. In speech the stem -IRO- is often pronounced [-ie-]: [dioket], [miok], etc. E.g. hori egin diroket = hori egin dezakot = hori egi(te)n ahal chut I can do that.

EXERCISES

Exercise 1: Translate (continuation of "Flowers and Thorns"):

Jose was left dumbfounded (horribita getditu).

"What did you say, grandfather?"

"Don't you like the idea?" ("Goizki iruditzen ad zaiiz?"

"Not like the idea? How could I not like the idea? (Goizki?
Noto goizki?) Oh, if (only) my dreams were true!"

"Is that your dream?"

"Just that (horize bera). But grandfather, if I were rich;
but she won't want anything with me."

"You are one of the house, and you will have money to get married."

"What joy! (Hau poza! Only I know the thorn I had (nerribilen,
from erribil) inside (me)!"

"Thorns you will always have, as all men have. Now, Jose,
from today on (gaurrik aurrera), until things are sorted out (konpondu),
you will have to live in Aloña. There, in the mountain, you will take
upon you (zure goi) the sheep and other tasks (goineroko lanak).
I will take you everything you need."

"I will live well anywhere (edonon) now, grandfather."

Exercise 2: Translate:

1. I don't agree with that at all. 2. How many francs do you have?
None. 3. When she grows (up) she will turn into a fine lady. 4.
The so-called "Third World" is poor; however, things will not always
continue the same. 5. "This passport says that you are married (ex-
konduto)," said the policeman. 6. I'm sorry, I didn't catch your
question; would you say it again? 7. After going up the mountain
(lit. "to the mountain"), we went down to the valley. 8. "We have
arrived," said the soldier. 9. I showed him my identity card without
losing (my) calm. 10. Why don't you try it?
Exercise 3: Translate, using the present aorist potential tense:
1. Where can I leave this bag? 2. You can put it in the cupboard.
3. If there's a cider house open, we can have dinner there. 4. If
Jose can start the car, he'll go straight to the office. 5. They
have spread the news that an immigrant killed him; but can they prove
it? 6. Itsiar's sister can come too. 7. I can go up next week.
8. They can stay in the office until Mr. Etxeberria (Etxeberria jouna)
arrives. 9. Watch out (kontuz); you can easily fall (down) from there.
10. I can remove them if you prefer.
UNIT TWENTY-NINE

STUDY TEXT

"Badea! telefonorik hemen?" galdetu zuen İñakik kafetegian.
İñaki iparraldean aski ibilia zenez geroz, bazekien hango euskara egiten.
"Bai, bada telefono bat karrikan. Hemendik ateratzen zarelarik', eskuinerat' joan, eta gero zuzen aitzinerat."
"Zenbat da hau?"
"Hegoi libera."
"Mila esker."
"Zuri, jauna."
"Nori deitu nahi diozu telefonoz?" galdetu zion Arantxak İñakiri, kalean zeudelarik'.
"Nere lagun Piarresi. Donibane Lohitzunera joan behar dugunez geroz, Piarres ikus genezake."
"Badugu denborarik?"
"Bai. Hori egin nahi nuke, Mikel Donibane Lohitzunen egon dadin, eta Piarres ezagut dezan. Emango didazu dirua deitzeko?"
"Tori. Zer esango diozu?"
"Esango diot egin dadila elizaren aurrean bost t'erdieta, handik buelta bat eman dezagun; herriaren erditik eta hondartzaraino joan ginetzek." Telefonora joan zen bere adiskideari deitzera.
"Nor da?"
"İñaki naiz!"
"İñaki! Non zara orain?"
"Saran naiz, Arantxa eta beste zenbait lagunekin. Donibanetik iragan behar gara etxerat joateko, eta elkar ikus genezakeela pentsatu dut." "Ontsa; zer tenoretan izanen' zarete hemen?"
"Bost t'erdieta. Ongi doakizu' tenore hori?"
"Bai, ederki. Zer tokitan?"
"Elizaren aitzinezan egon zintegke bost t'erdieta?"
"Ontsa! Han egonen naiz. Sarri arte!"
"Bai, gero arte, Piarres."
Berez, denak Donibane Lohitzunera joan ziren.
"Hemen jaio zinen?" galdetu zion Mikelek Piarresi, hondartzatik hubibil zebiltzalarik'.
"Ez, Nafarroan' sortu nintzen, Donibane Garazitik
hurbil. Baina zenbait urtez bizi izan naiz hemen. Ezagu-
zen duzua Donibane Garazi?'
   "Ez. Lehen aldiz eta erri naiz Iparralder a gaur.
   "Bihar harat joanen naiz. Enekin erri na hazi
area?"
   "Baina nola itzul ninteke Donostira?"
   "Ez da problemalik. Egun ene etxean lo egiten
duzu. Bihar autox joanen gara, eta arratsaldean itzuliko
gara; autobusa hartzen ahalko duzu Donostiarat. Donibane
Garazi erakutsiko dizut; lakot izanen zaizua, bizi polita
bait da."

'is there? (for this use of IZAN, see 5:1; for the suffix -a, 1:2)
'right
'upon leaving here, when you leave here
'when they were
'izango (see 15:1)
does (it) suit you? (dookizu: dative form of JOAN, "it goes to you")
'as they were walking (zebiltzon, past. of dabilitzo)
Norther Basques refer to Low Navarre as simply "Navarre"; this is
correct historically, for "High" and "Low" Navarre were originally
unified, their present separation being a result of the dividing
up of the Basque Country between Spain and France.
'for the first time
'see the vocabulary

VOCABULARY

amona n. grandmother
aski adv. (Eost.) enough; quite a lot
bake n. peace
biziki adv. (Eost.) very, really
egun (Eost. = gaur)
elkar pron. each other
e ne, eni, enekin, etc. (Eost. = mere, neri, merekin, etc.)
erantzun n. answer, reply
hurbil pp. near, close

iragan, -ten (Sp. [i'yarə], [-tən] pass; spend (time)
laket izan vio. (Eost. = gustatu)
naitasun n. love
ontsaa (Eost. = ondo)
sarri (Eost. = lastor)
sortu, sort, sortzen vi. come out, emerge, be born; vi. create, produce, give rise to
tenore n. (Eost.) time (of day)
zenbait dt. a few, some, several
§1 THE SUBJUNCTIVE, OPTATIVE, AND AORIST CONDITIONAL

In Unit 28 we studied the aorist potential tenses. Now we are going to consider the aorist nonpotential (indicative) tenses. A passive knowledge of these tenses will suffice the learner at the present stage.

There are of course three aorist nonpotential tenses: present, past and hypothetic. In the oldest continuous Basque texts we possess, we find that the past aorist indicative tense is commonly used in main clauses in the sense of a "past historic." Thus, the New Testament translated into Basque by the sixteenth-century Lapurdian writer Joannes Leizarraga begins in the following manner: Jesus Cristo Daviden somearen, Abrahamen somearen generazioneko Liburuaz. Abrahamek engendra zezan Isaak. Eta Isaakek engendra zezan Jakob. Eta Jakobek engendra zitzan Jada eta baren analieg... "Engendered" is translated as engendra zezan (with a third-person-singular object) or engendra zitzan (with a third-person-plural object); that is, by the past aorist indicative of a verb engendratu.

In more recent writing, and in the present spoken language, this use of the aorist has disappeared completely, and the semantic function of "past historic" is now shared by the present perfect and the past perfect tenses (21:1). Today we must say: Abrahamek engendratu zuen Isaak. Eta Isaakek engendratu zuen Jakob. Eta Jakobek engendratu zituen Jada eta baren analieg.

In modern Basque, the aorist indicative tenses only exist in subordinate forms, in the conjunctive, completive and conditional modes of subordination. In G55 the commonest forms of the aorist indicative tenses are given, the present and past in the conjunctive mode, and the hypothetic in the conditional mode.

The uses of the conjunctive and completive modes with the aorist tenses are rather special. It is convenient for this reason to consider each mode separately.

The conjunctive mode is used: (a) with the present aorist indicative, e.g. ikus dozan; (b) with the past aorist indicative, e.g. ikus zezan. (In Zuberoan, the past is replaced by the hypothetic, thus ikus lezan.) We can call ikus dozan a present subjunctive, and ikus zezan a past subjunctive. The most characteristic sense of the present and past subjunctive is that of purpose, e.g. hori egin nahi nahi, Mikel Donibane Lohitzunen egon dadi, eta Piarres ezagut dezakin "I'd like to do that", so that Mikel ton be in Donibane Lohitzune, and meet Piarres. The expression "so that" here corresponds to the sense of the subjunctive in Basque, which needs no such subordinating conjunction, other than the -n of the conjunctive mode. Certain verbs and other expressions take subjunctive complement clauses, e.g.
nahi dut Mikelek Piarrres ezagut dezan I want Mikel to meet Piarrres.

The completive mode is used with the same tenses as the conjunctive: (a) ikus dezala; (b) ikus zezala. We can call the former the present optative, and the latter the past optative. Although subordinate in form, the present optative is used in main clauses to express a wish: Mikelek Piarrres ezagut dezala! let Mikel meet Piarrres! Some well-known verses contained in the first book ever published in Basque, in 1545, written by Bernat Etxepare and entitled Linguae Vasconum Primitiae, begin with these words in praise of the author's region of Garazi: Garaziko herria benedika dadila may the Land of Garazi be blessed. The optative is also used in indirect commands, subordinated to the verb esan, e.g. esango diot egon dadila elizaren aurrean bost t'erdieta an I'll tell him to be in front of the church at five thirty.

The conditional mode is used: (a) with the present aorist indicative, e.g. ikus badeza; (b) with the hypothetic aorist indicative, e.g. ikus baleza. As is proper of the aorist aspect, these forms may express something of temporal indefiniteness, but do not appear very clearly opposed semantically to the non-aorist forms (a) ikusten bade, (b) ikusiko balu, with which they are nearly synonymous. In some eastern dialects, the aorist version of (b), ikus baleza, is very common (see 23:1); other than this, the aorist conditionals are on the whole relegated to literary style.

To sum up, the common semantic denominator of the aorist indicative tense forms is that of temporal indefiniteness: in "I'd like to do that so that Mikel can meet Piarrres," "I want Mikel to meet Piarrres," "let Mikel meet Piarrres!" etc., our principal interest is that Mikel should indeed meet Piarrres sooner or later; the specific aspectual points of view contained in the non-aorist tenses—habitual, perfect, future—are not to the point. Perhaps this explanation is also applicable to the aorist potential tenses, since to say that something can happen is to say nothing about when it will happen, if it happens at all. Certainly the factor of temporal indefiniteness can also cover the sense of the other aorist mood, the imperative (see Unit 30).

If subordinate clauses in the aorist indicative are characterized by temporal indefiniteness, then it is not surprising that such clauses can often be replaced by phrases containing a gerund that have no tense at all because they are nonfinite. Instead of hori egin nahi dut Mikelek Piarrres ezagut dezan we can say hori egin nahi dut Mikelek Piarrres ezagutzeko; in place of nahi dut Mikelek Piarrres ezagut dezan, we have nahi dut Mikelek Piarrres ezagutzen; for esango diot elizaren aurrean egon dadila there is esango diot elizaren aurrean egoteko, and so on. Basque speakers make much more use of the nonfinite forms than the finite ones, and the learner is best advised to prefer the nonfinite expression and avoid the aorist indicative whenever possible.
EXERCISES

Exercise 1: Translate (conclusion of "Flowers and Thorns"):

Jose spent six months in the mountain. He often thought (gogoratu) of Malentxo. "Has grandfather told Malentxo my dream?" he wondered (golsetu). "What did Malentxo think (iruditu) of it, and grandmother and the others? What awaits me (zer doukot mere zoln) when I return to the Farm?" He had plenty of time to think while he lead a shepherd’s life for six long months.

When at last that long period ended, he came down from the mountain. There was no tranquility inside him, for he had Malentxo on his mind (gogon) all the time. What would he say to Malentxo? Nothing; it was better to remain silent. In Malentxo’s face Jose would recognize her answer immediately.

But when poor Jose reached home, there was no answer on Malentxo’s face. Malentxo had no answer for Jose’s love. Jose, who had hoped for happiness, was sadder than ever. He had lost the peace of the mountain now.

The grandfather, meanwhile, remained silent.

Exercise 2: Translate:
1. Grandfather and grandmother love each other. 2. You need to spend some weeks in peace and calm. 3. They had always been close, but now a new love emerged between them. 4. Life became (bhumtu or egin) very sad for them. 5. We can bring together (bikatu) these elements in a group. 6. He threw the stone a few meters further (ourregu). 7. You can go as far as the end (mutur) of the world, but you cannot return again. 8. When peace spreads throughout the world, no trace of your struggle will remain. 9. Yes, but who will produce the peace that you want? That’s the question! 10. That’s bullshit (koko zohorro)!

Exercise 3: Translate, using the hypotetic aorist potential:
1. I could drink a liter. 2. He could send a few francs sometime. 3. With this weather, I could sit in the sun (eguskiton) by the stream. 4. If he found a fiancée, he could get married. 5. You could teach Basque in America.

Exercise 4: Revise these sentences, eliminating the subjunctive or optative, e.g.
Ezkon dadin nahi dut. → Eskontzea nahi dut.
"Zatoz enekin Donibane Garazirat!" esan zion Piarresek Mikeli.


Mikelak Piarresekin joatea erabaki zuen, beraz.
Goizetan goiz jaiki eta gosaldun ondoren, Piarresek bere autoa atera zuen; "Sar zaintze, Mikel," esan zion, eta ekialderantz abiatu ziren.

Nafarroa Behereak zazpi eskualde historiko ditu: hegemondebaldean, Baigorri eta Orzaize; iparmendebaldean, Arbela eta Iriarri; hegoekialdean, Garazi eta Ostibarre; eta Amikuze iparraldean. Donapaleu probintzian dagoen hiririk handiena da (bi mila bizilagunetik gora dituelak), eta Amikuzen dago.

Nafarroa Beherearen hiriburua, berriz, Donibane Garazi dugu, Euskal Herriko hiribururik txikiena, baina politikena ere bai, bere kale txukunekin eta Errobi ibaiak daramatzan ur garbi-garbiekin. Herriaren harri zaharretan hiru hizkuntza irakur ditzakegu, eskualde hau, berez eus-
kalduna, historian zehar orain espainolena, orain frantsesea izan bait da.

Handik ekialderantz, Zuberoa dugu "azken" probintzia, Euskal Herriko txikienda eta berezienda. Hona hemen beste mundu bat Euskal Herriaren barnean!


"Iragan zaitez zubitik, joan zaitez karrika handirat, eta har ezazu han eskuina.... Ongi ibili! Etor zaitez berriz ene ikusten!"

1 over 2,000 inhabitants
2 dorometza = "it carries them," from ERAMAN
3 in itself, by nature
4 some other time
5 = ni ikusten (see end of 12:1)

VOCABULARY

amodio n. love
aterabide n. way out, solution
auzo n. neighborhood
beldur n. fear
berezi adj. special, distinct
beserkatu vt., vt. embrace
bilakatu vt. (East.) become
bizilagun n. inhabitant
erran (East. = esan)
eskualde n. district
heldu izan vt. (East.) come
historiko adj. historic
iraun, -ten vt. last, endure,
survive
jaiki, -tzen vt. get up
jakinarazi, jakinaraz, -ten vt(d).
inform, let (someone) know
kausitu vt. (East.) find
laborantza n. (East.) farming
malz adv. often, frequently
neroni or nihaur pron. I myself
txukun adj. tidy
urrutu (-urrutii),
zorionez adv. fortunately
zorixarrez or zorigaitzez adv.
unfortunately
GRAMMAR

§1 THE IMPERATIVE

The full conjugation of the Basque verb includes a seventh tense, the imperative. There is a simple and a compound imperative. In modern Basque IZAN and UKAN have no simple imperative; here, to illustrate, is the simple imperative (commonest forms only) of ETORRI and ERAMAN:

ETORRI

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Person</th>
<th>Form</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>hator</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>betor</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>gatozen</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td>zatoz (Gip. [atos]; Eusk. [sato])</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5'</td>
<td>zatozte</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6</td>
<td>betoz</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

ERAMAN

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Person</th>
<th>Form</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>eramak/eraman</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>berama</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>daramagun</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>eramazu</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td>eramazue</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6</td>
<td>beramate</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The most important forms to learn are those for second-person subjects: hator, zatoz, zatozte; eramak, eraman, eramazu, eramazue. In the intransitive, these forms are identical to the present indicative; syntactically, though, the imperative forms, unlike the indicative ones, may appear at the beginning of the sentence: hona zatoz you are coming here, but zatoz hona! come here! In the transitive, when the object is third person, the imperative begins like the infinitive: eraman-eramak, eramazu, etc.
The first-person-plural imperative forms gatozen let's come (so goazen let's go), daratagun let's take, are identical to the present subjunctive (29:1).

The third-person imperative forms, which have the initial b-, have a stiff, formal effect: betor let him come, etc. Many a gravestone in Basque churchyards reads: goian bego "may he/she be above."

A more colloquial substitute for the third-person imperative is the corresponding form of the present optative (29:1): etor dadila! let him come! It is also common to replace the second-person imperative with the present optative in negative commands: ez daratagula! (or ez deatzuela eraman!) rather than ez eramazu! (ez ezazu eraman!).

The compound imperative is formed with the aorist auxiliary and the infinitive of the main verb. The conjugation of the auxiliary is shown in GS5. The most important forms to learn are few in number: intransitive zaitze ([sai'tze]), zaitzette; transitive ezazu, ezazue (commonly [sazu], [sazue]), itzazu, itzazue.

In spoken Basque, and even in written, the transitive imperative auxiliary for second-person subjects is sometimes contracted with the infinitive that precedes it; the result is not always distinguishable from a simple imperative form. The auxiliary forms ezazu and ezazue are reduced to -(a)zu, -(a)zue, and the infinitive may lose a final -n, e.g. ema'zu (= eman ezazu), ema'itzazu (= eman itzazu), ikus'zu (= ikus ezazu), utz'azu (= utz ezazu), eraman'itzazu (= eraman itzazu), etc. Similarly with Person 2 forms: ema'k, ema'n, ema'itzak, ema'itzan, and so on.

Transitive-dative imperatives can be contracted similarly: ema'izazu (= eman izezazu) "give me it," esu'iozu (= esan izealiozu) "tell him," etc. (The apostrophes inserted here are not customary in Basque written usage.)

The simplest way to express an order or request, however, is by means of the infinitive with no auxiliary, which we could call the "elliptical imperative": etor hona!; eraman hori!; ez egin hori! etc. (14:2).

EXERCISES

Exercise 1: Translate:

WARITXU: What are you doing here?
JEAN-PIERRE: Is your mother at home?
WARITXU: No. She's in the neighborhood.
JEAN-PIERRE: Better. I was afraid of finding her here.
WARITXU: But why are you always half afraid... I'm all alone.
 Aren't you going to embrace me? (They embrace)
JEAN-PIERRE: Maritxu, I come with some bad news.
MARITXU: What? Are you leaving me?
JEAN-PIERRE: Leaving... Not altogether (aldebat), but...
MARITXU: Don't you love me any more?
JEAN-PIERRE: It's not that. I'm leaving here.
MARITXU: And where are you going? Aren't you happy here?
JEAN-PIERRE: Too happy unfortunately... Yesterday morning, the boss informed me that work has become scarce (eskostu delta) in the factory, and since I started working (sortu) the last, he told me to look for something else...
MARITXU: Damn boss! (Nogust kokoloi!) And what will you become now?
JEAN-PIERRE: I myself don't know!
MARITXU: And remaining in farming...
JEAN-PIERRE: The oldest brother is the house's...
MARITXU: Then...
JEAN-PIERRE: There are not a great many (lit. "a hundred") solutions! What remains to me: to leave the village!
MARITXU: Where are you thinking of going?
JEAN-PIERRE: How do I know? (Lit.: "Do I know?") If one has to go away (Uruntzekotan), it is better to go pretty far...
MARITXU: To Paris perhaps (ote)?
JEAN-PIERRE: I think so.
MARITXU: Then for me you are lost!
JEAN-PIERRE: How come?
MARITXU: (with) you in Paris and me here, how do you expect (noh!) our love to last?
JEAN-PIERRE: I'll write to you often...

Exercise 2: Translate:
1. Hey! Get up! It's time (orduo) to have breakfast! 2. Come on! Embrace! You are going to be married soon! 3. Sing something! Don't be afraid! 4. Send the newspaper when you finish with it, please.
5. Put on these shoes, madam. 6. I prefer to use this other pair, if it's the same to you. 7. This neighborhood is pretty special, fortunately. 8. I myself often go up to the other neighborhood to see my grandmother. 9. How has Basque survived through all these years? How have the Basques kept it alive (bladek)? That is the question. 10. We all want peace, but unfortunately there is no solution at all today; that is why we must struggle.
KEY TO TRANSLATIONS (Units 21-30)

Story of the Dumb Student

(Unit 21)


Lapurren nagusia atera eta esan zuen: "Kaiko Tonto. Horixe da asto ederra!"


"Ez, ez," esan zuen lapurra, "hori astoa da, bai eta ederra ere."

"Zerria da," esan zuen Tontok berriz.

"Begira," esan zuen lapurra; hori zerria bada, diru pila bat emango dizut, eta astoa bada, astoa neri emango didazu."

"Ederki."

Gero beste lapur bat atera zen, eta nagusiak esan zuen: "Zu! Zer da hau, zerria ala astoa?"

"Hau? Hau asto da."

"Be!" esan zuen ikasle tontoa. "Beno, astoa bada, zurra da."

Eta lapurrek hartu zuten zerria.

(Unit 22)


Tontok jantzia jantzia zuen. Orduan, jantziren azpian makila hendi bat hartuz, lapurren etxera itzuli zen. Lapurrek Tonto ikusi zuten, eta uste zuten emakume gazte bat zela. Lapurren nagusiak esan zuen: "Zergatik ez zara sartzen gure etxera, eta gaua gurskin pasatu?"

"Beldur naiz gizon guzti hauen artean," esan zuen Tontok.

"Egon lassii; hamabi gizon hauen gela batean lo esingo dute. haien atera hertsiko dugu, eta zuk izango dituzu giltzak nahi baduzu. Zu eta ni bakarrik ondo konponduko gara."


"Al, al, al!" esan zuen lapurra, "zerria zira! Zerri! Badago dirua armairu horretan. Hartu mesedez, eta joan!"

Eta Tontoko joko pozik dirua hartu eta lapurrek utzi zituen.
(Unit 23)
Hol, ongi jantzita eta bizardun, zaldiz joan zen lapurren etxera. Lapurrek etortzen ikusi zutenean, medikua zen galdetu zioten, eta bailetz erantzun zuten. Lapurrek eskuatu zioten Tontori berehala etortzeko, beren nagusia oso gailuki bait zegoen.
"Bai, horixe da. Asmatu duzu denal!"
"Badakit zer egin. Belar batzuek behar dituzu; baina zailak dira aurkitzen. Zenbat gizon dituzu hemen?"
"Hamabi."
"Beno bada, denek atera behar dute belar hauek bilatzerat. Hemendik urretu joaten badira, hobe." Eta lapur guziak belarraren bila atera ziren.
"Ni ere joango naiz bilatzerat," esan zuten Tontok, eta atera, bere makila hartu, eta bakarrik nagusiaren ohera itzuli zen, eta jotzen hasi zen, esan ez: "Astoa zen, ala zerria zen? Astoa zen, ala zerria zen?"
"Ai, ai, ai, zerria zen! Zerria! Hor duzu diru gehiago. Hartu, eta joain!"
Eta Tonto oso pozik dirua hartu eta zaldiarrekin joan zen.

(Unit 24)
Bibolin-jotzailea ikusi zutenean, nagusiak beste lapurreei esan zien: "Mutilak! Hona hemen, hona hemen! Harrapa ezazu!"
Lapur guziak hasi ziren korrika bibolin-jotzailearen atzetik, eta nagusia ohean gelditu zen, bakarrik. Btxera sartu zen gure Tonto, eta hasi zen jotzen berriz, esatez: "Astoa zen, ala zerria zen? Astoa zen, ala zerria zen?"
"Hor duzu diru gehiago. Bran ezazu eta utz nazazu bakean!"
"Bidal izadazu nerc etxera," esan zuten Tontok. Lapurrak esan zion bidaliko ziola.
(Unit 25)

Nagusiak Tontori bere dirua bidali zion etxean zuen mutilik azkarrenarekin, eta etxean zuen astorik ederenarekin.
Gaua zen mutila iritsi zenean Tontoren etxera. Mutilak gau hartan Tontoren etxean lo egin du zuela erabaki suten.
Uherakoan, lapurrak pentzatu zuen: "Inoiz gertatzen bazait, espero dut ez dela gaur izango!" Eta loak hartu zuen.
Eta lapur gizazagoa, berdun zelarik, lehiotik atera zen, eta bere astoa bilatu gabe, korrika joan zen basora gordetzena, eta ez zen inoiz itzuli. Hola, Tonto, bere zerria galdu ondoren, lapurren astoarekin gelditu zuen, eta diru pila batekin ere bai!

Flowers and Thorns

(Unit 26)

Gorooren gaia Ofateko baserri bat aztertzeko irudia izan behar dute euskal literaturaren barruan. Nahiz eta bizkaitarra izan, Agirrek Goroe gipuzkoeraz idatzi zuen.

Nagusiak Tontori bere dirua bidali zuen Mutiliak azkarrenarekin, eta etxean zuen astorik ederenarekin.
Gaua zen mutila iritsi zenean Tontoren etxera. Mutilak gau hartan Tontoren etxean lo egin zuela erabaki suten.
Uherakoan, lapurrak pentzatu zuen: "Inoiz gertatzen bazait, espero dut ez dela gaur izango!" Eta loak hartu zuen.
Eta lapur gizazagoa, berdun zelarik, lehiotik atera zen, eta bere astoa bilatu gabe, korrika joan zen basora gordetzena, eta ez zen inoiz itzuli. Hola, Tonto, bere zerria galdu ondoren, lapurren astoarekin gelditu zuen, eta diru pila batekin ere bai!

Flowers and Thorns

(Unit 26)

Gorooren gaia Ofateko baserri bat aztertzeko irudia izan behar dute euskal literaturaren barruan. Nahiz eta bizkaitarra izan, Agirrek Goroe gipuzkoeraz idatzi zuen.

Nagusiak Tontori bere dirua bidali zuen Mutiliak azkarrenarekin, eta etxean zuen astorik ederenarekin.
Gaua zen mutila iritsi zenean Tontoren etxera. Mutilak gau hartan Tontoren etxean lo egin zuela erabaki suten.
Uherakoan, lapurrak pentzatu zuen: "Inoiz gertatzen bazait, espero dut ez dela gaur izango!" Eta loak hartu zuen.
Eta lapur gizazagoa, berdun zelarik, lehiotik atera zen, eta bere astoa bilatu gabe, korrika joan zen basora gordetzena, eta ez zen inoiz itzuli. Hola, Tonto, bere zerria galdu ondoren, lapurren astoarekin gelditu zuen, eta diru pila batekin ere bai!

Flowers and Thorns

(Unit 26)

Gorooren gaia Ofateko baserri bat aztertzeko irudia izan behar dute euskal literaturaren barruan. Nahiz eta bizkaitarra izan, Agirrek Goroe gipuzkoeraz idatzi zuen.

Nagusiak Tontori bere dirua bidali zuen Mutiliak azkarrenarekin, eta etxean zuen astorik ederenarekin.
Gaua zen mutila iritsi zenean Tontoren etxera. Mutilak gau hartan Tontoren etxean lo egin zuela erabaki suten.
Uherakoan, lapurrak pentzatu zuen: "Inoiz gertatzen bazait, espero dut ez dela gaur izango!" Eta loak hartu zuen.
Eta lapur gizazagoa, berdun zelarik, lehiotik atera zen, eta bere astoa bilatu gabe, korrika joan zen basora gordetzena, eta ez zen inoiz itzuli. Hola, Tonto, bere zerria galdu ondoren, lapurren astoarekin gelditu zuen, eta diru pila batekin ere bai!
(Unit 27)
Joseren amets hura egia bihurtuko balitz, a zer poza, zer zoriona!
Nola biziko zen orduan Malentxorekin! Baina bazekien amets bat zela,
besterik ez.
"Morroin sartu zinen etxe honetan," pentsatzen zuen, "eta hemengo
sume bat bazina bezala hazi zara. Jan duzun ogia etxe honetakoa izan
da; gainean duzun arrropa eman dizuten da; eta oraindik etxeko alaba
bakarrarekin amets egiten duzu? Ezina da." Ez zion ezer esan Malen-
txori. Isilik zegoen; isilik eta triste.
Egin batean aitonarekin mintzatu zen, kanpora joateko gogoa
zuela esateko. Aitona harritu zen hori entzutean.
"Ez al daukazu nahikoa hemen, bada?" galdetu zion aitiorak.
"Beti nahikoa eta gehiago izan dut," erantzun zuen Josek.
"Eziz dizut ulertu orduan. Zer duzu azken hilabete haustan?"
"Ezan ahal bana."
"Tira, esan meri. Andregaia nahi duzu? Hori al da?"
"Nik ez dakit zer nahi dudun."
"Bada nik banuen gogoa anregai bat zuretza. Jakina, zure
gogokoa ez bada, utzi; baina ez lukete denek horrela utziko gure
Malentxo."
"Malentxo?!"
"Malentxo."

(Unit 28)
Harrituta gelditu zen Jose.
"Zer esan duzu, aitona?"
"Gaizki iruditzen al zaizu?"
"Gaizki? Nola gaizki? O, nere ametsak egiaik balira!"
"Hori al da zure ametsa?"
"Horixe bera. Baina aitona, aberatsa banintz; baina nerekin
ez du ezer nahiko."
"Etxekoa sara, eta dirua izango duzu ezkontseko."
"Hau poza! Nik bakarrik dakit barruan nerabili arantzat!"
"Arantzak beti izango dituzu, gizon guztiak ditugu bezala.

Oraidio, Jose, gaurtik aurresa, gauzak konpondu arte, Aloian bizi beharko
duzu. Un mendian, ardiak eta gainerako lanak zure gein hartuko dituzu.
Nik eramango dizut behar duzun guztia."
"Edonon biziko naiz ongi oрайin, aitona."

(Unit 29)
Sei hilabete iragun zituen Josek mendian. Askotan gogotzen
zen Malentxoi. "Ezan al dio aitiorak Malentxori nere ametsa?" galde-
tzen zuen. "Nola iruditu zailo Malentxori, eta amonari eta bestelak?
zer daukat nere zain baserrira bihurtzen naizenean?" Denbora asko
zuen pentsatzeko artzainen bizitza ematen zuelarik sei hilabete
luze haustan.


Aitona, bitartean, isilik gelditu zen.

Maritxu and Jean-Pierre (Unit 30)
(from the play Bola da ez by the northern Basque writer Daniel Landart, in Erronak erron..., Elker, 1981)

MARITXU: Zer ari zara hemen?
J-P: Ana etxean duzu?
J-P: Hobe. Ba rene beldir bat hura hemen kausi.
MARITXU: Baina zer duzu beti erdi beldirrez... Bakar bakarrik naiz.
Ez nauzu besarkatzen? (Besarkotzen dito)
J-P: Maritxu, berri txar batekin heldu naiz.
MARITXU: Zer nauzu? Uztene?
J-P: Uztene... Ez aldebat, baina...
MARITXU: Eta nora zoaz? Ez ote zara hemen ongi?
J-P: Sobera ongi zorigaitsez... Atzo golzean, nagusiak jakinarazi dit, gure lantegian lana eskastu dela eta nola azkenik sartua bai... nintzen, erram dit beste zerbait bilatzeko...
MARITXU: Nagusi kakola! Eta zer bilakatuko zara orain?
J-P: Nimaurek ere ez dakit!
MARITXU: Eta laborantzat geldituz...
J-P: Ania zaharrena da etxeko...
MARITXU: Beraz...
J-P: Ez da chuñ aterabiderik! Gelditzen zaidana: herrik joatea!
MARITXU: Nora joan gogo duzu?
J-P: Nik dakita... Urruntzekotan, hobe da aski urrun joatea...
MARITXU: Parisen ote?
J-P: Uste dut baietz.
MARITXU: Beraz, enetzat galdua zara!
J-P: Nola?
MARITXU: Zu Parisen eta ni hemen, nola nahi duzu gure amodioak iraun dezan?
J-P: Maiz idatziko dizut...
JEAN-PIERRE: Maiz idatziko dizut...
MARITXU: Idatzi ala tirrit berdin da... Gaixo Jean-Pierre! Gaixo ni! Zendako mila sorgin¹ ez da lantegirik gure esku-alde hauetan? Beharbada hobeki bilatuz... Bokale edo Tarnosen... Pase ere ez da hain urrun, azkenean...
JEAN-PIERRE: Beti lan eskasiaren baldurrean bizitzeko? Nahitago dut, joan behar eta, lana den tokira² joan!
MARITXU: Niganik³ urrundu nahi duzu... Ez ahol nauzu sekula maitatu⁴... bestela, hemen nonhait, geldi zintzeku⁵...
MARITXU: Eta noiz abiatuko zara?
JEAN-PIERRE: Laster.
MARITXU: Joan altzinar berriz ikusten ahalko zaitut bederen?
JEAN-PIERRE: Azken agurraren egitera⁸ etorria nintzen...
MARITXU: Zer? Jada... Azken aldiko³ ikusten ote zaitut⁹?
Jean-Pierre. Bihotza punepka ari zait, ezpainak zimurtzen ari zaizkit. Hatsa ez dezaket gehiago har! Jean-Pierre ene maitza...
JEAN-PIERRE: Ez nizun horrelako minik egin nahi... Bainako biziko legeak bortzitak dira.
MARITXU: Eta ez zara nagusiaren kontra haserretzen?
JEAN-PIERRE: Ez du balio... Zeren egiteko¹⁰?
MARITXU: Ez dakit. Baina, hola segituz gazteria guztiak hemendik joanen da, ezin biziz...
JEAN-PIERRE: Etorriko naiz berriz.
MARITXU: Bai, erretreta hartu eta, azken egunen iragatera¹¹.
JEAN-PIERRE: Eta zu jiten bazina¹² Parisera?
JEAN-PIERRE: Uztzen zaitut Maritxu... Parisetik idatziko dizut karta ttipiño¹⁸ bat neure¹⁹ helbidearekin...
bilakatuko zara. Parise madarikatua da! Eta zuk halere erranen duzu ongi bizi zarela eta hemengo jendeek sinetsiko zaituzte!

JEAN-PIERRE: Ba noa Maritxu. Zure begitartearen gozoa? ni baitan? sartua dago. Ez zaitut sekula ahantziko...

MARITXU: Nik segurik ez zaitut ahantziko. Zu izan baitzara ene biziko lehen anodioa.

JEAN-PIERRE: Agian, lehena eta bakarra?

(Daniel Londort, Erranak erran..., Elkor, Donostia, 1984)

N.B. From here on, easy but authentic Basque texts are used. Difficult constructions will be covered by the following notes, which will also explain some points of grammar illustrated in the texts. From this point onwards complete vocabulary lists for each lesson are not provided, and you must refer to the general vocabulary at the end of the book.

NOTES

1 Why the hell...? lit. "Why a thousand witches...?" Another expression is Zorgatik (zendako) deabru...? "Why the devil...?"

2 to the place where there's work, to where there's work: sometimes, as here, the case relation characterizing a relative clause is some other case than the absolutive, ergative or dative; here it is inessive, "to the place in which there is work."

3 From me: with noun phrases representing animate beings, the spatial senses of the local cases (inessive, allative, ablative, local-genitive) cannot be expressed by adding the corresponding declension suffixes onto the noun phrase: "from the house" is etxetik, but "from the boy" is not "mutiletik." Instead, animate noun phrases are followed by certain special postpositions formed from either of two stems, gan- and baita-; the former is found all over, the latter only in northern dialects and literature. These stems are declined as follows:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Case</th>
<th>Stem</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Inessive</td>
<td>-gan</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Allative</td>
<td>-gana(t)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ablative</td>
<td>-gandik or -ganik</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

They have no local-genitive case. The stem gan is treated in spelling like a suffix, whereas baita- is written separately. These postpositions are preceded by either the possessive-genitive of the noun phrase or the absolutive. Thus, "from the boy" is in Basque mutila(ren)gan(d)ik or mutila(ren) baitarik; "in you" is zu(re)gan or zu(re) baitan, and so on. See further examples later in the text.

4 you can't have ever loved me: here what is a modal particle (compare note 10).

5 you could remain: -24:1
my (neure nahitara by my will, willingly): Basque possesses a set of defective reflexive pronouns. They are defective because they are only used in three cases: the possessive-genitive, comitative and instrumental, as follows: 1 neure : neurekin : neurez; 2 heure : heurekin : heurez; 3 bere : berekin : bererez; 4 geure : geurekin : geurez; 5 zeure : zeurekin : zeurez; 6 bere(n) : bere(no)z or euren : eurekin : eurenez. For animate beings, local cases can be expressed by using the special postpositions in note 3 with the possessive-genitive, which can also take other postpositions and suffixes, e.g. bere ganan or bere baitan "in himself/herself/themselves," bere gainean "on himself/..." beretza "for himself/...." The only way to express reflexivity in the absolutive or dative is with the possessive plus buru with the article, in the appropriate case (literally, buru = "head"): bere burua hil zuen he killed himself; neure burua idatzi diot I wrote it to myself (observe that for verbal agreement these expressions are always third-person-singular).

The pronouns given above are reflexive because, in principle, they are used when coreferent with either the subject, direct object or indirect object of the clause in which they are situated: bere alabarekin bizi da he lives with his (own) daughter (but: haren alabarekin bizi naiz I live with his daughter); bere alabak esan dio his (own) daughter told him (but: haren alabak esan dit his daughter told me); bere alaba maite du he loves his (own) daughter (but: haren alaba maite dut I love his daughter); bere alabarekin bidaliko diot I'll send it to him with his (own) daughter (but: haren alabarekin bidaliko dizut I'll send it to you with his daughter); berekin erauan du he took it with him (but: berekin bidaliko dut I sent it with him); Nor beretza, Jaiakoa guztientzat Each for himself, God for all.

In practice this rule is not always rigidly followed. The pronouns corresponding to Persons 3 and 6 may be used colloquially even in non-reflexive contexts, e.g. bere alabarekin bizi naiz I live with his daughter. The other reflexive pronouns, on the other hand, are very often replaced by their non-reflexive equivalents in both speech and writing.

The instrumental reflexives mean "in (and of) —self/-selves", e.g. berez "in himself/herself/itself, per se."

7 I am forced, I am compelled: this construction is sometimes taken to be a Basque passive, but the comparison is rather superficial. There is no true passive in Basque. To translate an English passive, you must either: (a) make the sentence active; (b) use the impersonal construction, e.g. liburu irakurriko da the book will be read (+11:1), provided no agent is expressed; or (c) use the participial construction illustrated here. The latter may, depending on dialect, take any of the following forms: bortxatua naiz, bortxaturik naiz, bor-
txaturik nago, bortxatuta nago, bortxatua nago. An agent may be expressed, using the ergative: nagusiak bortxatua naiz I am forced by the boss; biziko legeek bortxatua naiz I am forced by the laws of life.

8 akzen agurraren egitera = akzen agurra egitera; +12:1.

9 for the past time (also akzen aldz); similarly lehen aldz for the first time, bigarren aldz for the second time, etc. Also: bi aldz or bi bider "twice," hiru aldz or hiru dehere "three times," zenbat aldz? "how many times?" hamaita aldz? "a million times!"

But "once" is behin.

10 am I seeing you? I wonder if I'm seeing you: ote, and abal above (note 4) are modal particles, of which we shall say more later.

11 zerren egiteko = zer ogiteko; akzen egunen iragarrena = akzen egunak iragarrena: see note 8.

12 jiten bazina = etorriko bazina, If you come, If you were to come: jin means the same as etorrri, and the "hypothetical habitual" is a northern form with the same value as the "hypothetical future" of other dialects (+23:1).

13 to it itself: see notes 3 & 6. Note that in this example we might consider that there is personification of "Paris," because of -ganan. This usage is not uncommon.

14 = teatro ederra ikusteko: see note 8.

15 thinking, believing, to the belief that: changing the word order and omitting eta, one could also say: salbasenda Parisetik etorriko zaigen (or zaigula) ustez. This same pattern occurs with numerous other words besides ustez: the word dominating the subordinate clause is placed in front of it followed by eta, and the verb of the subordinate clause takes the conjunctive mode. Examples: ez da norea, nere lagunaren baizik = ez da norea, baizik eta nere lagunarena. It is not mine, but my friend's; zenbait pertsonarengan salbu = salbu eta zenbait pertsonarengan except in certain people. Compare: nere ore hai = hai eta norea ere mine too; norea ore ez = ez eta norea ere neither is/does/... mine. Eta can also be inserted after conjunctions already standing at the beginning of the clause: nahiz Parisera joan = nahiz eta Parisera joan even if I/you/... go to Paris; zeren biziko lagoa den = zeren eta biziko lagoa den because it is a Law of Life; baldin itzultzzen bazara = baldin eta itzultzzen bazara if you return; edo nahi duzuna = edo eta nahi duzuna or (also) whatever you like.

16 In the northern dialects, place names originally ending in a consonant, e.g. Paris, Miarritz, Biarritz, Donibane Lohitzun, have acquired a final e, so that all place names end in a vowel in these dialects: Parisa, Miarritze, Donibane Lohitzune.

17 Deceive: the suffixes -le and -tzele, added to infinitives, form agent nouns, e.g. ikas "learn," ikasle "student"; irakats "teach," irakaslea "teacher"; idatz "write," idazle "writer"; irakar "read,"
irakurle "reader", entzun "listen," entzule "listener"); sal "sell," saltzaile "seller"); hil "kill," hiltzaile "killer," lagun "help," laguntzaile "helper," antola "organize," antolatzaile "organizer." This derivational suffix is very productive. As a rule, verbs whose supine is in -tu (-du) or 0 take -tzaile; others take -le.

Little: -no is a diminutive suffix (+19:c).

my: see note 6.

the sweetness of your face: the adjective gozo "sweet" is nominalized in this example.

in me: see note 3.

the first and only (one): here, there is elipsis of the noun; the phrase means lehen amodioa eta amodio bakarra, with "amodio" understood.

VOCABULARY

abantzi, abantz, aha(n)zten (6lp. [’astu]) vt. or vt(d). forget aire n. air aldiz n. time (see note 9) balintatu vt. (inst. comp.) use bihotz n. heart botika n. medicine buru n. head; self (see note 6) dantzatu n. dance festa or besta n. fiesta filme n. film, movie haserratu vt. get angry irabazi, irabaz, -ten vt. win; earn; gain kalte n. harm, damage; kalte egin vt(d). harm, do harm karta n. letter (epistle) lega n. law min n. pain, ache (buruko min head-ache); min egin or eran vt(d). hurt segitu [’seit(y)u] vt. continue, go on sekula adv. ever sinetsi, sinets, sinesten [’zi’ništ] vt(d). believe teatro n. theatre maite adj. dear, darling, beloved

EXERCISES

Exercise 1: Review note 3, and translate:
1. I knew (bonetki) you would come back to me, my darling! 2. How can you use me like this? Is there not a heart in you? 3. Fortunately the letter the Englishman sent did not get (hetdu) to the lady. 4. The poor cat ran away (lit. "went running") from the dog. 5. Go to your sisters, and if they are in pain (lit. "if they have pain") give them medicine.

Exercise 2: Review note 6, and translate:
1. Do you love your wife? 2. He danced with his grandmother three times in the fiestas last week. 3. She went to the movie with her sister. 4. He forgot his headache and started dancing more gaily (otoikt) than ever. 5. They earned their bread easily. 6. He loves himself.
more than anyone else (beste kær). 7. If I went on, I would (nårke) harm myself. 8. If you don’t believe yourself, others will believe you less. 9. “I would rather go to see a good film than to the theatre,” he thought to himself. 10. In the fiestas everybody forgets themselves.

Exercise 3: Review note 7, and translate:
1. That is sung in all the fiestas. 2. The harm that he had done was never forgotten. 3. They got very angry, but nothing was said about the subject. 4. What is done, is done. 5. With the new law, all those medicines were thrown into the sea.

Exercise 4:
In the key preceding this unit, reread the Basque version of the translation exercise for Unit 21. Then rewrite it in your own words from memory.
UNIT THIRTY-TWO

INES

-Zure apunte batzuk ditut...
-Apunte batzuk? Ez naiz oroitzan...
-...ez du presarik¹. Ez dio importik.
- Isilunea egin da bion¹⁰ artean. Ines mutu dago eta nik ez dakit nolatan jarraitu. Zerbait esatea gatik¹¹ diot¹²:
- Nondik deitzetan dutu?
- Tafern batetik··


- Egoaldi xarra egiten du, eh?
- Bouff!... eta otza gainera. Abrigoa jantzi dut. Lehenengoza²¹ aurtan.
- Une batez isilik gelditu da, baina nik ez dut hitzik egiten. Berak jarraitzen du:
for the sake of saying something.
I say: present simple of ESAN, "to say": diot, diok/n, dio, diogu, diozu, diooze, diote.
I knew that.
as for as me, to me: nire-gana-ino. For -gana-, "Unit 31, note 3; for -ino, "20:a.
we need to talk: see note 8.
I don't know yet if I want lines to come here: 12:1.
neukan I had: past of EDUKI.
was: past of EGGI.
it's started drizzling: note in particular this use of the transitive form (hasi is generally intransitive, e.g. filmea hasi da the film has started). In weather expressions, the intransitive verbs ari izan and hasi may be made transitive, the ergative subject never being expressed: euria ari da but it is raining. See also 10:e.
father broad: samar "quite, rather" follows the adjective or adverb it qualifies; the preceding adjective takes no suffix, and samar is declined instead, as here; but following an adverb samar is invariable, e.g. ongi samar pretty well.
for the first time: synonymous with lehen(engo) aldiz, "Unit 31, note 9.
it's raining; see note 19.
tristtu or trista-tu "sadden, become sad," from triste "sad." This illustrates a very common form of derivation in Basque, whereby an adjective, noun or other part of speech is turned into a verb without adding any specifically derivational suffix (English, too, derives verbs without a suffix, for example to clean from the adjective clean, to mon from the noun mon, etc.). Such derived verbs in Basque nearly always have their supine in -tu. E.g. garbi "clean" gives garbi-tu "to clean"; haserre "angry, anger" gives haserre-tu "get angry"; poz "joy" gives poz-tu "be happy, rejoice"; galde "question" gives galde-tu "ask"; puska and apur, both meaning "bit, piece," give pusa-tu and apu-tu, both meaning "break"; lapur "thief" gives lapu-tu "rob"; hobe "better" gives hobe-tu "get better, improve"; elkarr "each other" gives elkarr-tu "come together, bring together"; bat "one" gives batu, bat, batzen "unify, collect." When the stem ends in n or l, the supine is in -du, so zabal "wide, broad" gives zabal-du "widens, spread, open"; urrun "Far" gives urrun-du "go far away"; hurbil "near, close" gives hurbil-du "approach." In this way verbs can even be derived from inflected words, especially from allative case forms: ochera "to bed" gives ochera-tu "go to bed"; gogora "to mind" gives gogora-tu "bring to mind, remember"; beregana "to itself" gives beregana-tu "draw to itself, assimilate." Some stems ending in e or o change this to a to form the verb, hence triste-tu or trista-tu from triste; maia-tu from maite; neka-tu "tire, become tired" from neko "hard work, effort"; osa-tu "complete, make up, get well" from oso "whole."
seriotasun "seriousness" from serio "serious." -tasun is the com-
monest derivational suffix forming abstract nouns; it is very pro-
ductive, like its English equivalent -ness: edertasun "beauty";
lasaitasun "tranquility"; aberastasun "richness, wealth"; anaitasun 
"brotherhood, Fraternity"; elkertasun "unity, solidarity," etc.
In a few words the suffix has the form -(a)sun: maitasun "love";
osasun "health" (from oso).

normalki "normally" from normal "normal." -ki is the principal 
adv verb-forming suffix, comparable to English -ly: ederkki "beautifully,
very well, fine"; ofizialki "officially"; historikoki "historically";
bereziki "(especially); hoboki "better (adv.)," etc. The suffix 
becomes -gi in ongi "well," but not with other adjectives ending 
in n, e.g. zuzenki "directly."

onmo ng friends: postpositions that generally follow the possessive-
genitive (such as those given in 12:10/14:1), may also follow an unsuf-
fixed noun phrase, as here: lagon artean = lagunen artean; mahai 
gainean = mahaiaren gainean; telebista aurrean = telebistaren aurrean,
etc.

(it) would express to me: lidaso is the hypothetic potential form 
corresponding to present indicative dit.

VOCABULARY

adiarazi, adieraz, -ten vt(d). express
abo [abo] [ay] n. mouth
aldatu vt., vt. change
aurten adv. this year
begi n. eye
belarri n. ear
cgoki adj. suitable, convenient
esan nahitukan vt. mean
gorputz n. body
ile n. hair
tokore n. color
lodi adj. thick
mehe adj. thin
oin n. foot; base
oroituz vt. with inst. remember
pressa n. hurry, haste (see note 7)
samar quite, rather (see note 20)
uda n. summer
udaberri n. spring
udazken n. autumn, fall
zabal adj. wide, broad

EXERCISES

Exercise 1: Guess what the following words might mean; then look them 
up in the general vocabulary to check their meanings. Where is each 
word derived from?
agurtu, asanatu, batasun, behartu, berezitasun, biziki, egile, erosle, 
erraztasun, erratzaitzea, estuki, euskaldun, gosetu, goztu, irabazlez, 
isildu, jarraitzaile, lagun, moztu, mugatu, pagatzalle, pobretasun, 
segariki.
Exercise 2: Translate:
1. If you're not in a hurry, why don't you walk as far as the provincial government? You could take the bus from there. 2. They've decided they'll go to see some movie here instead of going out of town, because it's raining. 3. Do you have any medicine on you? That cold air has given me a headache. 4. I don't think I'll continue this spring; six months are enough. 5. Her body is rather thin, and she has long hair, but I don't remember the color of her eyes. 6. You needn't use such thick paper; it comes out (atero) too expensive. 7. I don't want you to change the color of your hair; I'll get angry if you change it. 8. He has a pretty good ear for singing (kontatzoko), but he always forgets the words! 9. Sometimes it is easier to put something in a letter than to express it by word of mouth (lit. "by mouth"). 10. Yes, I know what you mean, but I don't agree at all. 11. These shoes are not suitable for your feet; they're too wide. 12. This year the laws have changed. 13. I love your eyes, I love your mouth, I love your hair, I love your ears, I love your head, I love your body, I love your hands, and I love your feet. 14. Let's get married this year; in the fall, my love. 15. How many times have I told you to close your mouth when you eat? 16. If you want to know how much someone has worked, his hands will express much: if he has worked a lot, they will be hard and thick, not thin and pretty. 17. The police informed the inhabitants that the demonstration would be forbidden. 18. Fortunately they didn't harm her. 19. They have never got angry with each other. 20. Shall we go to the theater or go to dance?

Exercise 3:
Reread the Basque version of the translation exercise for Unit 22 in the key; then rewrite it in your own words.
UNIT THIRTY-THREE

TXILLARDEGI ETA EUSKARA

Noiz eta zergatik hasi hintzen¹ euskara ikasten, Jose Luis?

Betidanik sentitu diat² nik, ulertu eta aztertu ere baino lehenagotik³, euskaraz ez daki euskalduna ez dela euskalduna. "Euzkotarren⁴" aitzakia, "harki"en jarrera iruditu zaidak. Frantsesoz ez daki frantsesa ez duk frantxesa; eta frontzösisch⁵ izatea... beste izatea duk.

Hori dela-ta⁶, neure burua Farragarri ez ikusteko, euskara ikasi behar; nik errotik, eta edozer irakurri ere baino lehenago, euskalduntasunak senditu baitut.


Ondoko urtean Iñaki Zumeta izan nian orakasle (udaran boti). Eta 1950.ean Bilbora ikastera joan miztenean, gaueko 12etan hasi eta goizeko 3ak arte¹⁴ egoten ninduan ikasten egunero-egunero... (Beste ordurik ez neuketa, ijeneru-eskolako sarrera ez baitzen orduan ere erraza.)

1951.ean, horretara, piska bat ba nekian, eta 1953.ean hasi ninduan, euskara gordinez Eusko Gogoan¹⁵ eta Egan-en¹⁶ idazten. "Leturra"¹⁷ 1956.ean idatzi nian. Eten gabe ikasi diat euskara urte askotan barrena, eta oraindik ere oso
NOTES

1 did you start? Person 2. The question is asked in familiar form. The answer is given in the same register (known as "hiko": from the pronoun hi). See note 2.

2 I have always felt (diaz = dut, male hika): here we can observe the principal grammatical feature that distinguishes the Basque hika register from the use of tu in French, tø in Spanish, du in German, etc. In these languages, familiarity is registered in the form of verbs in grammatical agreement with the person addressed: for example, "I am," "he has," are always je suis, tu o in French, but "you are," "you have" are either vous êtes, vous avez (formal register) or tu es, tu as (familiar register). In Basque, on the contrary, verb forms vary according to register whatever they refer to: not only can "you are" and "you have" be either zarà, duzu (formal) or haiz, duk/dun (familiar: duk talking to a male, dun talking to a female), but "I am" is either naiz (formal) or naut/nau (informal), and "he has" is either du (formal) or dik/din (informal), and so on. Throughout once you begin using hika with a person, you are expected to go on in hika all the time, so it's better not to start out if you're not going to be able to keep it up! It should also be noted that the social rules determining the use of registers do not coincide with those governing the choice of tu or vous in French and tø or usted in Spanish (this is a warning to students who know either of these languages!). In practice it turns out that as a foreign learner, and even as a native speaker in some areas, one can get along very well without ever using hika. If you are brave enough to try using it, be warned that: (a) it is rather complicated to learn properly, and it takes a good deal of practice to master it; (b) you should always let the other person take the initiative in introducing hika. As a foreigner, you will be excused if you decline when addressed in hika; the formal register in Basque is never rude or awkward-sounding, for it is the commonest and unmarked register.

Some dialects possess more than two registers, but the two that we denominate "formal" and "hika" are the only ones common to the whole language. (Perhaps we could consider the male and female forms of hika as two different registers; however, they are grammatically parallel, and socially equatable.) Our text contains male hika forms.
Huko forms can be classified into primary and secondary. Primary huko forms are those that "talk about" the person addressed; they have a place, due to their regular formation, in the general tense paradigms, where they appear simply as the forms corresponding to the pronoun hi, hik or hiri (Person 2), e.g. haiz "thou art" (like naiz); hintzen "thou wert" (like nintzen); duk/dun "thou hast" (like dut); huen "thou hast" [like nuen]; hago, habor, hoa "thou art, thou comest, thou goest" (like nago, nagor, noa); daukak/daukan, daki/dakin "thou hast, thou knowest" (like daukat, dakit); hau, haute "he has thee, they have thee" (like nau, naute); dik/din, diate/dinate "he has to thee, they have to thee" (like dit, didate), and so on. Secondary huko forms are those that do not refer semantically to the person addressed, yet nevertheless incorporate this person morphologically as a pseudo-ethic dative (or ergative, in certain forms, +8:1). These forms are best presented in separate paradigms. In this book we cannot give these paradigms for reasons of space, but their formation is quite regular, and the interested student will be able to guess many of the forms by analogy with those occurring in the text.

The division of huko forms into primary and secondary is justified syntactically. In the huko register, primary huko forms are used in all contexts, whereas secondary huko forms, in correct usage at least, only occur in main clauses; in subordinate clauses only non-allocutive ("formal") forms are possible. The first sentence of the text (and many others, of course) illustrate this point: there are three finite verbs, but only the first, sentitu diat, is in allocutive (i.e. secondary huko) form, since the other two, daki and delo, are subordinated (the first in the conjunctive mode, the second in the completive).

The following secondary huko forms appear in the text (there are no primary forms, except for that in the question, see note 1). Corresponding to the present of IZAN: nauk (=naiz), duk (=da), zaidak (=zait); corresponding to the post of IZAN: ninduan (=nintzen).

Present of UKAN: diat (=dut), dizkoi (=ditute); past of UKAN: nian (=nuen); genian (=genuen); nizkian (=nizituen); nizkion (=nizkion).

Present of JAKIN: zekik (=daki); post of JAKIN: nekian (=nekien).

Post of EDUKI: neukian (=neukan).

Even since before understanding and studying it.

Euzkotar "Basque" is a neologism, based on the root euzko "Basque, of the Basque Country" (likewise invented), intended to denominate persons of Basque nationality without the linguistic connotation present in the traditional and usual term euskaldun (whose primary and etymological meaning is "Basque speaker"). For the author, euzkotar is a pejorative term. Here is an example of the extent to which politics and language are interrelated in the Basque Country today.
the German word for "French."

thus, hence

except for a few words: ezik, "unless, except," is placed at the end of a phrase, preceded by a supine, e.g. etorri ezik unless 1/you/... come. To say "except for [noun phrase]," the verb izan is often inserted: hori izan ezik except for that. But ezik may also function as a postposition meaning "except": hori ezik.

I am told that I knew, they say that I knew, supposedly I knew:

osten is a modal particle.

Here, with the verb entun, the dative case translates "from."

although father and mother were Basque speakers: the conjunction nahiz (or nahiz eta) "although" is placed at the beginning of a clause whose verb, normally situated at the end, may be in the conjunctive mode (nahiz eta aita ana auskaldun diren or ditudan) or in supine form (nahiz eta aita ana auskaldun izan), but more frequently the latter.

For example.

Observe how the supine is repeated to achieve emphasis. The device consists of anticipating the main verb of an independent clause with a supine preceding the clause, regardless of what form the verb takes in its clause; the effect is to topicalize the verb: "As regards starting, I started learning in 1947." Etorri, etorriko da, baina 

auskalo noiz come, he'll come, but who knows when; jakin badaki, baina tontorarena egiten du he knows all right, he just plays dumb.

In the second occurrence of the verb, egin may be substituted: hasi, halere, 1947.ean egin ninduan (compare 20:b).

for me: -tzako = -tzat + -ko. This form is used because "for me" here qualifies the following "a grammar": "a grammar for me." That is, -ko turns neurretzat into an adjectival: neurretzako "the one for me."

The suffix -ko has the power to turn a non-nominal expression into an adjectival (for nominal expressions, there are the two genitive cases): gaunuko egunkaria today's newspaper; egunoko arazoa everyday issues; gobernaren ondoko manifestazio bat a demonstration against the government. If the preceding letter is n or l, -ko changes to -go: hemengo auskaldunak the Basques here; orainingo problema the problem now, the present problem. Various case forms can be adjectivalized by adding -ko: the comitative (-ekin+ko+ekiko); the instrumental (-z+ko+zko); the allative (-ra+ko+(r)ako); and the ablative (-tik+ko+tikako or -tiko). The adjectival corresponding to an inessive is the local genitive (+8:4).

between 12 at night and 3 in the morning: notice the pattern

X-ean hasi eta Y arte to express "between X and Y."

Eusko Gogoa and Egun are the names of Basque journals.

VOCABULARY

abar  n. remnant; eta abar and so on, et cetera
abertzale n. nationalist, patriot
aditz  n. verb
argi  n. light; adj. light, clear, bright; argi dago it's clear
askatasun n. freedom
edozer  pron. anything; pr. dt. any
egoera  n. situation
ejate baterako for example
eusko (also euze) Basque (see note 4); Euskal Jaurlaritza the

Basque Government
ezik  cj., pp. unless, except
gaisorik  adv. sick, ill
gartzela  n. prison
ikurrin  n. Flag
kantaldi  n. (song) concert
kantari  n. singer
mereziki ukan vt. be worth(while)
milaka  adv. by the thousands
nahiz  (eta) cj. although
negar egin vt. cry, weep
sarrera  n. entry, entrance; ticket
(of admission)

EXERCISES

Exercise 1: Read the following dialog between a man and a woman in
hkoa. Can you guess or deduce the "formal" verb form
that each hkoa form corresponds to? For example:
Zer duen nugarrez? Dun is female hkoa and corresponds to duzu.

ANTTON: Zer duen nugarrez?
MARITXU: Jean-Pierre joan zaldak.
ANTTON: Noro?
MARITXU: Parlakoa.
ANTTON: Zergatik?
MARITXU: Nagusik kanpora Igorri dtk, ez zuelako gehiago lanik.
ANTTON: Hemen galndi, ez du beste zerbait harrapatzen ohal?
MARITXU: Alacaino, tantegiak inoarri izonez...
ANTTON: Eta, nolz joan gogo du?
MARITXU: Segidon. Azken agurren egitura etorri zuan. Bakarrak
gelirtzen noak Antton... Bakarrik. Zer bilakatuko naiz? Igandetan
zer eginen dut? Donztotzero ere ez noak joaten oholko...
ANTTON: Atzentzen duen bol beste norbait!
MARITXU: Zer derasak? (What are you talking about?) Mtk, Jean-Pierre
diot mate eta moltatuko...
D. Landart, ibid.)

KEY: nauk (m.) = naiz; zaidak (m.) = zait; zuan or huan
(m.) = zen; diat (m.) = dut; dik (m.) = du; dinat or dizkinat (f.)
= ditut; nian (f.) = neen; zinan (f.) = zuen.
Exercise 2: Translate:
1. Although they paid a lot of money, it was worth it.  2. Except for the first singer, it isn't worth going to the concert (lit. "going (jooteok) to the concert isn't worthwhile").  3. The nationalists want freedom instead of repression, and for that (horregotik) they go to prison.  4. Before (lehenago), the Basque language and the flag of the Basque Country were forbidden, and much harm was done in this country; today it is clear that the People wants freedom.  5. How long can this situation last?  6. There are nationalists in the prisons by the thousands, and others are dead.  7. Mothers cry because their sons are ill in prison.  8. Isn't there any solution to this situation? (lit. "Doesn't this situation have any solution?")  9. It is clear that things must change, but when and how?  10. Does the Basque Government have the answer, for example?  11. How much do the tickets for tomorrow's concert cost?  12. A big flag was seen in the concert, and except for one Catalan (kotatok), all the singers sang in Basque.  13. There were people by the thousands, and the atmosphere (giro) there was very good.  14. I say, is this newspaper today's or yesterday's?  15. Spring this year has arrived late.  16. The nationalists are prepared to do anything.  17. Being thinner is more convenient for the heart, etc.  18. Some students think that the hardest thing in Basque (lit. "the hardest thing that Basque has") is the verb; do you agree, or does it seem otherwise to you?  19. The sun gives us light and heat; but only we can give ourselves freedom, or take it away (kandu) from others.  20. There is a lot of hurry to change the world.

Exercise 3: Translate
Read the Basque version of the translation exercise for Unit 23 in the key; then rewrite it in your own words.
UNIT THIRTY-FOUR

EUSKALDUNAREN DEFINIZIOA


Nere auzoa bizi den emakume bat horrelako da. Berak ez du sekulan ere hitzik egiten euskaraz. Ahantzi zaio lako, edo lotsa delako, edo ez dakit zer dela eta. Jakin, badaki': ama baixeritarran du, bera eskolan hasi arte ez omen zekien erdararik...


NOTES

1 Euskaldun, primarily "Basque speaker," whence (on the supposition that all Basques are Basque speakers) secondarily "Basque (person)," is composed of euskal "of the Basque language, euskara" and a derivational suffix -duen "who has." Thus, etymologically, the word euskalduna can be glossed as "he who has Basque," "euskara duena." Similarly, erdalduin is "non-Basque speaker," "erdara duena." -du is a productive suffix: bizardun "bearded," haurdun "pregnant" (from haur "child"), etc.

2 he who uses (it): present simple of ERABILI: (sg.) darabil, darabilk/ darabilna, darabil, darabilgu, darabilzu, darabilzue, darabilte; (pl.) darabilztat, etc.

3 "Yes, I know Basque" (Spanish).

4 "Ere cannot always be translated into English as "too" or "also."
Sometimes there is no equivalent in English, e.g. berri ez joan naiz "I went again [too]." Remember that in a negative sentence, ere means "either": Jonek ere ez daik "Jon doesn't know either" (or "Not even Jon knows"). In conditional clauses, ere means "even": autobusa etortzen bada ere "even if the bus comes." The same construction may translate "even though": autobusa etorri ez bada ere "even though the bus hasn't come." Similarly with adversarial expressions: horretaz konturatuirik ere "even (though) realizing that"; hala ere "even so," whence "however."

5 is he, perchance, a Basque(-speaker)? Ote, omen, and a few other words constitute the class of modal particles. From the point of view of meaning, this class comprises elements that may be added to a clause when the speaker wishes to indicate his attitude concerning the clause's truth value. Of course, this function may be fulfilled by various types of word or phrase, as when in English we say "that is no doubt true," "that seems to be the case," "supposedly he is innocent," "he's still alive according to some people," "I wonder if it'll rain," etc. But modal particles in Basque form a distinct and compact grammatical class of words that are placed immediately before the conjugated verb form. We have already seen (1:2) that this is the behavior of the Gipuzkoan question marker al, which is for this reason considered to be a modal particle. Al comes between ba or ez and a conjugated form: ba al dakizu? do you know? ez al daki? don't you know? It also can stand between the focused element (5:2) and the verb: hau al da? is it this?; and between main verb and auxiliary: etorri al zara? have you come? These are the positions in which the other modal particles occur too.

Ote is used to indicate the speaker's uncertainty, and is mostly found in direct and indirect questions: Azken aldiko ikusten ote
zaitut Am I (perhaps) seeing you for the last time? Nor ote da hori ateau? Who can that be at the door? Ez dakit noiz etorriko ote den. I have no idea when he'll come. In rhetorical questions, ote can often be translated into English as "I wonder...": "Noiz etorriko ote da?" pentatsu zuen "I wonder when he'll come," he thought. Etorriko ote da? I wonder if he'll come. With ellipsis of the conjugated form: Noiz etorriko da? Bihar ote? When will he come? Tomorrow, perhaps?

Omen indicates that the speaker does not vouch personally for the truth of what he says; rather, he is repeating what he has heard from someone else, or what some people say. He may even disagree with the statement himself: Bihar curia egingo omen da The weatherman says/My neighbor says/Everyone says/... that it will rain tomorrow; Ba omen nekien euskara pixka bat lau urte nitezlarik I am told that I knew a little Basque when I was four years old (but I was too young to remember); Herri libre batean bizi omen gara We supposedly live in a free country (but I don't think so). If someone said Herri libre batean bizi gara "We live in a free country," you could reply Omen! "That's what they say!" The Bizk. synonym of omen is ei.

The modal particle ahal (distinct from the verb ahal ukan) may express two notions: a possibility: hemen ahal dago he may be here; or a wish (always with the future): hemen ego ego ahal dago! I hope he's here! In reality the Gipuzkoan interrogative particle al, also spelled ahal, is a specialized use of the first sense.

Bide (distinct from the noun bide "way, road") is another modal particle: it means "apparently, seemingly": euskarakar eko eko hobetzan ari bide da the situation of the Basque language seems to be improving.

6 I'm told that she didn't know any Spanish: see note 5.
7 Euskaldun berria "new Basque(-speaker)" is a term that has become popular to designate those who, not being native speakers, have learned Basque through conscious effort; today euskaldun berriok constitute a rapidly increasing sector of the Basque-speaking population that already includes illustrious figures in Basque letters. The designation of native Basque speakers as euskaldun zaharrak "old Basque(-speakers)," in spite of sounding odd ("old Basques" may be extremely young!), seems to be establishing itself in some circles. The reference to these terms in the text is merely humorous in intention.
8 We could call it: hypothetical aorist potential, corresponding to the present indicative esanten diogu.
9 true: analyzes into egia-zko: the adjectivalized form (+Unit 33, note 13) of the instrumental case. The adjectivalized-instrumental compound suffix -zko is made much use of to form adjectivals, some of which have come to be treated as true adjectives.
If you have seen that the use of the conditional mode is sufficient to translate an "if"-clause; the conjunction baldin, which means "if" and requires the conditional mode, merely serves to emphasize the same concept. Baldin is either placed at the beginning of the clause: baldin etortzen bazara if you come, or immediately in front of the conjugated form with its modal prefix: etortzen baldin bazara. In a negative clause, if it is not placed at the beginning, baldin follows ez: etortzen ez baldin bazara if you don't come (see the following sentence).

Useless: adjectivalized form of the adverb (with partitive suffix) alferrik "in vain, uselessly."

French and English, on the contrary, are called living languages: this use of the verb ERITZI is found in literary Basque and some dialects; e.g. Reno deritzan hiria the city called Reno.

When the suffix -tzat is added to the stem of a noun or adjective, its meaning is different from the form with the possessive-genitive (-10:n): gizonarentzat hartu nuen: I took it for the man (on behalf of the man, or in order to give it to the man); gizontzat hartzu nuen I took him for a man (I thought he was a man, I considered him a man).

The construction -tzat eduki can be translated "consider": hiltzat daukagatu we consider them dead.

To the extent that people use it, inasmuch as people use it.

And once (it's) dead.

It can hardly be revived: a verbal noun in the partitive with egon or eduki expresses inability; egon is used if the subject is not mentioned: ez dago egiterik it can't be done, lit. "there's no doing it."

Eduki is used when there is a subject: ez daukatz egiterik I can't do it, lit. "I have no doing it."

Hamaika "eleven" is often used, as here, to mean "many."

It is up to all Basques: intransitive-dative form of EGON, "It is to them" (like zaio).

VOCABULARY

| alferrik | adv. in vain, uselessly, no use |
| baldin | cj. if (see note 12) |
| baserritar | n. baserrit dweller, farmer |
| desberdine | adj. different |
| ebak, -txen | vt. cut |
| eglazko | adjl. true |
| erdalde | adj., n. non-Basque-speaking, non-Basque speaker |

| goilare | n. spoon |
| hainbat | dt. so many, so much; many, much |
| heriotze | n. death, demise |
| itzali, itzal, -txen | vi., vt. extinguish, go out, put out |
| kontuz! | careful! watch out! |
| laban | n. knife |
| lotsa | n. shame, shamefulness; lotsa |
| izar | vt. be ashamed, be shy |
neurri n. measure, degree, extent  on, come on (a light, etc.)
omen mp. (see note 5)  teneedore n. Fork
ote mp. (see note 5)  zaindu, zain, -tzen vt. look after,
piztu, piz, -ten vl., vt. turn  protect, watch

EXERCISES

Exercise 1: Translate (review in particular note 5):
1. I wonder if those fellows who are dancing are farmers.  2. Watch out! I heard that he has a knife!  3. Did you turn out the light when you went out by any chance? No, I didn't remember.  4. He says he'll pay me (for) the tickets (lit. "he'll pay the tickets to me") next week...if he remembers, of course!  5. You're death has not been in vain; we shall overcome (Elroboz)!.  6. In the middle of the movie somebody turned on all the lights.  7. Take the knives, forks, spoons and dishes (lit. "plates") to the table; it's time to have dinner.  8. I wonder what else (geheoga) we need? Aha yes, the bread and the wine.  9. Or shall we have cider perhaps? What do you prefer?  10. Supposedly it's the man's job (gizonort dogokto) to cut the bread.  11. Jose Luis, have you got a knife? Start cutting the bread for everybody then.  12.巴斯ques are often shy; they don't like to be different from (Instrumental) their friends.  12. That's a true farmer for you! (Arrt duzu...)  13. Each must look after his own garden.  14. I'd like to know (=ote) what measures the Basque Government is taking to resolve (konpondu) this situation.  15. The wish to learn Basque has kindled (piztu) in many a (haibak) non-Basque speaker; and furthermore, such (honetoko) so-called (-----dotokoko) "new Basques" have often achieved great things.  16. San Sebastian has a fiesta called the "Bonborroda" ("Bonborroda" Lzeneko...); in it, the men dress up (jantzi) with forks and spoons.  17. (Be) careful, this one's different!  18. They believed that their love would last until the day of (their) death.  19. If you don't look after your body more, you will soon be ill.  20. Red, white and green are the colors of Baskadi's flag.

Exercise 2:
Reread the Basque version of the translation exercise for Unit 24 in the key; then rewrite it in your own words.
UNIT THIRTY-FIVE

PROBITZIETAKO BERRIAK

Araba


Bizkaia


* Otxarkoa izanak, futbol zelaia izango du. Udalak horixe onartu du. 29 milioi pezeta beharko dica obrak burutzeko. Susko Jaurizardak ordainduko ditu oso osorik. 19.000

(from the newspaper Egin ("Egunon" section), February 1983)

NOTES

1 a few months ago.
2 Levante: region including Valencia and Murcia, on the western Mediterranean, which was hit by serious floods in the winter of 1982-3.
3 Arabons or Arabes, pertaining to the province of Arabo: adjectives and nouns denoting place of origin or nationality end in Basque in -ar, -tar or -dar, e.g. gipuzkoar "Gipuzkoan," bizkaitar "Bizkaian," donostiar "from San Sebastian," bilbotar "from Bilbao," irundar "from Irún," etc.
4 Read: lehenengo.
5 says (-Unit 32, note 12).
6 called "Unzolu": (-Unit 34, note 14).
7 egunotan (in) these days; umeak these children; these and other forms in the text contain the proximate article. In these examples this article does not, as in Unit 24 (+24:b), indicate direct identification or involvement of the speaker, but proximity in the context of the discourse. Thus umeak here signifies "the children of whom we are speaking," not "we children." Verbal agreement distinguishes the two senses. The proximate article may convey identification with the speaker, identification with the listener, or proximity within the context of the discourse, and will require first-person, second-person and third-person forms of the verb respectively: compare umeak gazteak gara we children are young, umeak gazteak dira these children are young, gazteak zarete, umeak! you are young, children!
8 It seems (omen) that Bilbao is indeed (bai) opt for (baina) the cultivation of imagination and creativity.
9 on the 19th of (tho) month: hil means "month" here (= hilabete).
10 the (for)mentioned exhibition: the form aipaturiko erakustetako orakusketa is also used (+14:1).
11 The derivational suffix -tsu forms adjectives (something like English -ous or -ish), and is also (like English -ish) added to adjectives themselves, making them more vague in meaning: mendetsu "mountainous," curitsu "rainy," jakintsu "wise," berdintsu "similar." It is added to adverbs similarly: halatsu "something like that," oraintzua "recently," etc.
VOCABULARY

ailpatu vt. mention, refer to
aurka pp. against (= kontra)
eskutitz n. letter (= karta)
futbol n. soccer, football
haur n. child
ikaragarri adj. tremendous, terrible
ilun adj. dark, obscure
jabe n. owner, master
lagundu vt(4). help; accompany
lotsagarri adj. shameful, disgraceful, outrageous
mediku n. doctor, physician

musika n. music
onartu, onar(t), -tzen vt. accept; approve
oina dela ago (cp. note 1)
oraindintu vt. pay
osasun n. health
prosaka adv. in a hurry, hurriedly, fast
prestatu vt., vt. prepare, get ready
zoro [tforo] adj. crazy, mad
zulo n. hole

EXERCISES

Exercise 1: Translate (after reviewing note 7 in particular):
1. We children will be the masters of the world tomorrow. 2. Ladies and gentlemen (jaun-endrako), the music has begun and we must all dance.
3. Is there a doctor among those here, please? 4. Children are afraid in the dark. 5. Thirty years ago, the situation in the country was different. 6. Fifteen years ago there was nothing but green fields here; the change (aldaketa) has been tremendous. 7. Are you crazy? How are you going to pay (for) it? 8. There are seven children, and we will have to find someone to look after these children. 9. Who is the owner of this dog? 10. Do you really enjoy living in that dark hole? 11. Football, football, football: he always talks about the same thing! 12. It's disgraceful that they haven't taken any measures yet. 13. The doctor hurried out (lit. "went out hurriedly") of the theatre. 14. Health cannot be paid (for) with money. 15. She is not in (lit. "she doesn't have") good health, but she has no pain either.
16. How much do these medicines that she needs cost? 17. Watch out, this cow is half crazy. 18. Will you help me to put (jortzen) the forks, spoons, knives, etc. on the table? It's time (ordu) to set (lit. "prepare") the table. 19. The doctor accepted the student's letter hurriedly. 20. These things that you have mentioned are outrageous; yes, I will help you by writing (lortzitz) a letter to the newspapers in favor of these farmers and against that owner.

Exercise 2:
Reread the Basque version of the translation exercise for Unit 25 in the key; then rewrite it in your own words.
UNIT THIRTY-SIX

PROBINTZIETAKO BERRIAK (JARRAIPIENA)

Gipuzkoa


- Azkoitiko gazteek leku lasaia eta egokia nahit dute aisa egoteko, elkarrekin honetaz eta hartaz aritzeko, momentu goxorik pasatzeko eta elkar ezagutzeko. Lokale egokirik gabe dira herriko gazteak. Hori dela eta eskabidea egin diote udalereari. Joan den igandean, mahaiak ezarri eta
sinadura bila aritu ziren gazteak. Etxe guztien artean leku aproposik aurkitzen duten.₃

Iparraldea


· Atzo arratsaldean, Jetan, hogeita hamarren bat Sexta ateratu ziren Baionak Mont d'Marsaneko gartzelaraino Ander Manterola presoaren alde manifestazioa egitera. Ordura berean Frantzia eta Eskoziaren arteko rugby partidari so zeuden jende normal gehienak.

Nafarroa

· Errazuko Martikoteneko zubiaren bi oinarri zutabeak erortzeko kinka larrian badaude ere⁶, lazier konponduko dute herritarren artean, auzolan deritzan lehengo lege zabarrean. Aipatu zubi honez gain, beste zenbait auzabide ere berrituko dira, materialea bertako Udalak jarria izanen delarik.


(from the newspaper Egin ("Egunon" section), February 1983)

NOTES

1. Eta is redundant after baldin, "Unit 31, note 15.
2. "Votā!": hona or hona hemen "here is" ("votā"); horra or horra hor "there is" ("votā"); hara or hara han "there is" ("votā").
3. The men and women of eighty or a hundred years ago.
4. None (that have been) published in books, magazines or similar will be accepted.
no doubt, lit. "pretty sure": asko is sometimes used to mean "very, quite" in the same type of construction as sumar (Unit 32, note 20). One also says seguru aski with the same meaning. The preceding clause, harritzekoa ez da izango eta, lit. "it won’t be surprising [if]," could also be translated freely as "no doubt," and so is a redundancy.

gozto = gozo: this is an example of what we can call affective palatalization. Basque has the following palatal or palatalized consonants: TT [ty], DD [dy] or [y], N [ny], LL [ly], X [ʃ], TX [ʃ], and, in standard Basque, J [y] or [dy]. These elements form a special phonological subset, correlated with certain nonpalatal consonants in the following manner: T → TT; D → DD; N → Ň; L → LL; Z/S → X; TZ/TS → TX. (The letter J is absent from this correlation; however, in the standard and certain dialects, J and DD may be considered two graphic representations of a unitary phoneme: DD is used when the sound is of affective origin.) The importance of this correlation is that in certain conditions the nonpalatal consonants are palatalized, that is, changed into their palatal correlates. The conditions stimulating palatalization are sometimes phonological, and sometimes lexical, the details varying from one dialect to another. The pronunciation [muti] for mutila "boy" is an example of phonological palatalization (caused by the preceding l); the pronunciation [takuʃ] for zakurra "dog," and the pronunciation [guti] or [gutʃi] for guti "little," are examples of lexical palatalization in some dialects (where [sakuʃ] has been specialized as an augmentative, and [guti] is no longer used). Most lexical palatalizations clearly represent fossilized affective palatalizations.

Affective is a term we can use to denominate palatalizations that have an expressive function. The range of expressiveness of palatalization varies between dialects, since it is limited by the phonological and lexical conditioning found in each variety. To be expressive, palatalization must be "voluntary": that is, the language user must have the opportunity to choose between two forms, one palatalized and the other not. For example, the pronunciation [guti] will have an affective value only in the varieties of Basque that possess the pronunciation [gutʃi] to contrast with it. The effect of affective palatalization is diminutive ((t)xakurra "doggie"), or pejorative (gixoña "little man"), or endearing (amoña "granny"), including its use with names of persons and animals: Anttun (< Anton) "Tony," Pintto (< Pinto) "Spot." Note that an initial x often becomes tx, as in (t)xakurra; and that tt, an unstable sound, sometimes becomes tx, as in gutxi, Antxon.

7 therefore, for that reason.

8 Let’s see if between them all they find a suitable place: ea (translated here as "let’s see") can be used with independent or indirect questions, but always requires the conjunctive mode in the verb; it is often difficult or impossible to translate.
not to situate this opening in the context of the political elections,
but...: -arren, added to a supine, is an adversative conjunction,
generally translatable as "although": eguraldi ona egonarren = nahiz
eguraldi ona egon although there is/was good weather.

although the two columns of the ... bridge are on the point of
collapsing: or with the conditional mode is yet another way of
translating "although" (*Unit 34, note 4).

Oinarrizko Hezkuntza Orokorra, the elementary level of the Spanish
school system (Educación General Básica).

has set its eyes on (them), lit. "has struck (them) with (its) eye."
of many kinds, varied.

School environment: notice the noun-noun construction, common in
Basque and paralleled in English, in which the first noun determines
the second. Some Basque nouns have a special compounding form which
is employed when it is the first element of a noun-noun compound. One
way of forming a compounding form is by dropping the final o of a
noun stem; such is the case in the example in the text, where eskola -
eskol.

VOCABULARY

argazki n. photograph
ea let's see (see note 8)
era n. way, manner; kind
ezarri, ezar, -tzen vt. place,
set up, put; vt. sit
garai n. period, time
gonbidatu vt. invite
interesgarri adj. interesting
ipini, ipin, -tzen vt. put
kirol n. sport
komeni izan vi(o), be advisable,
suit
laguntza n. help, assistance
larri adj., adv. serious(ly), bad(ly)
oinari n. footstone, base, basis;
oinarrizko odji./adj. basic
pelota n. ball; handball, "jai
alai," "pelota"
pelotari n. "jai alai" player
preso n. prisoner, person in
prison
sendo adj. strong, vigorous
usain [u'sai] n. smell; hint, air
zuzendarri n. director; conductor

EXERCISES

Exercise 1:
Review note 6. What words do these palatalized forms correspond to?
aitta (atta), a(i)tona, edder, errex, ixillik, pollitt, txerri,
txuri, xuxen, ddeus, gaixto, ma(i)tte, xumar, gaixorik, txoro, txulo.
Exercise 2:
Review note 15, then analyze the following expressions: alfer-lan, ama-hizkuntza, arrainzopa, arrantzale herri, arraultzopil, astebukaera, ausolan, auzabide, bankuetxe or bankotxe, basajaun ("Lord of the Forest" in Basque mythology), Basaburu (geographical region), elizgizon, ordal kultura, euskal liburu, Euskal Herria, frutadenda, gaueskola, gramatika liburu, herri dantzak, herrialde, hiriburu, hizkuntz eskola, idazle talde, ipartzulo (= ipardi + zulo), itsasportu, jaialdi, kale giro, klase borroka, kultur aste, lanegun, logela, lurralde, orrialde, talde lan, tren geltoki, udaletxe, uharte (= urarte), urtemuga, zapatadenda.

Exercise 3: Translate:
1. I wanted to invite that singer, but I was (too) shy. 2. There are many Basque sports; "jai alai" is only one of them. 3. Some "jai alai" players go to America to earn money. 4. The prisoners' situation has never been so serious. 5. With the director's help and this letter, let's see what we can do. 6. Let's set up a table in front of the church to ask people for help for the nationalists in prison (lit. "nationalist prisoners"). 7. It's interesting that you put things (in) that way. 8. What's that good smell (that is) coming from the kitchen? 9. The fellow we invited was a strong, young "jai alai" player. 10. It isn't advisable to approve the law at this time. 11. That is a basic element in modern (gouurko) Basque music. 12. Who will come to help us prepare everything? 13. Come when it suits you. 14. Who threw that ball? Watch out, there's another one coming! 15. Quiet! Turn off (kendu) that music! 16. When I turned on the light I saw something very interesting. 17. There they were, embracing in the dark. 18. They asked me if (es) I would turn off the light again. 19. I didn't know what he meant. 20. It wasn't worth saying anything.

Exercise 4:
Reread the Basque version of the translation exercise for Unit 26 in the key; then rewrite it in your own words.
UNIT THIRTY-SEVEN

KOLPEA

Gauzak horrela¹, gero eta gertuago² ikusten zen Iraultza eguna. Xeledon ek urteberetan³ beherakada ikaragarria egin zuen. Izaoko estropadetan dirugaltze handia izan zuenetik⁴ burua altxatu ezinean ze billeden⁵; edariari gero eta emanago⁶. Egun osok sukaldeko aukian igarotzen zituen, balantzaka, botila aurrean⁷, egunkaria irakurri nahi eta ezin. Noiz behinka ogi zati bat ardotan busi eta han etortzen zitzaien "Gau"⁸ ardo-zopak xurgatzerak; zorioneko Gozoki-Mendiko⁹ ur azukretsua baino gustorago¹⁰ alajaina...

Bitartean morroiaek soroetan ugalzaba zahar mozorkiaren bizkarretik farre egiten zuten, golperik eman gabe.

...Eta horren ondorenak jakinak dira: baratzak belar gaiztoz josita, teilatuak zuloz beterik, arboak abandonatuta, eta aberceak janari eskasak¹¹.

Urte hartan San Antonio eguna larunbatez gertatu zen. Urtero bezala, Xeledon bezperan Urkiolara joan eta han harrapatutako mozkorrarekin bueltatzerik ez zuen izan¹² igande arratsaldera arte. Morroiaek igandeko goiz galeperretara¹³ presaka joanak ziren; ez behirik jetzi, ez jaten eman abereei. Xeledon nolabai.e ere etxeratu zuen; sukaldeko aukian egunkaria aurpegia estali eta bertan loak hartu zuen¹⁴. Gaualden ugalzaba lo, morroiaek iji eta aja zahagiaren inguruan kontu kontari eta aberceak gosak amorratzen.¹⁵ Azkenik behi batek amorrazioaren etxipenean despentsako atea adarreaz jo du eta han doaz aberceak arrapalada nahasian kutxa, zaku eta bazter guztietan nahi adina jatera inongo neurririk gabe.

Xeledon momentu horretan esnatu zen. Despentsako tripa-festaren erdian azaldu zen bere morroiekin maldizioka¹⁶, sardez, akuiluz, zigorriz batera eta bestera nora ezean itsu gotpeka¹⁷.

Bat batean, inongo aurrekontxigna konkreturik gabe, aberceak zigortzaileen kontra ekin zioten bakoitzak bere ahalmen. Xeledon eta morroiaek, goi, behe, ezker, eskubi, alderdi guztietatik, ostikadak, adarkadak, haingkadak sentitzen hasi ziren. Ezin kontrolatu egoera anormal hura. Inork sekulan ere ez zuen horrelakorik ikusi, ez eta ametsatan ere. Orain arte zigorriz menperatu ohi zituztenek¹⁸ zigorrari lotsa gabe frente eman! Eta nola! Zer egingo zuten bost gizonek horrenbeste oin, adar, moko eta hagin amorratuen
kontra?... Txerri eta txakurren hagin zorrotz goisetietatik ahalik eta arinen" ihesi, atarian traktorea hartu eta herria lehenbailehen.
Gau, belebeltza, ore han joan zitzaient txintxo txintxoa atzetik, traktore hogalean kokatuta.
(Abereeneko irlautza. I. Unzurrunzoga's Basque adoption of George Orwell's Animal Farm, Hordogo, Donostia, 1981)

NOTES

1 things [being] so: this is an elliptical (verbless) clause standing in apposition to the main clause, consisting of the rest of the sentence; it consists of a subject, gauzak, and a verbless predicate, horrela. This is a characteristic construction in Basque prose, particularly useful in narrative. In general this text presents numerous examples of verbal ellipsis, so typical in Basque (-14:1).
2 nearer and nearer: note the pattern gero eta ...ago "...er and ...er," "more and more ...": gero eta tontagoa iruditzen zatzaizkit you soon dumber and dumber to me; gero eta diru gehiago eskatzen zuen he asked for more and more money.
3 In (the period of) a year: -26:a.
4 (ever) since he lost a lot of money on the boot races last year: the ablative with the conjunctive mode translates "since."
5 he was unable to raise his head (lit.): zebilen is the past form corresponding to IBILI; the Basque construction says "he was in the impossibility of raising the head."
6 more and more given to drink.
7 In front of the bottle: -Unit 32, note 26.
8 Gau is the name of Xeledon's pet raven.
9 Orwell's "Sugarcandy Mountain."
10 Observe the comparative of the allative expression gudora (occurring in Unit 32); so too gorago "higher" from gora, aurrerago "further along" from aurrera, etc.
11 ...and little food for the animals: the part of this sentence following the colon is made up of four elliptical clauses. In the first three, the pattern is noun + participial phrase. In aberheek janari eskasa, on the contrary, the pattern is that of ergative (subject) noun phrase + absolutive (object) noun phrase; the omitted verb that is understood to link the two must be transitive, and is most likely to be UKAN: aberheek janari eskasa dute "the animals have little food." This rather special construction is not uncommon in Basque.
12 he couldn't return: -Unit 34, note 18.
13 quail hunting: lit. "to (the) quails."
he fell asleep: note the curious idiom, lit. "sleep took him."
Once again, this sentence consists entirely of elliptical clauses
(three of them), for each of which we may supply a missing verb.
As in note 14, here too—in the last clause—we observe an ergative
that does not correspond to an English subject: read "with hunger."
swearing: it should be evident by now that -ka forms adverbs, mostly of
action, e.g. milaka "by thousands," presaka "hurriedly," isilka
"on the quiet, secretly," balantzaka "swinging, moving from side to side,"
noiz behinka "now and then." This suffix contrasts quite clearly
with -ki (Unit 32, note 25). The noun-forming suffix -kada, which
gives rise to nouns of action and appears in several words in this
text, may arise from -ka and -ada, a noun-forming suffix: beheraka
"down(wards)" + behorakada "tending downwards, in a downward direction"
+ behorakada "slump, deterioration, setback"; hagin "tooth" + haginkada
"with the teeth, by biting" + haginkada "bite," etc.
striking [out] (golpeka with pitchforks, goods [and] whips one way
and the other (botera eta bestera), here and there (noa ezean),
blindly (itsu itsuan): for golpeka see note 16; and note in itsu
itsuan how Basque uses repetition (of the stem only) for emphasis
or vividness.
those whom until now they were accustom to dominating by force:
ohi placed after the supine or gerund (according to dialect) with
IZAH or UHAN expresses habit: goizeko zortzietan jaiki (or jaikitzen)
ohi naiz (usually) get up at eight in the morning; beti esan (esaten)
ohi zuen he always used to say. Note also: ohi baino beranduego
later than usual.
as quickly as they could, as quickly as possible: abalik eta ...en
"as ... as possible." Here is another sentence made up of three
verbless clauses.
txinixo = zintzo with palatalization, here repeated (see note 17)
and used adverbially: faithfully.

VOCABULARY:
Refer to the general vocabulary from now on for all new words.

EXERCISES

Exercise 1: Translate:
1. These lessons get (burtu) harder and harder. I wonder if you
could help. Will you explain to me what some of these words mean?
2. Last year my husband used to get drunk every Saturday night.
I usually go to bed before midnight, but I used to wake up at two,
three or four at night when he came in. He's very ugly when he
gets drunk.
3. The two of us remained near the fountain looking at the moon up in the sky, with the smell of wet grass and the sound of the water of the fountain. I offered him a cigarette.
4. I invite you to accompany me to every corner of the nation this year. But we'll have to go in winter, for that is the best time (goral) for the farmers.
5. The director was glad to hear the news of the results. He offered me a drink (kopa).
6. It was midnight, and the moon in the sky resembled (zirudien) a big ball. "Let's see what this winter brings (dokoren)," I thought.
7. The health of the nation is more important than anything else (beste ozer). When somebody's body is sick, we call the doctor. But who is the doctor?
8. Do you really like that ugly sound? I can't believe that that's music.
9. God works in many ways; but is this one of them?
10. Although we invited them, they didn't accept. It's the most disgraceful thing I've ever heard.

Exercise 2: Translate:
Reread the Basque version of the translation exercise for Unit 27 in the key; then rewrite it in your own words.
UNIT THIRTY-EIGHT

AMURIZAK ETA ENBEITAK AITARI BURUZ KANTATUTAKO BERTSOAK

AMURIZAK:
Aita izena kanta berrarak
jarri dit biotza bero,
akera eder au izango zenik
ez nuen emen espero;
preso nengoen Zamaran eta
an gelditu ia ero,
joan nintzen ta bertan nengola
aita il zitzaidan gero,
naiago nuke edozer baño
etren bizirik balago.
Aita nuen nik umoretsua,
iñoz geza ta gazia,
arek agertu zidan bidea
baitzen bertsoz ikasia;
oi, ene aita, nire egunak
ere aurrera doaz ia,
baina zugandik artua baitut
bertsotarako grazia,
nik egingo dut arbola aundi
zuk emandako azia.
Gai au kolpera jarriko zenik
ia ametsa dirudi,
baserri artan ízan genduen
ainbat arri eta euri
zu, aita, ziñen aín on niretzat,
ez gogorra baizik guri,
Biskalirria nola dagoen
orain Donostian ageri,
niri jotako txalo guztianak
bidaltzen dizkizut zuri.

ENBEITAK:
Itz au batera biurtzen zaigu
maitea eta poztasun,
bion artean ígaro dogu
bizitzan ainentz laztasun;

hitz hau/bihurtzen
dugu
hainbat
zu izan zera, aita, neretzat
neke-alditan osasun,
tere sorretza, nere indarra,
gainoa nere maitsasun,
bloko daki, nita, zuk zenbat
neretzat eman daustazun.

Zure laztanak, zure barrea
ta zure zigorra baira,
danak dituzu biotz barnetik,
alaxe nauzu ni maia;
ta nizuretzat seme egin naiz
Jaungoikoak ala naita,
poza doraat zure izatea
egizko aitarena baira,
denen aurrean gaur milla esker,
bedeinkatzen zaitut, aita.

Urteak asko ditugu baña
gure adiñen artean,
anai bezela bizi goitezen
alkar degun bitartean;
zu neretzako guztiak ziñan
nere umetza-partean,
orain zuretzat izan nahi nuke
ez dakit zenbat urtean,
bloko batu bizi izateko
zortzan eta pakean.

(Bertsolari-txapelketa nagusia (Donostia, 1980-I-6), Auspoe Tburutegia, Tolosa, Gipuzkoa, 1980)

Bertsok ("verses") are a living part of Basque oral Folk tradition. In their formal or informal audience and sung to a traditional or popular tune. The bertsolari ("verse singer") must meet requirements of measure (neurria) and rhyme, according to which he chooses an appropriate tune (dolmu). There are various meters, the two commonest being the zortziko handia (10+8+10+8+10+8 syllables, with a single rhyme in the lines of eight syllables) and the zortziko txikio (7+6+7+6+7+6 syllables, with a single rhyme in the lines of six syllables); the meter that occurs in this unit's text is the homorreko handia (10+8+10+8+10+8+10+8).

In informal gatherings (e.g. in a sorgordotea), the subject of the verses is free, and is generally light-hearted and involved with the participants' personal affairs, with two or more bertsolari alternating in a dialog. In organized recitals, such as in
village fiestas and other public occasions, with professional bertsolaris, there is a master of ceremonies who acts as subject-setter (goljartzolle), announcing to each bertsolar as his turn comes up the subject (gol) about which he is to sing, the meter he is to use, and so on.

The verses in this text were sung in the finals held in San Sebastian of the 1980 bertsolari championship (txapelketa) by the two winning participants, Xabier Amuriza and Jon Enbelta, given the subject "Alto" and the homorrako handlo meter.

It is customary to write out bertsok in dialect spelling, as has been done here. In the right margin we have given the standard equivalents of all words having a different spelling in the verses. In fact, Amuriza virtually sings in standard Basque; Enbelta, who (like Amuriza) is from Bizkaia, uses a mixture of Bizkaian (doju, daustazun, daroat) and Gipuzkoan (zerua, degun, pakean) features, which is quite normal among bertsolarik.

Bertsok, to be enjoyed, should not be read but sung. The tune of the verses in the text is the following:

\[\text{Alta l-ze-na kon-ta be-arrok ja-ni di-bl-o-tza be-ro,}\]

\[\text{ou-ke-ra re-de au l-zan-go ze-nik cz nu-en e-men es-pe-ro; pre-so no-}\]

\[\text{go-en Ze-na-ren e-ta on gel-di-tu-l-a e-ro jo-an ntn-tzen ta ber-tan nen-}\]

\[\text{go-la bi-ta il zi-tzal-don ge-ro, no-l-o-go nu-ke e-do-zer bol-no}\]

\[\text{e-men bi-zil-rik bo-le-go, e-men bi-zil-rik bo-le-go.}\]
EXERCISES

Exercise 1: Translate:
1. Before making ("preparing") dinner I turned on the radio. I hadn't listened to the radio for a long time (espaldon), and I thought it would be interesting to see what it was like.
2. We've had strange weather this month. First we had a lot of rain, and it was impossible to ("one couldn't") go out of the house without getting wet from tip to toe (polik behera). Then, when no one expected it, it changed completely, and now it seems (like) summer, or at least spring, instead of winter.
3. At midday, if the sun comes out, the heat is tremendous. Thank goodness there's a stream here; otherwise it would be too much!
4. I have an idea. If we buy some gasoline, I'll take you to a special place that you'll like a lot.
5. Is there anyone in the bathroom (kozun)? No, it's empty, but I'm having trouble (kostatzen zolt) opening the door. Hang on a moment (ego pixka bot), and I'll help you. Sometimes one has to give the door a kick.
6. Bring the check, please. Okay. How much is it? That much (hobot)? My goodness! I'm not going to pay this! I only had a kortou, nothing else!
7. This wine costs ten francs a bottle. Would you like a liter, madam? Ten francs, please. Here you are. Thank you very much. Good afternoon, madam.
8. This passport is only good for western nations, unfortunately.
9. I've never seen anyone tidier than her.
10. I'd like to know how many times they've slept together.

Exercise 2:
Reread the Basque version of the translation exercise for Unit 28 in the key; then rewrite it in your own words.
UNIT THIRTY-NINE

MARKESAREN ALABA (ITURRINOK JARRITAKO BERTSOAK)

Zeruak eta lurrak egin zituana,
memoria argitzera atoz neregana.
Esperantza hadaukat zerorrek emana,
kunplituko dedala dudala dedana.
Amoriozko penak amodiozko
bertso berrietan, ahala
publika al banitza herrietan
Euskal Errietan;
enteratu naiz ongi horietan
enkargu oieten San Jose arratsaldeko
iru t'erdietan.
Markes baten alaba hiru
interesatua marineroarekin
mariñeruarekin onamoratua;
deskubritu gaberik
bere sekreta, amodioa
eskertu, amoria zeukan barnera
barrena sartua.
Egun sínallia zan
esang ziola arren
txera joateko;
"Deseo dedan itz au
manifestatzeko,
zurekin, Antonio,
nago izateko."
"Zer esaten didazu, hitz hori
Juanita, itz ori?
Tentatzen ai zerala
trazak badirudi.
Etzait zure gradurik
tokatutzen neri;
ez burlarikan egia
mariñerua."

"Iduki dezakezu
ongi sinistua
aspañian nagola
zutaz gustatua.
Etzaitut nik utziko
desanparatua;
ala egiten dizut
gaur juramentua." 

Konformatu ziraden
alkarren artian,
ezkondo zirala
urrango urtian.
Escola ikasteko
bien bitartean,
beraren erritikan
guztiz apartian.

Ala disponiturik
jarri ziran biak
kartaz entenditzeko
alkarren berriak.
Formalidadiakin
jartzeko egiak,
bainan etziran lo egon
amaren begiak.

"Alperrik izango dira
asarre guztian,
ez naute mudatuko
eternaldian.
Esposatu nai nuke
kariño onian,
Antonio Maria
etortzen danian."

Ezin egon zan ama
itz ori sufritzen,
beriala asi zan
kartak detenitzen;
intentzio guztiaz
ekzkontza galdutzen...
Juanitak alakorik
etzuen pentsatzen.

ez zait
tokatzen
burlarik
mariñerua

eduki
sinetxia
nagocia
zutaz

etzaitut
hala

ziren
alkarren artean
zirela
hurrengo urtean

bien bitartean
herritiko
mowntime
aparte

hala
ziren

elkarren
formalidadiak

baina
baina

alperrik/[isango\rjaul]
haserre

eternaldian

zahaler
onean
dean

zen
hitx hori

berchale hasi zen

galtzen

halakorik

ez zuen
Amaren malezia!
Korreora juan ta
Antonio il zala
egin zuan karta.
Juana ten tristura
berri ura jakinda!
engainatua bestek
gezur bat esanda.
Amak esaten dio:
"Juanita neria,
galdu da, diotenoz,
Antonio Maria.
Nik billatuko dizut
beste bat obia,
maiorazgo interes
askoren jabia."
"Ama, ez neri esan
orrelakorikan;
ez det nik bestegana
amoriorikan.
Ezin alegre leike
nere barrenik
komenientzi ona
egonagatikan."
"Utzi alde batera
orrelako lanak,
ez ditut nik ikusten
zu bezela damak.
Nai badituzu artu
onra eta famak,
giatuuko zaituzte
aitak eta amak."
Denbora kunpliturik
galaia abian,
zer pasatu ote zan
aren memorian?
Kartarik artu gabe
juan dan aspaldian,
inozente sartu zan
jaio zan errian.
Au da lendabiziko
ark esan zuena:
"Zer da musikarekin
onratzen dutena?"
"Markesaren alaba
kaluan barrena,
esposario zala
ark biar zuena."

Desmalaturik egin
zu en ordubete,
ger o nobia eske
itz bi egin arte;
inguratu zitzai on
makiña bat jente,
bigarren ordurako
il zan derropente.

Gaba pasatu eta
urrengo goizian
entierroa zu en
bigarren klasian.
Markesaren alaba
guzien aztian.
Zer pena izango zan
aren biotzian.

Penarekin lerturik
Antonio il zan,
akonpanatu zu en
Juanitak elizan.
Maitasuna bazion
esan dedan gisan,
geroztikan ez zu en
osasunik izan.

Erremedia balei
sentimentu ori,
bitarteko bat jarri
Jesus maiteari,
oraizio egia
Birjina Amari,
zeruan gerta dedin
Antonio Mari.
Alkarren konpainian
guk ere nai degu,
Birjiña, egiozu
Jaunari erregu,
kristau guziongatik
baldin al bazendu,
Iturrinok orrela
desiatutzen du.


Although the most genuine bertsolaritza is that in which the bertsolar
composes his verses at the same time as he is singing them (bot-boteko
or bopoteko bertsolaritza), there are also written verses that imitate
them, known as bertsor jotxok (set verses) or bertsor berriak (new
verses), which in the past were popularized in the form of "verse
papers" (bertso paperok). This is the category to which Workesoren
Ataba, dating from near the turn of the century, belongs.

After an invocation to "the maker of heaven and earth," Iturrino
tells us in the second verse that he has been requested to write
some verses about "the sorrows of love," a constant theme of bertsolaris.
The story is that of the daughter of a rich marquis, who
falls in love with a sailor boy. She declares her love to him, and
they agree to get married the following year, and in the meantime
he goes away to study. They plan to write to each other, but the
girl's mother, who is against the match, stops the sailor's letters
from reaching her, and tells her daughter that her fiancé is dead.
At the end of the year, the sailor boy hear's music upon returning
to the town, and is told that the marquis' daughter is to be married.
the next day. Upon hearing this, the boy faints and dies. The fol-
lowing day the marquis' daughter, filled with grief, attends her lover's
funeral. The author finally asks the Virgin to make sure that Antonio
Maria is in heaven.

The text contains dozens of Spanish words, which makes the task
of understanding it more laborious for those who don't know Spanish.
A purist movement, intent on eliminating "foreign" elements from
Basque, reached its highest point in the early decades of the twentieth
century (coinciding with the rise of Basque nationalism); among the
excesses of this movement, now generally recognized as such, were
the invention of a whole array of neologisms intended to replace even
the most time-honored "barbarisms," and the consequent creation of
a jargon that for most Basque speakers was not only alien but often
practically indecipherable. Today the pendulum has swung back again,
and there is a general acceptance of many foreign loanwords, which
are indeed no more un-Basque than are the thousands upon thousands
of loanwords in English un-English. Nonetheless the problem of where
to draw the line between legitimate loanwords and out-and-out de-Basque-
ization of the the vocabulary remains to be resolved by future genera-
tions of speakers, writers and linguists. In the meantime, the only
course the learner can take is to copy those around him: "when in
Rome, do as the Romans do!"

EXERCISES

Exercise 1:
Reread the Basque version of the translation exercise for Unit 29
in the key; then rewrite it in your own words.

Exercise 2:
Tell in your own word the story of "Markosaren Aitabo."
UNIT FORTY

SAUTRELA (BERNARD ETXEPAIRE)

Heuscara da campora, eta goacen oro dançara.
Euskara da kanpora eta goacen oro dantzara.

O heuscara lauda ezac Garacico herria
Ceren hautie ughen baytuc behar duyán thornuya
Lehenago hi baitinçan lengoagetan azquena
Oray aldiz içaneniz orotaco lehena.

O euskara, lauda ezak Garakiko herria,
zeren handik ukan bait duk behar duan tornua.
Lehenago hi bait hintzen lengozietan azkena,
orain, aldiz, izamen haiz orotzko lehena.

Heuscaldunac mundu orotan preciatu ciraden
Bana hayen lengoaiaz berce oro burlatzen
Ceren eceyn scripturan erideiten ezpaitzen
Oray dute iccassiren nola gaçga hona cen.

Euskaldunak mundu orotan preciatu ziren,
baina heien lengoaia beste oro burlatzen,
zeren ecein eskrituran erideten ez bait zen.
Orain dute ikasiren (ikasiko) nola gaçga ona zen.

Heuscaldun den guioñon oroc alcha boça buruya
Eci hayen lengoaia içanen da floría
Prince eta iaul handiec oroc haron galdia
Scribatuz hal balute iñhasteko desira.

Euskaldun den gizon orok altxa beza burua,
ezi (ziren) haien lengoain izamen da floría.
Printze eta jauñ handiek orok haren galdea,
eskrivotuz elu balute ikasteke desira.

Desir hura conplitu du Garacico naturac
Eta haren adiskiude oray Bordelen denac
Lehen imprimigalia heuscarraren hura da
Basco oro obligatu iagoiticoz hargana.

Desir hura kumplitu du Garaziko naturak
eta haren adiskide orain Bordelen denak.
Lehen imprimatzailea euskararen hura da;
basko oro obligatu iagoitioko har(en)gana.
Etay lelori bai lelo leloa çaray leloa
Heuscara da campora eta goacen oro dançara.

Etai lelori bai lelo leloa zarai leloa.
Euskara da kampora eta goazen oro dantzara.


Linguae Vasconum Primitiae, by Bernard Etxepare or Dechepare (1545) is the first book ever to be published in the Basque language (hence the title). It is in an archaic Low-Navarrese dialect; the spelling is based on French practices for the most part. Soutrela is a kind of dance.

EXERCISES

Exercise 1:
Reread the Basque version of the translation exercise for Unit 30 in the key; then rewrite it in your own words.
## Grammar Summary 1: Declension

### Synoptic Table of Inflections

#### a) Vowel Stems

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>CASE</th>
<th>PROPER NOUNS</th>
<th>INARTIC. COMMON NOUNS &amp; ADJS., DETS. &amp; PRONOUNS</th>
<th>ARTICULATE COMMON NOUNS &amp; ADJS.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Absolutive</td>
<td>φ</td>
<td>φ</td>
<td>-a, -ak, -ok</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ergative</td>
<td>-k</td>
<td>-k</td>
<td>-ak, -ek, -ok</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dative</td>
<td>-ri</td>
<td>-ri</td>
<td>-ari, -ei, -oi</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pos. Genitive</td>
<td>-ren</td>
<td>-ren</td>
<td>-aren, -en, -on</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Comitative</td>
<td>-rekin</td>
<td>-rekin</td>
<td>-arekin, -ekin, -okin</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Instrumental</td>
<td>-z, -taz</td>
<td>-az, -ez, -oz</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Inessive</td>
<td>-tan</td>
<td>-tan</td>
<td>-tan</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Allative</td>
<td>-ra</td>
<td>-tara</td>
<td>-rata, -otara, -otata</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ablatative</td>
<td>-tik</td>
<td>-tatik</td>
<td>-tika, -otatik, -otatik</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Loc. Genitive</td>
<td>-ko, -go</td>
<td>-tako</td>
<td>-tako</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### b) Consonant Stems

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>CASE</th>
<th>PROPER NOUNS</th>
<th>INARTIC. COMMON NOUNS &amp; ADJS., DETS. &amp; PRONOUNS</th>
<th>ARTICULATE COMMON NOUNS &amp; ADJS.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Absolutive</td>
<td>φ</td>
<td>φ</td>
<td>-a, -ak, -ok</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ergative</td>
<td>-ek</td>
<td>-ek</td>
<td>-ak, -ek, -ok</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dative</td>
<td>-i</td>
<td>-i</td>
<td>-ari, -oi, -oi</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pos. Genitive</td>
<td>-en</td>
<td>-en</td>
<td>-aren, -en, -on</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Comitative</td>
<td>-ekin</td>
<td>-ekin</td>
<td>-arekin, -ekin, -okin</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Instrumental</td>
<td>-ez, -etaz</td>
<td>-az, -ez, -oz</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Inessive</td>
<td>-etan</td>
<td>-etan</td>
<td>-etan</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Allative</td>
<td>-a</td>
<td>-tara</td>
<td>-tara, -otara, -otata</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ablatative</td>
<td>-tik, -tik</td>
<td>-tatik</td>
<td>-tika, -otatik, -otatik</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Loc. Genitive</td>
<td>-ko, -go</td>
<td>-tako</td>
<td>-tako</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**NOTE:** Stems in -a take the inflections for vowel stems, but the -a is dropped when these begin with a vowel, e.g. gauza, gauza-k, gauza-ri and so on through the articulate declension, singular gauz-a, gauz-ak, gauz-ari etc. (but gauza-ra, gauza-tik, gauza-ko), plural gauz-ak etc.
IRREGULARLY DECLIRED DETERMINERS AND PRONOUNS

Demonstratives:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SINGULAR</th>
<th>PLURAL</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1st.</td>
<td>2nd.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hau</td>
<td>hori</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>honek</td>
<td>horrek</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>honi</td>
<td>horri</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>honen</td>
<td>horren</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>honekin</td>
<td>horrekin</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>honetaz</td>
<td>horretaz</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>honetanan</td>
<td>horretana</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>honeztara</td>
<td>horretara</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>honeztaridik</td>
<td>horretatik</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>honeztarako</td>
<td>horretatoko</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

BAT and BATZUEK:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>bat</th>
<th>batzu, batzu(e)k</th>
<th>zerk</th>
<th>nor</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>batek</td>
<td>batzu(e)k</td>
<td>zeri</td>
<td>nori</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bati</td>
<td>batzuei, batzuri</td>
<td>zeren</td>
<td>noren</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>haten</td>
<td>batzu(r)en</td>
<td>zerekin</td>
<td>norekin</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>batekin</td>
<td>batzu(r)ekin</td>
<td>zertaz</td>
<td>nortaz</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>batez</td>
<td>batzue(ta)z</td>
<td>zertan</td>
<td>[noreengan]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bate(t)tan</td>
<td>batzu(e)tan</td>
<td>zertara</td>
<td>[noreenganan]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bate(t)ara</td>
<td>batzu(e)tara</td>
<td>zertatik</td>
<td>[norengandik]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bate(t)atik</td>
<td>batzu(e)atik</td>
<td>zertako</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bate(t)ako</td>
<td>batzu(e)tako</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Personal Pronouns:

| ni | hik | gur | zur | zu | zuek |
|    |     |     |     |    |      |
| nik|     |     |     |    |      |
| niri, neri, eni | hiri | guri | zur | zuei |
| nire, nere, ene  | hire | gure | zure | zuen |
| nirekin       | hirekin | gurekin | zurekin | zuekin |
| nitaz         | hitaz | gutaz | zutaz | zuetaz |
| [niregan, | [hiregan, | [guregan, | [zuregan, | [zuegan, |
| etc.]         | etc.] | etc.] | etc.] | etc.] |
**Grammar Summary 2:**

**Present Tense of Izan and Ukan**

**Present of Izan:**
- naiz, haiz, da, gara, zara, zarete, dira

**Present of Ukan**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Person 1</th>
<th>Person 2</th>
<th>Person 3</th>
<th>Person 4</th>
<th>Person 5</th>
<th>Person 6</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>haut</td>
<td>haut</td>
<td>haut</td>
<td>haut</td>
<td>haut</td>
<td>haut</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(XIK)</td>
<td>(HIK)</td>
<td>(HRIK)</td>
<td>(GUK)</td>
<td>(ZUK)</td>
<td>(ZUEK)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dait</td>
<td>dait</td>
<td>dait</td>
<td>dait</td>
<td>dait</td>
<td>dait</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(XIK)</td>
<td>(HIK)</td>
<td>(HRIK)</td>
<td>(GUK)</td>
<td>(ZUK)</td>
<td>(ZUEK)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>zaitzuk</td>
<td>zaitzuk</td>
<td>zaitzuk</td>
<td>zaitzuk</td>
<td>zaitzuk</td>
<td>zaitzuk</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(XIK)</td>
<td>(HIK)</td>
<td>(HRIK)</td>
<td>(GUK)</td>
<td>(ZUK)</td>
<td>(ZUEK)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>daituce</td>
<td>daituce</td>
<td>daituce</td>
<td>daituce</td>
<td>daituce</td>
<td>daituce</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(XIK)</td>
<td>(HIK)</td>
<td>(HRIK)</td>
<td>(GUK)</td>
<td>(ZUK)</td>
<td>(ZUEK)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>daituce</td>
<td>daituce</td>
<td>daituce</td>
<td>daituce</td>
<td>daituce</td>
<td>daituce</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(XIK)</td>
<td>(HIK)</td>
<td>(HRIK)</td>
<td>(GUK)</td>
<td>(ZUK)</td>
<td>(ZUEK)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>daituce</td>
<td>daituce</td>
<td>daituce</td>
<td>daituce</td>
<td>daituce</td>
<td>daituce</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(XIK)</td>
<td>(HIK)</td>
<td>(HRIK)</td>
<td>(GUK)</td>
<td>(ZUK)</td>
<td>(ZUEK)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>daituce</td>
<td>daituce</td>
<td>daituce</td>
<td>daituce</td>
<td>daituce</td>
<td>daituce</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(XIK)</td>
<td>(HIK)</td>
<td>(HRIK)</td>
<td>(GUK)</td>
<td>(ZUK)</td>
<td>(ZUEK)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>daituce</td>
<td>daituce</td>
<td>daituce</td>
<td>daituce</td>
<td>daituce</td>
<td>daituce</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>INDIRECT OBJECT</td>
<td>Person 1</td>
<td>Person 2</td>
<td>Person 3</td>
<td>Person 4</td>
<td>Person 5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-----------------</td>
<td>----------</td>
<td>----------</td>
<td>----------</td>
<td>----------</td>
<td>----------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(NI)</td>
<td>natzaik/</td>
<td>natzaio</td>
<td>natzaizu</td>
<td>natzaizue</td>
<td>natzaie</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(HI)</td>
<td>hatzait</td>
<td>hatzaio</td>
<td>hatzaigu</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(HURA)</td>
<td>zalt</td>
<td>zaik/zai</td>
<td>zaiga</td>
<td>zaizu</td>
<td>zaizue</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(GU)</td>
<td>gatzaizik/</td>
<td>gatzaizikio</td>
<td>gatzaizikuzu</td>
<td>gatzaizikzue</td>
<td>gatzaizikie</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(ZU)</td>
<td>zatzaizik</td>
<td>zatzaizikio</td>
<td>zatzaizikigu</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(ZUEK)</td>
<td>zatzaizikidate</td>
<td>zatzaizikio</td>
<td>zatzaizikigu</td>
<td>zatzaizikigu</td>
<td>zatzaizikio</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(HALEK)</td>
<td>zaizkit</td>
<td>zaizkiz/</td>
<td>zaizkigo</td>
<td>zaizkizu</td>
<td>zaizkizue</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DIRECT OBJECT</td>
<td>I N D I R E C T O B J E C T</td>
<td>Person 1</td>
<td>Person 2</td>
<td>Person 3</td>
<td>Person 4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>---------------</td>
<td>--------------------------</td>
<td>----------</td>
<td>---------</td>
<td>---------</td>
<td>---------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>6</td>
<td>diat/dinat</td>
<td>dizkiat/dizkinat</td>
<td>diot</td>
<td>dizkiot</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(NIK)</td>
<td></td>
<td>didak</td>
<td>dizkidak</td>
<td>diok</td>
<td>dizkiek</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td>6</td>
<td>didan</td>
<td>dizkidan</td>
<td>dion</td>
<td>dizkion</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(HIK)</td>
<td></td>
<td>dit</td>
<td>dizkit</td>
<td>dio</td>
<td>dizkio</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>6</td>
<td>diagu/dinagu</td>
<td>dizkiagu/dizkinagu</td>
<td>diogu</td>
<td>dizkioagua</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(HARK)</td>
<td></td>
<td>didazu</td>
<td>dizkidazu</td>
<td>diozu</td>
<td>dizkioza</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>6</td>
<td>didazue</td>
<td>dizkidazue</td>
<td>diozu</td>
<td>dizkiozue</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(ZUK)</td>
<td></td>
<td>didate</td>
<td>dizkiate/dizkinate</td>
<td>diote</td>
<td>dizkioete</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>6</td>
<td>didate</td>
<td>dizkiate/dizkinate</td>
<td>diote</td>
<td>dizkioete</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Person 1</td>
<td>Person 2</td>
<td>Person 3</td>
<td>Person 4</td>
<td>Person 5</td>
<td>Person 5'</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>----------</td>
<td>----------</td>
<td>----------</td>
<td>----------</td>
<td>----------</td>
<td>-----------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(NIK)</td>
<td>hindudan</td>
<td>nuen</td>
<td></td>
<td>zintudan</td>
<td>zintuztedan</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(HIK)</td>
<td>tintuan/</td>
<td>huen</td>
<td>tintuan/</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>ninduan</td>
<td></td>
<td>tintuan</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(HARK)</td>
<td>ninduen</td>
<td>hinduen</td>
<td>zuen</td>
<td>zintuen</td>
<td>zintuzten</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(GUK)</td>
<td>hindugun</td>
<td>genuen</td>
<td></td>
<td>zintugun</td>
<td>zintuztegun</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(ZUK)</td>
<td>ninduzun</td>
<td>zenuen</td>
<td>gintuzun</td>
<td></td>
<td>zentuen</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(ZUEK)</td>
<td>ninduzuen</td>
<td>zenuten</td>
<td>gintuzuen</td>
<td></td>
<td>zentuzten</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(HAEK)</td>
<td>hinduten</td>
<td>zuten</td>
<td>gintuzten</td>
<td>zintuzten</td>
<td>zintuzten</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Person 1</td>
<td>Person 2</td>
<td>Person 3</td>
<td>Person 4</td>
<td>Person 5</td>
<td>Person 5'</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>---------------</td>
<td>---------------</td>
<td>---------------</td>
<td>---------------</td>
<td>---------------</td>
<td>---------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(NI)</td>
<td>nintzaian</td>
<td>nintzaion</td>
<td>nintzaizun</td>
<td>nintzaizun</td>
<td>nintzaizun</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(HI)</td>
<td>hintzaidan</td>
<td>hintzaion</td>
<td>hintzaignun</td>
<td>hintzaignun</td>
<td>hintzaignun</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(HURA)</td>
<td>zitzaidan</td>
<td>zitzaiion</td>
<td>zitzaiagun</td>
<td>zitzaiagun</td>
<td>zitzaiagun</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(GU)</td>
<td>gintaizkian</td>
<td>gintaizkion</td>
<td>gintaizkizun</td>
<td>gintaizkizun</td>
<td>gintaizkizun</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(ZU)</td>
<td>zintaizkidan</td>
<td>zintaizkion</td>
<td>zintaizkigun</td>
<td>zintaizkigun</td>
<td>zintaizkigun</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(ZUEK)</td>
<td>zintaizkidaten</td>
<td>zintaizkioten</td>
<td>zintaizkiguten</td>
<td>zintaizkiguten</td>
<td>zintaizkioten</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(HAEK)</td>
<td>zitaizkidan</td>
<td>zitaizkian</td>
<td>zitaizkigun</td>
<td>zitaizkigun</td>
<td>zitaizkigun</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DIRECT OBJECT</td>
<td>INDIRECT OBJECT</td>
<td>Person 1</td>
<td>Person 2</td>
<td>Person 3</td>
<td>Person 4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>---------------</td>
<td>-----------------</td>
<td>----------</td>
<td>----------</td>
<td>----------</td>
<td>----------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(NIK)</td>
<td></td>
<td>3</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>6</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>niam</td>
<td>nion</td>
<td>nizun</td>
<td>nizuen</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>nizkian</td>
<td>nizkion</td>
<td>nizkizun</td>
<td>nizkizuen</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(HIK)</td>
<td></td>
<td>3</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>6</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>hidan</td>
<td>hion</td>
<td>higun</td>
<td>hien</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>hizkidan</td>
<td>hizkion</td>
<td>hizkigun</td>
<td>hizkien</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(HARK)</td>
<td></td>
<td>3</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>6</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>zidan</td>
<td>zikan</td>
<td>zion</td>
<td>zizun</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>zikidan</td>
<td>zikkiian</td>
<td>zikkion</td>
<td>zikkizun</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(GUK)</td>
<td></td>
<td>3</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>6</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>genian</td>
<td>genion</td>
<td>genizun</td>
<td>genizuen</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>genizkian</td>
<td>genizkion</td>
<td>genizkizun</td>
<td>genizkizuen</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(ZUK)</td>
<td></td>
<td>3</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>6</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>zenidan</td>
<td>zenion</td>
<td>zenigen</td>
<td>zenikien</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>zenizkidan</td>
<td>zenizkion</td>
<td>zenizkigun</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(ZUEK)</td>
<td></td>
<td>3</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>6</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>zedaten</td>
<td>zeduten</td>
<td>zeduten</td>
<td>zeduten</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>zenizkiden</td>
<td>zenizkoten</td>
<td>zeniogen</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(HATEK)</td>
<td></td>
<td>3</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>6</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>zidan</td>
<td>zikaden</td>
<td>zikaden</td>
<td>zikaden</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>zikidan</td>
<td>zikioten</td>
<td>zikioten</td>
<td>zikioten</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
GRAMMAR SUMMARY 4: OTHER TENSES OF IZAN AND UKAN (COMMONEST FORMS ONLY)

HYPOTHETIC TENSE

HYPOTHETIC OF IZAN:
(ba)nintz, (ba)hintz, (ba)litz, (ba)gina, (ba)zina, (ba)zinote, (ba)lira

HYPOTHETIC OF UKAN:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Person 3</th>
<th>Person 6</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>(ba)nu</td>
<td>(ba)nitu</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(ba)hu</td>
<td>(ba)hitu</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(ba)lu</td>
<td>(ba)litu</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(ba)genu</td>
<td>(ba)genitu</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(ba)zenu</td>
<td>(ba)zenitu</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(ba)zenute</td>
<td>(ba)zenituzte</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(ba)lute</td>
<td>(ba)lituzte</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

PRESENT POTENTIAL TENSE

PRESENT POTENTIAL OF IZAN:
naizateke, haizateke, dateke, garateke, zarateke, zaratekete, dirateke

PRESENT POTENTIAL OF UKAN:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Person 3</th>
<th>Person 6</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>duket</td>
<td>dituzket</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dukek/-n</td>
<td>dituzkek/-n</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>duke</td>
<td>dituzke</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dukegu</td>
<td>dituzkegu</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dukezu</td>
<td>dituzkezu</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dukezue</td>
<td>dituzkezue</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dukete</td>
<td>dituzketec</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
(Grammar Summary 4: Other Tenses of IZAN and UKAN)

PAST POTENTIAL TENSE

PAST POTENTIAL OF IZAN:
nintzatekeen, hintzatekeen, zatekeen, ginatekeen, zinatekeen, zinateketen, ziratekeen

PAST POTENTIAL OF UKAN:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>DIREクト OBJECT</th>
<th>Person 3</th>
<th>Person 6</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>nukeen</td>
<td>nituzkeen</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hukceen</td>
<td>hituzkeen</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>zukeen</td>
<td>zituzkeen</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>genukeen</td>
<td>genituzkeen</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>zenukeen</td>
<td>zenituzkeen</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>zenuketen</td>
<td>zenituzketen</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>zuketen</td>
<td>zituzketen</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

HYPOTHETIC POTENTIAL TENSE

HYPOTHETIC POTENTIAL OF IZAN:
nintzateke, hintzateke, litzateke, ginateke, zinateke, zinatekete, lirateke

HYPOTHETIC POTENTIAL OF UKAN:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>DIREクト OBJECT</th>
<th>Person 3</th>
<th>Person 6</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>nuke</td>
<td>nituzke</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>huke</td>
<td>hituzke</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>luke</td>
<td>lituzke</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>genuke</td>
<td>genituzke</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>zenuke</td>
<td>zenituzke</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>zenukete</td>
<td>zenituzkete</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>lukete</td>
<td>lituzkete</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

IMPERATIVE TENSE

In modern Basque, the simple imperative tense of IZAN and UKAN is obsolete. A remnant of the imperative of IZAN (third person singular) is seen in hala biz, "so be it."
GRAMMAR SUMMARY 5:
THE AORIST AUXILIARIES "EDIN" AND "EZAN"
(COMMONEST FORMS ONLY)

PRESENT TENSE

PRESENT OF "EDIN":
nadi(n), hadi(n), dadi(n), gaitez(en), zaitez(en),
zaitezte(n), daitez(en)

PRESENT OF "EZAN":

defzada(n)\dagger
defzaz(n)\dagger/
defzana(n)\dagger
 deza(n)
defzagu(n)
defzazu(n)
defzaze(n)
defzate(n)
defzatze(n)

\dagger In the conditional mode:
ba-dezat, ba-dezak/ba-dezan,
ba-deza, ba-ditzat,
ba-ditzak/ba-ditzan,
ba-ditza

PAST TENSE

PAST OF "EDIN":
nendin, hendin, zedin, gintezen, zintezen, zintezen,
zitezen

PAST OF "EZAN":

defzane(n)
defzaz(e)n
defzazu(n)
defzaze(n)
defzate(n)
defzatze(n)

DIRECT OBJECT

Person 3  Person 6

nitzan
hitzan
zitzan
genitzan
zenitzan
zenitzaten
zitzaten
(Grammar Summary 5: The Aorist Auxiliaries "EDIN" and "EZAN")

HYPOTHETIC TENSE

HYPOTHETIC OF "EDIN":
(ba)nendi, (ba)hendi, (ba)ledi, (ba)gintez, (ba)zintez,
(ba)zintezte, (ba)litez

HYPOTHETIC OF "EZAN":

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>DIRECT OBJECT</th>
<th>Person 3</th>
<th>Person 6</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>(ba)neza</td>
<td>(ba)nitza</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(ba)heza</td>
<td>(ba)hitza</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(ba)leza</td>
<td>(ba)litza</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(ba)geneza</td>
<td>(ba)genitza</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(ba)zeneza</td>
<td>(ba)zenitza</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(ba)zenezate</td>
<td>(ba)zenitza</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(ba)lezate</td>
<td>(ba)litzate</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

PRESENT POTENTIAL TENSE

PRESENT POTENTIAL OF "EDIN":
naitke, haiteke, daiteke, gaitezke, zaitezke, zaitezkete, daitezke

PRESENT POTENTIAL OF "EZAN":

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>DIRECT OBJECT</th>
<th>Person 3</th>
<th>Person 6</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>dezak et</td>
<td>ditzak et</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dezakek/-n</td>
<td>ditzakek/-n</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dezake</td>
<td>ditzake</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dezakegu</td>
<td>ditzakegu</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dezakezu</td>
<td>ditzakezu</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dezakezue</td>
<td>ditzakezue</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dezak ete</td>
<td>ditzak ete</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
(Grammar Summary 5: The Aorist Auxiliaries "EDIN" and "EZAN")

PAST POTENTIAL TENSE

PAST POTENTIAL OF "EDIN":
ninteko, hinteko, ziteko, gintezko, zintezko, zintezketek, zitezko

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>DIRECT OBJECT</th>
<th>Person 3</th>
<th>Person 6</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>nezakeko</td>
<td>nitzakeko</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bezakeko</td>
<td>hitzakeko</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>zezakeko</td>
<td>zitzakeko</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>genezakeko</td>
<td>genitzakeko</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>zenezakeko</td>
<td>zenitzakeko</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>zenezaketo</td>
<td>zenitzaketo</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>zezaketo</td>
<td>zitzaketo</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

HYPOTHETIC POTENTIAL TENSE

HYPOTHETIC POTENTIAL OF "EDIN":
ninteko, hinteko, liteko, gintezko, zintezko, zintezketo, litezko

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>DIRECT OBJECT</th>
<th>Person 3</th>
<th>Person 6</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>nezako</td>
<td>nitzako</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bezako</td>
<td>hitzako</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>lezako</td>
<td>litzako</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>genezako</td>
<td>genitzako</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>zenezako</td>
<td>zenitzako</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>zenezaketo</td>
<td>zenitzaketo</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>lezaketo</td>
<td>litzaketo</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
IMPERATIVE TENSE

IMPERATIVE OF "EDIN":
—, hadi, bedi, guitezen, zaitz, zaitezte, bitez

### IMPERATIVE OF "EZAN":

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>DIRECT OBJECT</th>
<th>Person 3</th>
<th>Person 6</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>ezak/-n</td>
<td>itzak/-n</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>beza</td>
<td>bitza</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dezagun</td>
<td>ditzagun</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ezazu</td>
<td>itzazu</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ezazue</td>
<td>itzazue</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bezate</td>
<td>bitzate</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### IMPERATIVE OF "EZAN" WITH DATIVE OBJECT:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>DIRECT OBJECT</th>
<th>INDIRECT OBJECT</th>
<th>Person 3</th>
<th>Person 4</th>
<th>Person 6</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Person 1</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(HIK)</td>
<td>3 iezadak/-n</td>
<td>iezaiok/-n</td>
<td>iezagak/-n</td>
<td>iezalek/-n</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>6 iezazkidak/-n</td>
<td>iezazkio/-n</td>
<td>iezazkiguk/-n</td>
<td>iezazkiek/-n</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(ZUK)</td>
<td>3 iezadazu</td>
<td>iezaiozu</td>
<td>iezaguzu</td>
<td>iezaitzu</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>6 iezazkidazu</td>
<td>iezazkiozue</td>
<td>iezazkiguzue</td>
<td>iezazkiezue</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(ZUEK)</td>
<td>3 iezadazue</td>
<td>iezaiozue</td>
<td>iezaguezue</td>
<td>iezaitzue</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>6 iezazkidazue</td>
<td>iezazkiozue</td>
<td>iezazkiguzue</td>
<td>iezazkizezue</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
GRAMMAR SUMMARY 6: SYNTHESIS OF THE TENSE SYSTEM

The tenses of a Basque verb belong to three types: (1) a limited number of simple tenses; (2) a larger number of compound tenses; (3) various periphrastic tenses. (see 11:1). Only a very few verbs possess simple tenses, and only some of the simple tenses existing are widely used in the modern spoken language. Consequently the compound tenses are fundamental to a practical mastery of the Basque verb; and to understand the compound tenses is to understand the conjugation of the auxiliary verbs with which they are formed. See GS2-5 for conjugation tables of the four basic auxiliaries: IZAN and UXAN, "EDIN" and "EZAN".

There are seven simple tenses in Basque, and they can be classified into three true tenses (present, past, hypothetic) and three moods (indicative, potential, imperative), as follows:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>PRESENT INDICATIVE</th>
<th>PRESENT POTENTIAL</th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>PAST INDICATIVE</td>
<td>PAST POTENTIAL</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>HYPOTHETIC INDICATIVE</td>
<td>HYPOTHETIC POTENTIAL</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

We can illustrate this system with the forms of a verb that possesses simple tenses, such as ETOETRI "come" or EIARERI "bring", but in practice you must remember that many of these forms are not current in conversational Basque. Let us take the third-person-singular forms of these two verbs:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>INDICATIVE</th>
<th>POTENTIAL</th>
<th>IMPERATIVE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>PRESENT</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dator</td>
<td>datorke</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dakar</td>
<td>dakarke</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PAST</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>zetorren</td>
<td>zetorken</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>zekarren</td>
<td>zekarken</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>HYPOTHETIC</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(ba)letor</td>
<td>letorke</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(ba)lekar</td>
<td>lekarke</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Of the forms given in this synopsis, only dator, dakar, zetorren and zekarren are likely to be heard in speech; the remaining forms may occur in literature.
(Grammar Summary 6: Synthesis of the Tense System)

In everyday Basque the full set of tenses set forth above only appears in the auxiliary verbs; even in these, the imperative is lacking in IZAN and UKAN, and certain other forms are unknown throughout most of the country. Here is the synopsis for the third-person-singular of the auxiliaries IZAN, UKAN, "EDIN" and "EZAN":

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>TENSE</th>
<th>INDICATIVE</th>
<th>POTENTIAL</th>
<th>IMPERATIVE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>PRESENT</td>
<td>da</td>
<td>dateke†</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>du</td>
<td>duket</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>dadi(n)</td>
<td>daiteke</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>dezak(n)</td>
<td>desake</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PAST</td>
<td>zen</td>
<td>zatekeen</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>zuen</td>
<td>zukeen</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>zedin</td>
<td>zitekeen</td>
<td>bedi</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>zezan</td>
<td>zozakeen</td>
<td>beza</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>HYPOTHETIC</td>
<td>(bal)litz</td>
<td>litzateke</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>(bal)lu</td>
<td>luke</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>(bal)ledi†</td>
<td>liteke</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>(bal)lezat</td>
<td>lezake</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The four forms marked † are unknown in Gipuzkoan dialect.

Used independently as main verbs, IZAN generally means "to be" and UKAN is often equivalent to "to have." "EDIN" and "EZAN" exist as auxiliaries only; they possess only conjugated forms, and so have no compound tenses.

As auxiliaries, IZAN and UKAN have the same aspectual value; the former is used when the verb is intransitive, the latter when it is transitive. "EDIN" and "EZAN" likewise have identical aspectual value; "EDIN" is intransitive and "EZAN" is transitive. "EDIN" and "EZAN" are used to express what we have termed the aorist aspect, so we shall call them the "aorist auxiliaries"; IZAN and UKAN, on the other hand, are the "nonaorist auxiliaries." There are three nonaorist aspects: habitual (11:1), perfect (13:1) and future (15:1). These aspects use the same auxiliaries, and are distinguished from each other by the unconjugated form of the main verb, which is the gerund in -N for the habitual, the participle for the perfect, and the future participle for the future, e.g. etortzen da, etorri da, etorriko da. The aorist aspect, on the other hand, is identified by the use of the aorist auxiliary, while the main verb is in the infinitive (the supine in western dialects, see 14:2): etor dadi(n) (western colloquial etordi dadi(n)).

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>ASPECT</th>
<th>Main Verb</th>
<th>Auxiliaries</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Habitual</td>
<td>gerund in -N</td>
<td>IZAN, UKAN</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Perfect</td>
<td>participle</td>
<td>IZAN, UKAN</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Future</td>
<td>future participle</td>
<td>IZAN, UKAN</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Aorist</td>
<td>infinitive</td>
<td>&quot;EDIN&quot;, &quot;UKAN&quot;</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
(Grammar Summary 6: Synthesis of the Tense System)

In theory at least, each of the four aspects of Basque compound tenses can be combined with all seven of the simple tenses given above by putting the auxiliary in the appropriate tense, if the restrictions mentioned are respected (thus the only imperative is the aorist imperative, because only the aorist auxiliaries possess imperative forms today). So Basque in theory has twenty-five compound tenses; in reality, the number that are distinguished systematically in any one variety of Basque is somewhat smaller. Here is a reference list of them:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>TENSE TYPE</th>
<th>EXAMPLE</th>
<th>REMARKS</th>
<th>SEE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>A) INDICATIVE MOOD, NONAORIST ASPECTS</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Present Habitual</td>
<td>etortzen da</td>
<td>11:1</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Present Perfect</td>
<td>etorri da</td>
<td>13:1, 21:1</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Future</td>
<td>etorriko da</td>
<td>15:1</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Past Habitual</td>
<td>etortzen zen</td>
<td>22:1</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Past Perfect</td>
<td>etorri zen</td>
<td>21:1</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Future-in-the-Past</td>
<td>etorriko zen</td>
<td>25:2</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hypothetic Habitual</td>
<td>etortzen balitz</td>
<td>31:note 12</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(cond. mode only)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hypothetic Perfect</td>
<td>etorri balitz</td>
<td>25:1</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(cond. mode only)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hypothetic Future</td>
<td>etorriko balitz</td>
<td>23:1</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(cond. mode only)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### B) POTENTIAL MOOD, NONAORIST ASPECTS

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>TENSE</th>
<th>EXAMPLE</th>
<th>REMARKS</th>
<th>See:</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Present Habitual</td>
<td>etortzen dateke</td>
<td>rare</td>
<td>24:1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>he will/may come</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Present Perfect</td>
<td>etorri dateke</td>
<td>rare</td>
<td>24:1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>he will/may have come</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Future</td>
<td>etorriko dateke</td>
<td>rare</td>
<td>24:1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>he may come</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Past Habitual</td>
<td>etortzen zatekeen</td>
<td>rare</td>
<td>24:1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>he may have come</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Past Perfect</td>
<td>etorri zatekeen</td>
<td>rare</td>
<td>24:1, 25:2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>he would/might have come</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Future-in-the-Past</td>
<td>etorriko zatekeen</td>
<td>rare</td>
<td>24:1, 25:2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>he would/might have come</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hypothetic Habitual</td>
<td>etortzen litzateke</td>
<td>rare</td>
<td>24:1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>he would come</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hypothetic Perfect</td>
<td>etorri litzateke</td>
<td>very rare</td>
<td>24:1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>he would have come</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hypothetic Future</td>
<td>etorriko litzateke</td>
<td>rare</td>
<td>24:1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>he would come</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### C) INDICATIVE MOOD, AORIST ASPECT

**Present:**
- Subjunctive (conj. mode) etor dadin 29:1
  - so that he comes
- Optative (comp. mode) etor dadila 29:1
  - he should come
- Aor. Conditional (cond. mode) etor badadi rare 29:1
  - if he should come

**Past:**
- Subjunctive (conj. mode) etor zedin 29:1
  - so that he would come
- Optative (comp. mode) etor zedila 29:1
  - he should come

**Hypothetic:**
- Subjunctive (conj. mode) etor ledin rare 29:1
  - so that he would come
- Aor. Conditional (cond. mode) etor buledi 23:1, 29:1
  - if he came
(Grammar Summary 6: Synthesis of the Tense System)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>TENSE</th>
<th>EXAMPLE</th>
<th>REMARKS</th>
<th>See:</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>D) POTENTIAL MOOD, AGRIEST ASPECT</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Present:</td>
<td>etor daiteke</td>
<td>28:1</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>he can come</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Past</td>
<td>etor zitekeen</td>
<td>28:1</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>he could have come</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hypothetical</td>
<td>etor liteke</td>
<td>28:1</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>he could come</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

| **E) IMPERATIVE MOOD** |                  |         | 30:1 |
| etor hadi!, etor bedi! |                  |         |      |
| come!, let him come!  |                  |         |      |
GRAMMAR SUMMARY 7:
MODES OF SUBORDINATION

There are four modes of subordination, in addition to the independent mode; a conjugated verb form must be in one or another of these five modes.

The independent mode (dator, etortzen da) is used:
- in main (unsubordinated) clauses: Beti etortzen da hona.
- sometimes with certain subordinating conjunctions, e.g. ze.

The conjunctive mode (datorrentzen, etortzen den) is used in subordinate clauses in which no other mode is particularly called for. Its uses include:
- with numerous conjunctions:
  (a) postpositive, e.g. currerik, arte, balo leben, bitartean, ordoren, bezala(xe), legaz, olason, balo, neurrian, -ez gero.
  (b) prepositive, e.g. nabiz (eto), ea.
- with declension suffixes functioning like conjunctions, e.g. -ean, -etik, -eko, -ez.
- indirect questions: Ez dakit noiz etorriko den; Ez dakit etorriko den.
- in exclamations and other clause types introduced by a question word: Zer polita den! Hona hemen zer pentsatzen dudan.
- with -ik it replaces the completive in indirect statements subordinated to certain verbs in the negative: Ez dut uste etorriko denik.
- to form the subjunctive: Ekarri dut ikus dezazun.
- to form the first-person imperative: Goazen!
- in relative clauses: Etorri den gizone frantsesa da.

The completive mode (datorrEA, etortzen dELA) is used:
- in indirect statements: Uste dut etorriko dela.
- in circumstance clauses, with or without -rik: Ikusten dudala(rick), zerbait esan behar diot.
- with -ko,
  (a) to express "because": Etorri da zerbait egin behar duelako.
  (b) as an adjectivalized circumstantial clause or indirect statement: delako dirua "the money in question"; hura etorri delako berria "the news that he has come."
- with -koon, meaning "in the belief that": Itxaron nion, etorriko zelakoan "I waited for him, expecting him to come"; Etorriko delakoan nago "I think he'll come."
- to form the optative: Datorrena datorrela! "Let what comes come!";
- Esango diot etor dadilla.
- in exclamations with hau, etc.: Hori bai kotxoa erosia duzula! "That's some car you've bought!"
(Grammar Summary 7: Modes of Subordination)

The conditional mode (BA dator, etortzen BAda) is used:
- to translate "if" in conditions, alone or with baldin: (baldin) badator, etorriko ez (baldin) balitz, etc.
- followed by bezala, to translate "as if": etorri balitz bezala "as if he had come."
- followed by ere, to translate either "even if" or "although": Etortzen bada ere, beranduegi izango da "Even if he comes, it will be too late"; Lan egin behar dut, ga ur igande baka ere "I have to work, although today is Sunday."

The coordinative mode (BAIt dator, etortzen BAIt da) is used:
- to express cause or reason: Ez dator ga ur, igandea BAIt da.
- with certain prepositive conjunctions, e.g., noto, non, zeren, zein: Hain da pobre, non ez bait da mahairik bere etxe "He's so poor that he doesn't have a table in his house" (with these conjunctions the conjunctive mode may be used instead).
- to express various circumstantial relationships between two clauses, or between a sentence and its context: Hori bait da
  nik nahi du gane! "That's what I want!"
BASQUE-ENGLISH VOCABULARY

For abbreviations, see the beginning of the book.
With the occasional exception, this vocabulary only lists words that appear in the book, although they may not occur in all the senses given here. Numbers following English translations in parentheses refer to units, and normally indicate the first occurrence or that in which the word is first explained.

A dot (*) preceding a word indicates that it is given as a vocabulary item in the lessons.
The symbol + indicates archaic words appearing in Unit 40.

In the second, English-Basque vocabulary, we have included words given in the vocabularies of the text, together with some other words that it is thought will be particularly useful to the student. Needless to say, these word lists cannot take the place of a good dictionary.
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Word</th>
<th>Meaning</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>A</td>
<td>a u. conj. v. (Inter. marker, see U.1)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>abandonatu vt.</td>
<td>abandon (37)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>*ahar n.</td>
<td>1. remnant. 2. eta v. and so on, etcetera (33)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>abenda n.</td>
<td>December (9)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>aberats adj.</td>
<td>rich (23)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>abere n.</td>
<td>animal (esp. farm animal) (37)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>abertzale adj.</td>
<td>nationalist, patriotic. — n. nationalist, patriot (33)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>abesbatza n.</td>
<td>choir (36)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>abian adv.</td>
<td>going, coming (39)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>abilatu vt.</td>
<td>set out, start out (18)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>abriko n.</td>
<td>coat (32)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>abuztu n.</td>
<td>August (9)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>adar n.</td>
<td>1. branch. 2. horn (37)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>adarkada n.</td>
<td>butt, thrust (of animal with its horn) (37)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>adierazi vt(d)</td>
<td>express (32)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>adin n.</td>
<td>age (36)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>adina c.j./dt.</td>
<td>as much as, as many as; enough (22)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>adio int.</td>
<td>goodbye (27)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>adiskide n.</td>
<td>friend (26)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>aditu vt.</td>
<td>1. hear; understand (20). 2. (Imp.) adizu! hey! I say! (3)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>aditz n. verb</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>adoratu vt.</td>
<td>worship (13)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>afaldu vt.</td>
<td>have dinner (i.e. the evening meal) (11)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>afari n.</td>
<td>dinner, evening meal (25)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>agerl adv.</td>
<td>1. apparent, in evidence (38). 2. &quot;izan vt. appear; be evident (18)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>agerti vt.</td>
<td>appear, show up (26). — vt(d). show (38)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>agian adv.</td>
<td>perhaps; surely (16)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>agur int.</td>
<td>1. goodbye. 2. hail! greetings! (15).  — n. 1. fare- well. 2. greeting(s) (31)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>agurtu vt(d)</td>
<td>greet (32)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>*ahal np.</td>
<td>1. may (see U.34). 2. I hope (see U.34). 3. atal — 1. vukan vt. can (see U.15). 2. &quot;ik eta (+ superlative) as ... as (I/you/...) can, as ... as possible (37).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ahalmen n.</td>
<td>ability; power (37)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>abantzi or abatzu vt., vt.</td>
<td>forget (31)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ahizpa n. sister (of a girl or woman) (11)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>aho n.</td>
<td>1. mouth (32). 2. &quot;az by word of mouth, orally.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>aipatu vt.</td>
<td>mention; name (35)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>aine n. air</td>
<td>(31)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>alsa adv.</td>
<td>at ease (36)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>aita n. father</td>
<td>(4)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>aitona n.</td>
<td>grandfather (27)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>aitzalaka n.</td>
<td>excuse (33)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>aitzing pp.</td>
<td>1. before (31). 2. &quot;oan etc. (syn. of aurre(an)) (27)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>aizkora n. axe</td>
<td>(10)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>akabo int.</td>
<td>that's the end of (it) (32)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>alkonpainatu vt.</td>
<td>(syn. of lagundu 2) (39)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>akiu lu n. good</td>
<td>(37)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>*al (inter. marker, see U.1)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ala c.j. or (exclusive) (5)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>alaba n. daughter</td>
<td>(22)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>alabaina c.j.</td>
<td>1. however. 2. indeed (33)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>alai adj. merry, happy, gay (25)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>alajaina int. by Jove! (37)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>albo pp. man etc.</td>
<td>beside (19)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>aldapa n. slope, hill (28)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>aldatu vt., vt.</td>
<td>change (28)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>alde n. side, area, part (see U.6). — pp. for, in favor of (19)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>aldebat adv.</td>
<td>(syn. of erabat) (30)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>alderdi n.</td>
<td>1. side, direction (37). 2. (political) party (27).</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
aldi n. 1. period, time, while
(22), 2. time, e.g. htruz, three times, htrugarron "ez, for
the third time (31).
aldiz cji. (syn. of borriz cji.)
(34).
alegratu vi., vt. (syn. of poztu)
(39).
alfer adj. 1. useless, 2. idle,
lazy (21), 3. vrak in vain, use-
lessly, no use (34). —n. idler, loafer (7).
olkar velkar.
altzatu vi., get up, rise (10).
—vt. raise.
am n. mother (4).
amaitu vi., vt. (syn. of bukatu)
(17).
amerika pn. America (see U.22).
amerikano adj., n. American (1).
amets n. 1. dream (27), 2. v egin
vt. (m. com.) dream (of/about).
amodio n. love (30).
amona n. grandmother (29).
amorratu adj. furious (37).
amorrazio n. Fury (37).
amaria n. brother (9).
andre n. lady; Mrs.; madam (24).
andregai n. fiancée (27).
anitz cji. (syn. of asko) (27).
anormal adj. abnormal (37).
antz n. 1. resemblance, 2. va
denez it seems, it would seem,
like, in the manner of (27). 4.
veko similar (36).
apaiz n. priest (21).
aparkatu vi., vt. park (19).
aparte pp. in. obt. besides,
apart from; far from (8,39).
aperitibo n. aperitif (36).
aprilin n. April (9).
apropos adj. (syn. of egoki)
(36).
apuntatu vi., put one’s name down,
sign on (35). —vt. note down,
make a note of.
aptun e. note, e.g. eskolako
aptunek, class notes (32).
apurtu vi., vt. (syn. of puskatu)
(19).
ar der. suf. indicating place of
origin, etc. (see U.35).
araba pn. Araba, Basque province-
south of Bizkaia and west of Na-
varre, bordering on La Rioja and
Old Castile to the south and west
respectively (6).
arabar adj., n. native of Araba.
(35).
arantza n. thorn (26).
arazo n. question, matter, issue
(24).
arbola n. tree (12).
ardi n. sheep (10).
ar do n. wine (2); v beltza red
wine, v zuria white wine, v go-
rria rosé wine.
argazki n. photograph, picture
(36).
lit, clear, bright. 2. v dago
it’s clear, it’s obvious.
argitaratu vt. publish, bring out
(36).
argitu vt. 1. illumine (39). 2.
clarify, explain.
ar i izan vi. be occupied, busy
oneself, be doing (see U.7).
arin adj. light [not heavy]. —
adv. fast (37).
aritu vi. 1. busy oneself. 2.
talk, consider (23).
armada n. army (10).
armairu n. cupboard; closet (9).
arrain n. fish (5).
arraioa int. goodness me!, well
I’ll be!, what the...?! (15).
arrankatu vt. start (a car) (19).
arrantzale n. fisherman (8).
arrapalada n. rush, bustle (37).
arraro adj. strange, odd (18).
arrasto n. trace, track, e.g. arrastorik ez, not a trace (18).
arrastaldie n. afternoon (3).
arraultze n. egg (7).
arraultzopil n. onelet (10).
arrazoi n. 1. reason. 2. ə(a) ukan vt. be right (18).
arreba n. sister (of a boy or man) (9).
arren Int. please! (39). —cj. 1. (u. sup.) although (14). 2. (u. vn.) in order to.
arropia n. clothes (9).
arrotza adj. strange; foreign (33).
arte pp. 1. until (14). 2. van etc. between, among (12). 3. van (syn. of bitartean).
arte n. art (35).
arzaizain n. shepherd (26).
asanblada n. meeting, assembly (23).
askatasun n. freedom (33).
askatu vt. 1. loosen; untangle. 2. free, liberate (9).
aski adv., dt. enough; quite (a lot), e.g. denbororik oski, enough time (29).
asko adv. 1. a lot, much, many (2). 2. sətan many times, often (11). —adv. 1. very much, a lot.
2. sə much (u. comparatives) (24). 3. very, quite (36).
asmatu vt. 1. think of; make up; invent (7). 2. guess; suspect.
asmo n. 1. idea, intention, plan (17). 2. əva ukan vt. intend, plan.
aspaldia adv. 1. some time ago; long ago (22). 2. van or ə honstan recently.
aspirina n. aspirin (7).
aste n. week (7); əbate a week.
asteartse n. Tuesday (7).
asteazken n. Wednesday (7).
astebukaera n. weekend (26).
astelgen n. Monday (7).
astoa n. donkey, mule, ass (25).
atari n. doorway (37).
ate n. door (8).
atera vi. go out, come out, leave; turn out (10). —vt. take out.
aterabide n. way out; solution (30).
ateraldi n. 1. outing, trip (35). 2. witty remark.
ateratu =atera.
atesi n. 1. pleasant, nice (2). 2. sə ukan vt. like, enjoy (21).
atzapat n. claw (31).
atze pp., adv. van etc. behind (12).
atzenaen vt. 1. get hold of. 2. find (33). 3. catch.
atzerakoi adj. backwards, reactionary (35).
atzo adv. yesterday (27).
aurkako n. 1. chance, opportunity (19). 2. choice.
aurkak n. chair; seat; bench (9).
aupa int. hi! (3).
aurka pp. against (35).
aurkeztu vt. present (35).
aurkitu vt. exist, be found, be (8). —vt. find (9).
aurpegia n. face (16).
aurre pp. 1. van etc. in front of (12). 2. ətik before (22). —adv. 1. van in front; ora forwards, a-head; ətik from in front. 2. ətik beforehand.
aurraokontsina n. rallying cry (37).
aurten adv. this year (32).
auskalo who knows?!
auto n. car (26).
autobus n. bus (6).
auzabide n. village path, bridle path (36).
aunzo n. neighborhood; əko neighbor (30).
auzolan n. communal work (36).
azaldu vi. appear; turn up (somewhere) (37). —vt. explain; describe.
*azaro n. November (9).
*azkar adj. 1. strong, vigorous. 2. quick, lively. 3. smart, clever (27). —adv. quickly, fast (12).
*azken pr. adj. 1. last, final (8). 2. in the end. 3. wak last, finally, finally (37).
*azpi pp., adv. wam etc. under, below, beneath.
*azterketa n. study, investigation; examination, exam (8).
aztertu vt. study, investigate, research, examine (33).
*azukre n. sugar (7).
azuksworth adj. sugary, sugared (37).

B
bo' = bada.
bo' = ba- (see U.5 and U.19).
*badu vell, then (2).
*badaitoko (form of "EDIN") it is possible; maybe (13).
*bai 1. yes (1). 2. indeed, e.g. hau bai gouza lotsoasoria! this is a shameful thing indeed! 3. v ... v both ... and. 4. ere v too. 5. v eta that's right, yes. 6. v eta ... ere and ... too.
*balatz adv. affirmatively; so (16).
*baina(n) cj. 1. but (2). 2. (in final position) although (38).
*baino cj. 1. than (22). 2. (coll.) - baina. 3. - balazik. 4. v Iken(ago) cj. before (8).
bait (see U.23).
bolto' = bai eta.
bolto' = bai da.
baita' pp. an etc. (see U.31).
*balazik cj. 1. but, e.g. nkt ez zuk v, not I but you. 2. except, but, e.g. ez da know n't v, there's no one but me. 3. (u. a negotiation) only, e.g. ez dut but v, I only have one. (23).
*bakar adj. 1. sole, only, e.g. nere seme hr v, my only son (10). 2. single, only one, e.g. seme wro dut, I only have one son. 3. *rik adv. only; alone (4).
bake n. peace (27).
*bakoitz adj. each (15).
baltzakoa adv. swinging, swinging, moving from side to side (37).
*baldin cj. if (34).
bale n. Int. okay, all right then (16).
*baltzu vi. w. Inst. use (31).
*balio n. 1. value, cost (35). 2. v ukon vt. be worth; cost; be of use, e.g. ez du v, it's no use, it's no good (5).
bakatu vt. distribute, give out, share out (36).
banku n. bank (19).
bortatz + baratz.
*baratz n. vegetable garden (10).
*barberu n. barber (23).
*barik pp. (syn. of gabe) (16).
*baraku vt(d). 1. pardon, excuse. 2. v! Int. I'm sorry! Excuse me! (2).
*barri n. pp. (syn. of zehar) (28).
*barre n. pp. (syn. of barru) (27).
*barre n. bar, counter (2).
*barre n. 1. laughter (38). 2. vt. laugh (19).
barregarri adj. 1. Funny. 2. laughable. ridiculous (33).
*barreno n. barna.
*barri pp. wam etc. inside, in (5).
*baserrri n. farm; farm house (1).
*basarrietar n. "baserrri" dweller; farmer (34).
basko n. Basque (by birth, but not necessarily by language) (40).
'baso' n. forest; wild place (1).
'baso' n. drinking glass (14).
'bat' dt. 1. one (1). 2. a, an. 3. v ere dt., adv. any; at all; v ere ez none; not at all (28). 4. v era together (19,38). 4. v 'ean suddenly, unexpectedly; improvised (37).
batasun n. unity (32).
batipat adv. especially, particularly (32).
'batzuek' dt. 1. some (2). 2. batzueta sometimes (11).
'bazkaldun' vt. or vi. have lunch (11).
'bazkari' n. lunch (25).
bedeinaktu n. bless (13).
'bederatzi' dt. nine (4).
bederen adv. at least (31).
'bego' n. eye (32).
'begira' adv. 1. watching, observing (7). 2. v look! (4).
'begiratutu' vt. look after. —vt. look at.
'begitarretu' n. face (31).
'behar' n. 1. need. 2. v ukan vt. need. (7). 3. v'reean cj. instead of (13).
'beharbada' adv. perhaps (15).
behartu vt. force, compel (32).
'beho' n. 1. bottom, lower part. 2. v an below, at the bottom, downstairs; v'ana down, downstairs; v'tik from below; v'ko lower, bottom (12).
beherakada n. slum; deterioration; setback (37).
'behii' n. cow (10).
'behin' adv. once (22).
'behintzat' adv. certainly; at least (5).
'belar' n. 1. grass (25). 2. herb. 3. v gizto seed (37).
'belarri' n. car (32).
'beldur' n. 1. fear (30). 2. v izan vi. be afraid, fear (25).
'bele' n. crow; raven (37).
'belodromo' n. cycling track (35).
'beltz' o dj. 1. black (2). 2. (of wine) red.
'beltzaran' adj. dark-skinned (32).
'benetan' adv. 1. really, honestly (4). 2. benetako real, genuine.
'beno' int. well; let's see.
'ber' adj. 1. same, e.g. oro u'ko at the same time (36). 2. (see bera).
'bera' he/him; she/her; it (12).
'berandu' adv. late (2).
'beraz' cj. therefore, so, thus (26).
'berde' adj. green (3).
'berdin' adj., adv. same (2).
'berio' adj. his, her, its, their (reflexive; see U.21) (10).
'berehala' adv. straight away (13).
'beren' adv. their (see bere) (10).
'berez' adj. special; distinct (30).
'berezitasun' n. speciality; distinctness (32).
'bero' adj. hot. —n. heat (10).
berpiztu vt., vi. vt. revive (34).
'berrehun' dt. two hundred (5).
'berri' adj. 1. new (3). 2. (or adv.) new(ly), recent(ly), just, e.g. storri ko da, he has just come, he is a newcomer (14). 3. euskaldun non-native Basque speaker (34). —n. piece of news; information (26).
'berrieta' n. chatter, gossip; v chatting, gossiping (32).
'berritu' vt. renovate, renew (36).
'berriz' adv. again (9). —cj. on the other hand (9).
'berrogei' dt. forty (3).
'bertan' adv. 1. right there (or
here), in that (or this) very place: hemen(txs) ~, right here (25); also bertara, bertatik, bertako. 2. bertako adjl. local (36). 3. immediately.
bertza n. verse (38).
bertsolarri n. verse-singer; composer of verses (38).
bertze ~beste.
berun n. lead (32).
besarkatu vi., vt. embrace (30).
besto ~festa.
beste pr. adj. other (3). ~cj./dt. (syn. of adina) (22).
bestela adv. otherwise (12).
bete vt. fill; ~rik or ~ta adv. full (8). ~dt. one, a, an (with measure words), e.g. osteket, a week, one week; botila ~ ordon, a bottleful of wine (25).
beti adv. always (11).
betidanik adv. always (in the past) (33).
bezain cj. as (compartson), e.g. nikon ~ ongi helten ona, he speaks as well as me (22).
bezainbat cj./dt. (syn. of adina) (31).
bezala cj., pp. like, as (to adjl.) (14).
bezpora n. eve, day before (37).
bi cj. two (2).
bibolin n. fiddle, violin (24).
bidali vi(d), send (25).
bide n. way, route; path, road (13). ~mp. apparently, seemingly (see U.34).
bider adv. preceded by a numeral times, e.g. hiru ~, three times (31).
bigarren pr. adj. second (20).
bihar adv. tomorrow (17).
bihotz n. heart (31).
bihurtu vi. 1. return (18). 2. become, turn into (28).
bikain adj. excellent (36).
bila adv. looking for, in search of; to get, e.g. zerbalten ~ or taulko ~, I'm looking for something; goztok sindun ~ oritzun izenet aldeko sortu ziren the youngsters set about obtaining signatures (36).
bilakatu vi. become (30).
bilatu vt. look for (8).
bildu vt. meet, gather. ~vt. collect, gather (23).
bildun ~beleuzun.
birika n. lung: ~eritasun pneumonia (33).
birjina n. virgin (39): Ana Birjina the Virgin Mother.
bitartean pp. 1. between. 2. bitartekoa n. go-between, intermediary (39). ~cj. while (14). ~adv. meanwhile.
bitxi adj. unusual; pretty (36).
bixiug n. see bream (5).
bizar n. beard (26).
biziki adv. very, really (29).
bizilagun n. inhabitant (30).
bizitza n. 1. life (22). 2. dwelling; apartment.
Bizkaia pn. Bizkaia, Biscay, Basque province west of Gipuzkoa and north of Araba, containing the western Basque coast and bordering on Cantabria to the west (6).
bizkaitar adj., n. Bizkaian, native of Bizkaia (11).
bizkar n. back (37).
bizkitartean adv. (syn. of bitartean adv.) (31).
bola n. bowling [a game] (36).
boltza n. bag (6).
borda n. (syn. of baserri) (27).
borraka n. 1. fight, struggle. 2.  
vin gvin vt. fight, struggle (24).
borritz adj. hard, cruel, severe,  
harsh (31).
bortxatu vt. 1. force (31). 2.  
rrape.
*boitst dt. five (1).
*bota vt. 1. throw; pour (9). 1.  
throw out, expel.
*botika n. 1. medicine (31). 2.  
pharmacy.
*botila n. bottle (7).  
boz n. voice (32).
*bueltat n. 1. turn; return. 2.  
walk, stroll; ride. 3.  
v eman vt. turn around. 4.  
v eman or  
v bat eman vt. go for a walk;  
go for a ride, make a short trip  
(13).
bueltatu vt. (syn. of itzuli vt.)  
(37).
bukaea n. end; ending (36).
*bukatu vt., vt. finish, end (3).
bulego n. office (19).
burla n. 1. mockery; affront. 2.  
v gvin vt. make fun of (39).
burlatu vt. u. inst. make fun of,  
ridicule (40).
*buru n. 1. head (31). 2. head,  
leader, superior (36). 3. bere  
etc. himself, oneself, e.g. bere  
v hit zuen, he killed himself  
(31).
burutz vt. carry out; complete  
(35).
*buruz pp. 1. about, concerning  
(21). 2. towards; facing, facing  
towards (31).
busti vt. get wet (7). -vt. wet,  
moisten (37).

D

dana n. lady, dame (39).
dantz n. 1. dancing, dance;  
heiri-ak folk dance(s). 2.  
v n  
adv. dancing;  
v gvin vt. dance  
(36).
dantzatu vt. dance (31).
datorren next, coming, e.g.  
astean next week (26).
deabru n. 1. devil. 2. the devil,  
the hell, e.g. non v...? where the  
devil...? (31).
debalde adv. free [of cost] (23).
debekatu vt. forbid, prohibit  
(23).
deendatatu vt. defend (35).
definizio n. definition (34).  
dei n. 1. call. 2. v gvin vt(d).  
call; convoke (36).
deitu vt(d). call (6).
delako 1. (after an expression)  
so-called, e.g. "gâteau basque"  
ə, so-called "gâteau basque"  
(28). 2. (before an expression)  
the ... in question, e.g.  
muti-  
lo, this boy, the boy in question.  
delagazio n. delegation (36).  
demagogia n. demagogy (36).
den-a, -ak everything; everybody;  
all (14).
denbora n. time (17).
denda n. store, shop (6).
deritzan called (35).
derrepente adv. suddenly (39).  
desanparatu vt. abandon, forsake  
(39).
desberdin adj. different (34).  
desiatu vt. wish, desire (39).  
desio n. 1. wish, desire. 2.  
ukan vt. (syn. of nahi ukan)  
(39).
desira n. (syn. of desio) (40).  
deskubritu vt. reveal (39).  
despentsa n. larder, pantry,  
storeroom (37).
detenditu vt. 1. stop, detain  
(39). 2. arrest.
deus pron. (syn. of ezer) (27).  
deusk -deus.
dialekto n. dialect (10).
diputazio n. provincial govern-
diru n. money (15).
dirugaltze n. loss of money (37).
disponitu vt. dispose, arrange (39).
dohainik adv. (syn. of debaldo) (38).
donostiar adj., n. native of San Sebastian (22).
dotore adj. elegant, fine (32).
dun der. suf. forming adjectives meaning "characterized by" (see U.34).
duro n. five-peseta coin similar to American "nickel" (7).

E

'ea (see U.36).
'ebaki vt. cut (34).
'edan vt. drink (13).
edari n. drink (37).
eder adj. fine, beautiful (3).
ederki adv. fine, great (2).
edertasun n. beauty (27).
ederto adv. (syn. of ederki) (16)
edertu vt. beautify, make beautiful (36).
edo cji. 1. or (5). 2. & ... & either ... or (8).
edoizein pr. dt. any, e.g. Liburu jasok dezo...kezu, you can read any book (25).
edozen pron. anything (33). -st. (syn. of edoizein).
eduki vt. (ps. DAUKAT) 1. have (9). 2. hold. 3. contain.
egarri n. 1. thirst. 2. & izan vt., or 'ak egon vt. be thirsty.
egia n. truth (21) "zko adjt. trust (34).
egile n. 1. docr. 2. maker. 3. author (32).
egiteko n. thing to do, task, work (32).
egogoold &eguraldi.
'egoera n. situation (33).
'egoiki adj. suitable, convenient (32).
egon vi. (ps. NAGO) 1. be (5). 2. stay, remain, e.g. "heman! stay here! 3. wait, e.g. v. pizko bat! wait a bit!
egongela n. living room (9).
eguiberri n. Christmas (Day) (9).
eguardi n. midday, noon (27).
egun n. day (3). -adv. 1. today (29). 2. gaur "these days, nowadays (40).
egunero adv. every day (11).
egunkari v. newspaper (24).
eguraldi n. weather (10).
eguzki n. sun (10).
ehun dt. a hundred (4).
ehain n. June (9).
'eikoa vt. (ps. DAKART) bring (5, 13).
ekieide n. east (8).
'ekein vtd. do, set to (doing), keep (doing), e.g. Irauiztzeaor ekater dko, he keeps reading, he sets about reading; ametari ekiteko denbora egokia do, it's a good time for (day)dreaming (32).
elemendu n. element (8).
eleiza n. church (12).
elekar pron. each other, one another, e.g. molte dgu, we love each other (29). 'rekak adv. with each other, together (6).
elur n. snow.
'ema krume n. woman (3).
'emaute n. 1. woman (31). 2. wife (22).
emanoratu vt. fall in love (39).
'onone adj. (syn. of nora) (29).
engainatu vt. deceive (34).
enkargu n. task, job, errand (39).
entendiditu vt. (syn. of ulertu) (39).
enteratu vi. find out (39).
entierrezu n. burial, funeral (39).
entregatu vtd. hand over (36).
*entsalada n. salad (5).
*entzun vt(d). listen (to), hear (6).
epel adj. warm (32).
*era n. 1. way, manner, 2. kind (36).
*erabaki vt. decide (23).
erabat adv. completely, utterly, totally, altogether (34).
*erabili vt. (ps. DARABILIT) use (24).
eraiki vt. build (36).
erakoste -erakasle.
erakusketa n. exhibition (35).
erakustoki n. (art) gallery (35).
*erakutsai vt(d). show (18).
*eraman vt. (ps. DARAWAT) 1. take (to a place). 2. carry; lead (43).
*erantzun vt(d). answer (9).
—n. answer, reply (29).
erdal cf. of erdara non-Basque, foreign (36).
*erdaldu n. non-Basque speaker.
—adj. non-Basque-speaking (34).
erdara n. language other than Basque, foreign language; Spanish or French (7).
erdi n., adj. half (2); —pp., adv. & in the middle (of) (6).
*ere 1. too, also, as well (1). 2. either. 3. even (34).
eresin vt. sow (seed) (35).
erilden vt. (syn. of aurrkitu) (40).

eri adj. sick, ill.
eritasun n. illness, disease (33).
*erloju n. watch, clock.
*ero adj. crazy (38).
*eromun vt. (ps. DARGAT) (syn. of eruman) (16).
*erori vt. fall, fall down, drop (17).
—vi. drop, e.g. zerbait zolzu, you’ve dropped something.
*erossi vt. buy (7).
erosle vt. buyer, customer (32).
*erran vt. (syn. of esan) (30).
*erraz adj. easy (15). —adv. easily.
erratzasun n. case; facility (32,36).
*erre vt. burn. —vt. 1. burn. 2. smoke (41).
errehista n. magazine (36).
errege n. king (10).
erregu n. request, petition (39).
*erreka n. stream (27).
errremedio n. remedy, solution (39).
*errepressio n. repression (10).
erretreta n. retirement (31).
erretzail e n. smoker (32).
errez, errez -erraz.
errer n. root (33).
*esan vt. (ps. DIOT) 1. say (7).
2. & nahi ulan vt. mean (32). 3. esate baterako for example, for instance (33). —vtd. tell.
esori vt. sit, sit down (5).
estakibe n. petition, request (36).
estakini vt(d). offer (37).
estekas adj. little, not enough, scarce (37).
estekasia n. scarcity, shortage (31).
estekatu vt. become scarce (30).
estekatu vt(d). ask for, request (14).
eske  n. request. —adv. asking for (39).
*esker  n. 1. (pl.) gratitude, thanks. 2. *rik asko, *anitz, mila \ thank you, thanks. (2).
3. *rak! Int. thank goodness! (18). —op. thanks to, owing to (19).
esklabo  n. slave (31).
eskola  n. school (8).
eskolune  n. schoolchild (36).
eskriratu  vt. (syn. of idatzi) (40).
eskritura  n. writing (40).
esku  n. hand (6).
eskualde  n. district (30).
eskubide  n. right (23).
eskuin  n. right (opposite of left) (13).
eskuna  n. (syn. of eskuin) (19).
eskutitz  n. letter, epistle (35).
esnatu  vt. wake up (37).
esne  n. milk (7).
esnezale  n. milkman (33).
Espainiak  n. Spain.
espainol  adj., n. Spanish (6).
espero ukan  vt. 1. hope (43). 2. expect (38).
*Espiritu Santu  n. the Holy Ghost (21).
esposario  n. marriage ceremony (39).
esposatu  vi. (syn. of ozkondu) (39).
estali  vt. cover (37).
estatu  n. state (political entity) (6); *Batukaitz the United States (4).
estrenatu  vt. use for the first time; inaugurate (36).
estropada  n. (usu. pl.) boat race(s), regatta (37).
estu  adj. narrow; tight (18).
estuki  adv. narrowly, tightly (32).
*eta  cJ. 1. and (1). 2. and so on, etcetera, e.g. Ulburuak * mahaloi on utzi ztu, he left the books and things on the table. 3. *biak and he/she; *biak and I.
Likewise with higher numbers, e.g. Mikel, Itzlor * biktu(r)ak, Mikel, Itzilar and I. 4. having (done something), e.g. eskutitzo bokatu *, shero joan zen, having finished the letter, he went to bed. 5. For, since, e.g. poazen, berandu da *; let us go, for it is late (23). 6. (see U.31).
eten  vt. 1. break. 2. interrupt: *egabe adj., adv. uninterrupted-ly), continuously, constant-ly (33).
eterridade  n. eternity (39).
etorri  vt. (ps. NATIV) come (2,6).
etsipen  n. desperation (37).
etxe  n. house, home (1).
etxen  adv. at home (33).
etxeratu  vt. go home (37).
etsipen -etsipen.
etzi  adv. the day after tomorrow.
*Euskadi  pn. Euskadi, the Basque Country (8).
*euskal cf. of euskara Basque, of the Basque language, of the Basque Country (8); Euskal Herria n. the Basque Country (9).
*euskaldundu  vt. learn Basque, become a Basque speaker (23).
*euskalduntzaun  n. Basqueness, "euskaldun"-ness (30).
euskalki  n. Basque dialect (33).
*euskara  n. Basque, the Basque language (8).
*eusko cf. Basque: Eusko Jaurlaritza the Basque Government (9,33).
Euskadi – Euskadi.

Euskera – euskara.

*ez 1. no. (1). 2. not (1). 3. not (us. other elements), e.g. nik ne, not I. 4. horregatik you’re welcome, don’t mention it (response to eskerrik asko). 5. veta neither, e.g. veta nik ere, neither do/did/... I. 6. ere neither, e.g. nik ere v, neither do/did/... I. 7. v ... v neither ... nor.

*ezagun adj. well-known (21).

*ezagutu vt. 1. know, be familiar with, be acquainted with (6). 2. get to know; meet.

*ezer vt. place, set up, put. —vt. (syn. of eserri) (36).

ezagarrari n. characteristic, feature (34).

tezein pr. dt. any (40).

*ezer pron. 1. anything; (u. neg.) nothing, e.g. ez zen gerritu, nothing happened (18). 2. ez nothing.

*ozetx adv. negatively; not (16).

*tezi cj. that, since (40).

*ezik cj. 1. unless: izan v except (33). 2. ez v not only,... but (also), e.g. Mikel ez v litzior (ere), not only Mikel but Itxar. tom. —pp. except.

*ezin adj. 1. unable, impossible. 2. vukan vt. be unable, not be able; v(a) da it’s impossible, it cannot be (18).

*ezker n. left (13).

*ezkondu vi. marry, get married (28).

ezkontza n. marriage, wedding (39).

ezpain n. lip (31).

ezti n. honey. —adj. 1. sweet. 2. gentle.

eztitu vt. sweeten (35).

F

faborez (syn. of mesedez) (2).

*fabrika n. factory (25).

fama n. reputation; fame (39).

*famatu adj. famous (12).

*familia n. family (9).

forragorri v. barregari.

farre v. barre.

federazio n. federation (36).

feminista n., adj. feminist (35).

*Festa n. fiesta (31).

*filme n. film, movie (31).

*filologia n. philology; language and literature studies: euskal v Basque studies (41).

flore n. flower, cream, blue (40).

formalidad n. correctness; seriousness; honesty (39).

foto n. (syn. of argazki) (36).

*frantses adj., n. French (6).

Frantsia pn. France.

frente eman (vto.) face up to, confront (37).

frogatu vt. 1. test, try. 2. prove (28).

*fruta n. fruit (6).

frutu n. 1. fruit (result, product) (13). 2. (syn. of fruta).

*futbol n. soccer, football (35).

G

*gabet pp., cj. without (10); erik (some meaning) (39).

Gabon-ak pl.n. Christmas.

*gai n. 1. material. 2. matter, subject, subject matter (10).

*gailetz n. cookie, biscuit (7).

gallur n. summit, top (35).

*gain pp. 1. (syn. of gain) (36). 2. gain etc. on, on top of (12). 3. aera besides, other than, as well as (19). —adv. 1. aean on top.

2. aera furthermore, as well (5).
gaindi pp. (syn. of zehar) (19, 33).
*gaixo adj. 1. poor, e.g. a Jean-Pierre! a n! Poor Jean-Pierre! Poor me! (31). 2. (syn. of ord). 3. arik adv. sick, ill (33).
gaisal di n. bout of illness (33).
galxo(-) *gaixo(-).
*gaizki adv. bad; badly; wrong (23).
*gaizto adj. 1. bad; belar a weed (37). 2. bad, naughty. 3. evil, wicked (21).
galai n. lover, beau (39).
galant adj. good-looking, handsome; lovely (7).
galde n. question (40). 2. a egin vt(d). (syn. of galdetu).
galdere n. question (28).
galdetu vt(d). ask (9).
galdut vt. lose. — vi. get lost (10).
galepor n. quail (37).
galera n. loss; damage; demise (34). — gan, -gana, -gandik pp. (see U.31).
ganadu n. cattle (35).
garai n. period, time (36).
garbi adj. clean, clear (17). — adv. clearly, clear.
garbitu vt. 1. clean. 2. clear, clear up (14).
garesti adj. expensive (7).
гаррен suf. forming ordinal numbers, e.g. honorъ tenth; honakoa eleventh, umpteenth (20).
gartzela n. prison (33).
gasolina n. gasoline (19).
*gazik postpositional suf. 1. for, on account of, because of, e.g. n(re) because of me (7): zero why (15); horren because of that, for that reason, that's why (24). 2. cj. (syn. of arron cj.) (14, 37).
gau n. night, evening (3).
gualde n. dusk (37).
guardi n. midnight (10).
gaur adv. today (10). a egun these days, nowadays (10).
gauza n. thing (5).
gazi adj. salty; bitter (38).
gazta n. cheese (7).
gaztaina n. chestnut (32).
gazte adj. young (3). — n.
young person, youngster, youth.
gazteria n. young people, youth (coll.) (31).
gehlago dt., adv. more; else (8).
gehiegi dt., adv. too much, too many (16).
gehien most (8). a ak most (of them); aik for the most part, mostly; aetan most often, mostly, usually (11).
gela n. room (9).
gehdu vi. 1. remain, stay, stay behind. 2. be left, be left over. 3. finish, stop. 4. be, get, end up, e.g. bai zerku gabe % ginen, we ended up not having lunch (14).
vid. have left, e.g. potxorox potxak bat gehditzen zelo gridituk, he still has a little pacharan left (17).
gehtoki n. station (19).
geograf ia n. geography (8).
geografiko adj. geographical (8).
gegaratu vi., vid. (syn. of gehdu) (14).
gegro adv. 1. then, next (5). 2. later: a arte! see you later! 3. (indicates a warning), e.g. ez eson a you'd better not say [...] or else! (28). — pe, —(e)z a, —(e)z a after, following; since
(19).
gorostik adv. since, since then (39). —pp. (syn. of gorotz). *geratu vi. 1. happen, occur (19). 2. be, be found, occur.
gertu adv., pp. (syn. of hurbil) (19, 37).
gerturik adv. (syn. of prest) (9).

goza adj. mild (esp. of taste); not salty (38).

giatu vt. guide, advise, counsel (38).

gibel n. liver. —pp. *can etc. (syn. of atzean) (28).
gilza n. key (19).

gipuzkera n. Gipuzkoan (dialect) (26).

Gipuzkoa pn. Gipuzkoan, Basque province in the center of the country, adjacent to Navarre, Araba, Bizkaia and Lapurdi and containing the central Basque coast (6).

gipuzkoar adj., n. Gipuzkoan, native of Gipuzkoa.

giro n. atmosphere; social circle; environment; weather (36).
gisa n. 1. (syn. of ora). 2. (n) pp. like, as, in the manner of (39).

igidagaio adj. poor. —n. poor fellow (25).

gizon n. man (3).

igozen let's go! come on! (2).
gobernua n. government (23).

gogo n. 1. wish, desire (19). 2. mind, thought. 3. *an ukan vt. have on (one's) mind, think of, remember. 4. *ra to (one's) liking; happy. 5. *ko to (one's) liking; favorite (27). 6. *ukan vt. want, wish (33).

*gogor adj., adv. hard (22).

*goratatu vi. w. Inst. remember, recall; think of (26).

*goi cf. high, top, superior, e.g. *n-mailako high-level, top-level.

—pp. *an above, on high, upstairs; gora (qv.) up, upstairs; *tik from above; *oko high, top (12).

goilare n. spoon (34).

goiiz adv. early (10). —n. morning (11).

golpe n. 1. blow (37). 2. coup.

*rik eman gabe not doing a stroke of work (37).

gona n. skirt (32).

gonbarazio n. comparison (32).

gonbidatu vt. invite; treat (36).

gonbidiz n. invitation (36).

gora (abl. of goi) 1. up; upstairs (movement). 2. *goi up with! e.g. *goi Euskadi! Up with Euskadi!

3. (adj.) high.

gorde vt. 1. keep. 2. put away.


gordinn adj. 1. raw; unripe. 2. crude, unpolished (33).

*gorputz n. body (32).

*gorrri adj. 1. red (2). 2. (of wine) rosé.

*gosaldut vt. or vi. have breakfast (10).

gosari n. breakfast.

*gose n. 1. hunger. 2. *izan vt. or *ak egon vi. be hungry (5).

gosetti vi. hungry, starving, famished (37).

gosetu vt. get hungry (32): *ta nago I'm hungry.

gotzai n. bishop (35).

*gozo adj. 1. delicious, tasty; sweet. 2. gentle, mild; soft.

gozaki n. candy, sweet; cake (37).

grado or gradu n. degree, grade, class (39).

*gramatika n. grammar (15).
grazia n. gracefulness; wittiness, wit (38).
gripe n. influenza, flu (32). gu pron. we, us.
gudari n. warrior; fighter (9). *gura syn. of nahi (16).
guruses n. parent (35).
guri adj. soft (25).
gustagarri adj. pleasing (32).
gustatu vtd. like, e.g. euskera gustotzten zoit, I like Basque (3).
gusto n. *ra (syn. of gogora) (32).
*gutti dt. 1. little, not much; few, not many (3). 2. *tan rarely, seldom. 3. *egeoz at least (36). 4. *gora behora more or less, approximately (13).... gutxi +gutti.
guti *gutii.
guti adj. all; every; whole (3).
guztiz adv. utterly, totally (23).

H

haboro dt., adv. (syn. of gehiago) (22).
hagin n. tooth (7): *etako min toothache.
haginkada n. bite (37).
*haih adv. so, e.g. zerotik zaudet *tikste? why are you so sad? (15).
haino *adina.
*hainbat dt. 1. so many, so much. 2. many, much (34). 3. (syn. of adina) (22).
hainbeste dt. 1. so many, so much. 2. (syn. of adina) (22).
haitz n. rock (10).

that kind of; like that (7).
haloz ere, holere *hala ere.

hamaika dt. 1. eleven (1). 2. many, e.g. *urburu lootezi dura horretoz, hundreds of books have been written about that; *oldez, time and again (34).
hamaikatxo dt. many (dim. of hamaika 2) (36).

hamar dt. ten (1).
han adv. (over) there (4).
handi adj. big, large; great (5).
hanka n. 1. paw; leg (of animal). 2. leg (of furniture) (8). 3. (coll.) leg (of person).
haragi n. meat (5).
haran n. valley (28).
hari n. thread; wire (32).
harrapatu vt. catch (25).
harri n. stone, rock (10).
harrigarri adj. surprising, amazing (15).
harritu vt. be surprised. —vt. surprise (25).
harrobi n. quarry (35).
hartu vt. 1. take (9). 2. take, have (a drink, a shower, etc.).
hasero n. 1. anger. 2. *ian vi. be angry. 3. *ta adv. angry: *ta egon be angry (13).
haservetu vi. get angry (31).
hasi vi. w. ines. or ger. ln —W start, begin (8).
hats n. breath (31).
hau dt., pron. this (1).
hauki *handi.

haur n. child (35).
haurregozte n. abortion (35).
hautasundei n. election (36).
hazi vi. grow; grow up (26). —n. seed (38).
heatutu vt. spread (34).
hegal n. 1. wing. 2. side, edge (37).

hego, valde n. south (8).
hemen adv. here (4).
helbide n. address (8).
heldu vt. arrive, reach (28).
— vt. take hold of, grasp.
— izan vt. be coming, e.g. nor
— da? = nor dotor? who's coming?
(30).
hereregun adv. the day before yesterday.
heriotze n. death (34).
herri n. 1. town, village (1).
2. country. 3. People, nation
(23). — cf. 1. folk, e.g. 
kontak, folk songs. 2. popular,
people's, e.g. an errepublika,
people's republic.
herrialdie n. region (10).
herriatx n. village's inhabitant.
heretsi vt., vt. close, shut
(13).
hezkuntza n. education (36).
hi pron. you (familiar) (2).
hil vt. die (16). — vt. kill.
— adj. dead (34): xik adv. (34).
hil n. (syn. of hilabote)
(35).
hilabete n. month (9).
hiltzorinar adv. moribund (34).
hiri n. town, city (6).
hiriheru n. capital (4).
hiru dt. three (1).
hirugarren pr. adj. third (25).
hirurehun dt. three hundred (5).
hirurogei dt. sixty (4).
historia n. history (10).
historiko adj. historical (30).
hitz n. 1. word (13), 2. a egina
vt. talk, speak (9).
hizketa n. 1. conversation, talk
(6). 2. on talking: horrek in
arç nazi, I'm talking to him.
hizkuntza n. language (10).
hiztegi n. dictionary (33).
hobe adj. better (13).
hobei adv. better (22).
hobeto adv. (syn. of hobeki).
hoga dt. twenty (2).
hola adv. like so, like this,
like that (7).
honak nemen here is [Fr. voici]
(16).
hondarza n. beach (6).
honela adv. like so, like this
(7).
hor adv. there (4).
hori1 dt., pron. that (1).
hori2 adj. yellow (17).
horregatik because of that,
that's why (24).
horrela adv. like so, like that
(7).
hurrenbeste dt. so many, that
many (37).
hurto, -ra, -tik + horretan etc.
hots that is to say (33).
hutz adj., n. cold (10).
hutzu vt. get cold (32).
hura dt., pron. that (over there);
he, him; she, her (1).
hurbil adv., po. near, close
(29).
hurrengo adjt. next, following
(48).
huts adj. 1. pure, absolute (16):
kafe = black coffee. 2. xik adv.
empty (14). — n. nothingness,
emptiness; zero, nought.
I
ia adv. almost, nearly (10).
iaz adv. last year (37).
ibai n. river (8).
ibili vt. (ps. NABIL) be; go;
along; walk; move (6).
idatziri vt. write (9). — n.
document; application, petition
(36).
idazkari n. secretary (8).
idazle n. writer (26).
ideia n. idea (19).
tigan vt. or vt. go up, rise (28).
tigande n. Sunday (7).
Igaro +iragan.
igeri adv. 1. swimming. 2. egin vt. swim.
igeritogi n. swimming pool (36).
Igo +igan.
igorri vt. (syn. of bidali) (33).
ihaurri adj. plenty, in abundance (33).
ihes n. 1. escape. 2. egin vt. escape.
ihesi adv. escaping, in flight, away: Joan ran away (37).
ijeneru n. engineer (33).
Itkaragarri adj. tremendous, terrible (35).
Itkagai n. lesson (23).
Iktasi vt. learn; study (4). — adj. learned; skilled (38).
Ikasle n. student (1).
Ikaunin n. flag (9).
Ilkusi vt. see (5).
Ilargi n. moon (10).
ille n. hair; fur (32).
Illum adj. dark; obscure (35).
illumbar n. dusk, nightfall (36).
Imajinatu vt. imagine (32).
Indar n. 1. strength (38). 2. force.
Industria n. industry (8).
Industriald adj. industrial (8).
Informazio n. information (36).
Inglese adj., n. English (15).
Inguratu v. surround (39).
Ingurri n. 1. surroundings (36).
2. round etc., around, about (8).
Immigrante n. immigrant (10).
Ino postpositional suf. up to, as far as (20).
Inoiz adv. 1. ever; (u. neg.) never, e.g. 'ez dut ikust, I've never seen (12). 2. 'ez never.
3. occasionally, sometimes (38).
Inola adv. 1. anyhow, in any way; (u. neg.) in no way (15). 2. 'ez no way.
Inon adv. 1. anywhere; (u. neg.) nowhere (16). 2. 'ez nowhere.
3. go adj. any; (u. neg.) no (37).
Inor pron. 1. anyone, anybody; (u. neg.) no one, nobody (14).
2. 'ez no one, nobody.
Inozentz adj. innocent; ingenuous (39).
Importante adj. important (23).
Importik: ez dio ' (coll.) it doesn't matter (32).
Inprimatzailo n. printer (40).
Intentzio n. intention (39).
Interes n. 1. interest. 2. possession, property (39).
Interesatu v. interest, be interested (17). — adj. proprietary (39).
Interesgarri adj. interesting (36).
Ipar, Barde n. north (6).
Ipini vt. put (36).
Ipuini n. story, tale (21).
Ipuirdi n. buttocks, behind, ass (25).
Irabazi vt. 1. win. 2. earn. 3. gain (31).
Irabazle n. winner (32).
Iragan vt. pass (29). — vt. 1. pass. 2. spend (time).
Irail n. September (9).
Irakasle n. teacher, instructor (8).
Irakatsi v. teach (23).
Irakurri vt. read (10).
Iraultza n. revolution (37).
Irain n. (ps. DIRAU) last, endure; survive (30).
Ireki vt., v. open (5, 9).
iretsi vi. arrive, get, reach (18).
irratu n. radio (24).
irruntzi n. prolonged high-pitched cry accompanying dancing etc. (9).
irtun vi. or vt. go out, come out, leave (17).
irudimen n. imagination (35).
iruditu vi(d). (ps. DHRUDU) seem, e.g. truditen zait, it seems to me, I think (10). —vt. 1. seem.
2. look like, resemble, e.g. nere alto dhrudizu, you're like my father.
isiliku vi. be silent; keep silent (32).
isilik adv. quiet, silent (15):
vi, zaude vi! be quiet! shut up!
isilka adv. on the quiet, secretly (33).
isilune n. silence, pause (32).
itamudu vt. (syn. of galdetu) (20).
itasaso n. sea, ocean (1).
itasportu n. sea port (8).
itasu adj. blind (37).
itasuji adj. ugly (37).
iturre n. 1. fountain (7), 2. source, origin.
itxaro n. wait (19).
itxaropen n. hope (34).
itxerixi v.t. hertzxi.
itxali vi. go out (e.g. a light);
go off (e.g. the radio); fade away, die away. —vt. put out, turn off; extinguish (34).
itxali vi. return, go back, come back. —vt(d). return, give back, send back (10).
izan vi. (ps. NAI2) 1. be (1).
2. aux. verb in comp. tenses. —vt. (syn. of ukan) (8).
izar n. star (10).
izeba n. aunt.
izen n. name (3).
izenburu n. title (35).
iztara v.t. izter.
izter n. thigh, leg (32).
izugarri adj. terrible, awful (10). —adv. terribly, very.
J
jabe n. owner; master (35).
jada adv. already (31).
jagoitiko adv. forever (40).
jai n. 1. holiday. 2. day off. 3. fiesta (7).
jaiiku vt. get up, rise (30).
jaio vi. be born (22).
jaitsi vi. go down, come down; get down (28). —vt. milk (an animal) (37).
jakin vt. (ps. DAKIT) 1. know (a fact, a name, etc.) (4).
2. find out, learn, discover (24). 3. va adv. of course (25).
jakinarazi vi(d). inform, let (someone) know (30).
jan vt. eat (13); jatent eom an feed (37).
jenari n. food (37); edenda grocer's store.
2. put on; wear. —n. dress (25).
jarrapen n. continuation (36).
jarraitu vt. go on, continue, —vt(d). or v.i.d. follow (18).
jarraitzaile n. follower (32).
jarreria n. position; posture (32).
jarri vi. 1. put (14). 2. put on (e.g. clothes). 3. provide (34).
—vt. 1. place oneself. 2. sit.
jaso vt. 1. lift, raise; erect (35).
2. pick up. 3. undergo; endure.
jatetxe n. restaurant (13).
jator adj. 1. authentic, genuine.
2. nice, good (of a person) (19).
• jaun n. 1. gentleman, 2. lord, master. 3. Mr., e.g. Agirre vb, Mr. Agirre. 4. vb sir. (24).
• jaungoiko n. god (36).
• jaurti or jaurtiki vt. throw, cast (38).
• jende n. people (5).
• jente +jende.
  jetxiko, jetzi, jaitsi.
• jin vt. (syn. of etorri) (31).
• jo vt. 1. hit, strike. (23). 2. act, proceed, do, e.g. nola + behar dugu? how should we proceed? what should we do? 3. (u. all.) go to; speak to, write to (31). 4. play (an instrument) (24). 5. telefonoa + phone.
• jion vi. (ps. HOA) 1. go (6). 2. go away, leave. 3. + den last (26); + zen previous.
• jolaitxu vt. play.
• josio vt. 1. sew (with needle and thread). 2. +rik, +ta (u. last.) riddic (with) (37).
• juramentu n. oath, promise (39).

K
• ka der. suf. forming adverbs (see U.37).
• kafe n. coffee (6).
• kafesne n. coffee with milk (40).
• kafetegi n. café, coffee shop (40).
• kai n. 1. pier, wharf, dock. 2. harbor (33).
• kaixo int. hi, hello (2).
• kaka n. 1. shit, dirt; + zaharra! int. bullshit! 2. + ergin vt. defecate, shit (25).
• kale n. 1. street (2). 2. outside, out-of-doors: +an out, in town.
• kalte n. 1. harm, damage. 2. + egin vt(d). harm, do harm (34).
• kanpaina n. campagne (23).
• kanpo pp. adv. +an etc. outside (7).
• kanta n. song.
• kantaldi n. (song) concert (33).
• kantari n. singer (33).
• kantatu n. sing (25).
• kapitu n. chapter (26).
• karino n. (syn. of maitasun) (39).
• kamet n. 1. identity card. 2. license; driver's license (28).
• karrila n. (syn. of kale) (27).
• karta n. (syn. of eskutitz) (31).
• kartel n. 1. poster (24). 2. sign; roadsign.
• kasu n. case (33).
• katedral n. cathedral (19).
• kata n. cat (17).
• kausitu vt. (syn. of aurkita) (30).
• kendu vt. 1. take (from), remove. 2. take off (14). -vi. leave, withdraw, get out: + hortik! get out of there!
•-ki der. suf. forming adverbs (see U.32).
• kilo n. kilogram, kilo (7).
• kilometro n. kilometer (7).
• kinka n. critical point, e.g. erortzeko + lorran, in imminent danger of falling (36).
• kirol n. sport (35).
• kirolari n. sportsman, sportsman (woman). -adj. sports-loving (36).
• kiruldegi n. sports complex (36).
• kito int. that's that! that's all! that's the end of it! (34).
• klase n. class (4).
• koudro n. picture; painting (12). -adj. square: metro + square (38).
• kolore n. color (32).  
  kolore + golpe.
*konsumi izan vt. be advisable. — vt.d. suit, be good for.
konsumentzia n. convenience, advisability (39).
*konun n. toilet, bathroom (9).
kondizio n. condition (36).
*konduzitu vt. drive (16).
konformatu vt. agree, come to an agreement (39).
*konforme adv. 1. agreeing, in agreement; a egon vt agree (19). 2. agreed, agreed to. 3. "! Int. okay! agreed!
konkretetu adj. specific (37).
kompainia n. company (39).
*kompandu vt. 1. fix, repair (20). 2. arrange, settle. — vt. get along; come to an understanding (22).
kontatu vt. 1. tell, narrate (21). 2. count. 3. (w. com.) count on.
kontextu n. context (36).
*kontra opp. (syn. of aurka) (10). kontrolatstu vt. 1. control (37). 2. check on, inspect.
*kontu n. 1. story; a kontari adv. telling stories (37). 2. matter. 3. responsibility, care, account, e.g. here a zo, on my own account.
4. (bank, credit, etc.) account.
5. bill, check (e.g. in a restaurant or hotel) (15). 6. a vz adv. carefully, with care; a zo! (be) careful! watch out! (34).
konturatu vi. vi. Inst. realize (24).
*konfak n. brandy (16).
*kopa n. 1. (stemmed) glass. 2. drink, glass of brandy or liqueur (16).
korrer n. 1. post office (39). 2. mail, post.
korririka adv. 1. running; in a hurry (21). 2. a joan/estorri/
ibili vt. run. 3. a egin vt. run, go running.
kortau n. coffee with a drop of milk (16).
kosta n. coast (6).
kostatu vtd. have difficulty, find it a lot of trouble (to) (17).
kotxe n. (syn. of auto) (10).
kristau adj., n. Christian (39).
kritika n. criticism (35).
kross n. cross-country (running) (36).
kuadro kuaadro.
*kultura n. culture (15).
kunplitu vt. 1. carry out, perform (39). 2. fulfill, keep (a promise, wish, etc.).
*kuksi n. flavor, touch, taste (27).
kutxa n. 1. trunk; box (36). 2. (also aurrezki " a savings bank.
L
*labar n. knife (34).
laborantza n. farming; agriculture (30).
larrior n. brick (32).
*lagun n. 1. friend (2). 2. person; member; inhabitant.
lagundu vt., vtd. 1. help. 2. accompany (35).
lagunto n. help, aid (36).
lobster −laster.
laket n. 1. pleasure. 2. a izan vtd. (syn. of gustatu) (29).
lan n. 1. work; job (7). 2. a egin vtd. work (11).
languardu vt. 1. work on, e.g. oso hau a behor du gu, we must work on this problem. 2. cultivate, develop (35).
langel n. drizzle (32).
langile n. worker (8). — adj. hard-working, industrious.
lantegi n. workshop, Factory (7).
lapur n. thief (25).
lapurdi pn. Lapurdi, Basque province north of Navarre, west of
Low Navarre and east of Gipuzcoa, containing the eastern Basque
coast and bordering on Gascony to the north (6).
lapurtar adj., n. Lapurdian, native of Lapurdi.
lapurtu vt(d). rob (25).
Lorrehun, Lorrego. -laureen, laur-
rogei.
larunbat(a) n. Saturday (7).
larregi dt., adv. (syn. of
gabidegi) (17).
larrri adj. serious, bad, crit-
ical. -adv. seriously, bad, badly (36).
larrri n. skin (32).
lasai adv., adj. calm, untroub-
bled (2).
lasaitasun n. calm, tranquility
(28).
laster n. soon; quickly (14).
latin n. Latin (34).
lazlz adj. 1. rough. 2. hard,
harsh (38).
lau dt. four (1).
laudatu vt. praise (40).
laurehun dt. four hundred (5).
laurogai dt. eighty (4).
laztan n. 1. affection; entrea-
tment (38). 2. careess.
laztasun n. 1. roughness. 2.
hardness, severity. 3. hardship (38).
legatz n. hake (5).
lege n. law (34).
legez pp., cj. (syn. of bezala)
(18).
lehen adv. 1. First, firstly (13).
2. before, beforehand; baino pp., cj. before (8). 3. eago before, earlier, previously
(23). 4. eago adjt. earlier, pre-
vious; before; last; other, e.g.
eago elkarekin, last week, the week
before; eago egun, the other
day, the day before, the previous
day (23). -pr. adj. first (13).
lehenbait(ak)
lehun adv. as soon as possible, as early as possible
(37).
lehenbizi or lehendabizi adv. 1.
syn. of lehen adv. 1.) (20,39).
2. eko adjt. (syn. of lehen
adj.).
lehenengo adjt. (syn. of lehen
adj.) (32).
lehengasun n. cousin.
lehortu vt. 1. burst; explode,
bloq up. 2. break down, be over-
come, e.g. penaz tarte Anttono hil
zen, overcome with grief Antonio
died (39).
lehiaketa n. competition (36).
leiho n. window (9).
loku n. place (19).
lenoa in. (syn. of hizkuntza)
(40).
letxu n. lettuce (7).
libera n. franc (28).
libra n. pound (500 grams) (7).
libre adv. adj. free (5).
liburu n. book (9): wenda book-
store (21).
literatura n. literature (26).
litro n. liter (7).
lo adv. asleep (37). -n. 1.
sleep: xtan adv. asleep. 2. x
egin vt. sleep (17). 3. ak
hartz fall asleep, e.g. hark
hurtu minduen, I fell asleep (28).
lodi adj. thick (32).
logela n. bedroom (9).
lokale n. premises, place (36).
lore n. flower (7).
'lortu vt. 1. obtain, get. 2. achieve; get to (23).
'lotsa n. 1. shame, shamefulness. 2. izan vt. be ashamed; be shy (34).
'lotsagarrri adj. shameful, disgraceful, outrageous (35).
'lur n. land; country (10).
'lurrerde n. region, country (8).
luzatu vt. 1. lengthen. 2. stretch out. 3. proffer, offer. 4. delay, postpone (35).
'luz n. adj. long (49).

madariku adj. damn, damned, goddam (34).
'mahalin(n) n. table (5).
'malaltz n. May (9).
'mallen n. 1. step. 2. level. 3. grade, degree (8).
'maindirre n. sheet (for a bed) (25).
'maiarazgo n. inherited estate (39).
'maitasun n. love (29).
'maitatu vt. love (13).
'maito adj., n. 1. dear, beloved (31). 2. ukan vt. love (16).
'maintz adv. often, frequently (30).
'makila n. stick; walking stick (25).
'makina bat. dt. a lot (of) (39).
'maldizio n. curse (37).
'malezgan n. maliciousness; cunning (39).
'malkartzu adj. rough, rugged (35).
'manifestatu vt. express, declare (39).
'manifestazio n. demonstration (24).
'mankommunitate n. community (35).
'mantendu n. maintain (35).

'mapa n. map (18).
'mariniro n. sailor (39).
'markatu vt. mark (33).
'marksen n. marquis (39).
'martxu n. March (9).
'materiale n. material (36).
'matrikula n. enrollment, registration (8).
'mediku n. doctor, physician (35).
'mehe adj. thin (32).
'mekaniko n. mechanic (20).
'memoria n. memory (39).
'merkede n. century (26).
'mendehalde n. west (8).
'mendi n. mountain, hill (9).
'menperatutu vt. dominate (37).
'merezi n. 1. merit. 2. ukan vt. deserve; be worthwhile, be worth (doing) (33).
'merkatu n. market (6).
'merekko adj. cheap (7).
'mesede n. 1. favor. 2. z please (2).
'metro n. meter (8): koadro square meter.
'mezo n. (Christian) mass (29).
'milla dt. (a) thousand (5).
'millin dt., n. million (5).
'mim n. 1. pain; ache, e.g. buruko %, headache; hoginetoko %, toothache. 2. eggin or eman vt(d). hurt (31).
'mineral adj. mineral: ur % mineral water (?).
'ministeritza n. ministry (36).
'mintzatu vt. speak (27).
'mirari n. miracle, marvel (33).
'modu n. 1. way, manner. 2. van cj. (in) the way, as. 3. zer % how; how're you doing? (0).
'moko n. beak (37).
'moldatu vt. form, formulate, arrange, create (33).
'momentu n. moment (35).
'morroi n. 1. lad, boy. 2. servant
nafartar adj., n. (syn. of nafar).
*nagusi adj. main, principal, chief (8). —n. boss, head, chief; owner (25).
nahasi vi. mix; get mixed up, get confused. —vt. mix; confuse. — adj. confused (37).
*nahi n. 1. wish. 2. % ukan vt. want (2,3); *ago ukan prefer (17).
*nahiko(a) adj., adv. enough (23).
*nahiz, ~ eta cj. although (33).
natura n. nature (40).
nazio n. nation, country (37).
pazional adj. national (23).
*negar n. 1. weeping, tears. ~rez adv. weeping, crying. 2. ~ egin vt. cry, weep (33).
negu n. winter (37).
*nekatu vt., vt. tire: ~rik, ~ta adv. tired (5).
neko n. 1. hard work, effort. 2. fatigue (38). 3. ~z adv. hardly, scarcely, barely; with difficulty (34).
neroni pron. (erg. NERONEK, dat. NERONI, etc.) I myself (30).
neska n. girl; gal. chick (1).
neskame n. maid, female servant (33).
neure ref. pos. pron. my, my own (31).
neurri n. 1. measure. 2. degree, extent (34). 3. ~an cj. to the extent that, inasmuch as.
ni pron. I, me (2).
*nivaur pron. (syn. of neroni) (30).
*nobela n. novel (26).
nobia n. (syn. of andragai) (39).
noiz adv. when (9); ~behinka adv. now and then (33).
noizhai adv. sometime (22).
nola adv. how (4): *ko adlj. what kind of, what ... like (14).

nolabait adv. somehow (15).

noLotaN *nola.

non adv. where (4).

nombait adv. somewhere (15).

nor pron. who (6).

norbait pron. someone, somebody (9).

normal adj. normal (32).

normalki adv. normally (32).

*noski adv. of course (9).

*ntzt postpositional suf. towards, in the direction of, aimed at (20).

*numerO n. number (9).

n dim. suf. (19).

*obligatu vt. oblige (40).

obra n. building, construction (35).

*oficial adj. official (10).

odol n. blood (9).

ogi n. bread (7).

dhe n. bed (9).

dhe usually (see U.37).

*ilasiko n. chicken (7).

*ilO n. hen (10).

*oin n. foot (32): *ecz Joan/etorri/ibili vt. walk (6).

*oinarri n. 1. footstone. 2. basic; basis, foundation (36): *eczko adlj. or adj. basic, fundamental, rudimentary.

*oinetako n. (syn. of zapata) (21).

*olio n. oil (7).

*omen mp. it is said that (see U.34).

*on adj. good (2).

*onartu vt. 1. accept. 2. approve (35).

*ondo adv. (syn. of ongi) (2).

*ondo pp., adv. 1. van etc. by, beside, next to (8). 2. *van (also cj.) (syn. of ondoren pp., cj., adv.): *ko adlj. (33).

*ondoren pp., cj. after, following (9). —adv. after, afterwards, then. —n. (syn. of ondorio) (37).

ondorio n. consequence, result (37).

*ongi adv. well (22).

*onra, ondra n. honor (39).

*onratu, ondratu vt. honor (39).

*ontsa adv. (syn. of ongi) (29).

*oparotason n. abundance (36).

*opil n. bread roll (10).

*orain adv. 1. now (3). 1. “(dela) ago (35). 3. *ädik still; yet (8).

*orazio n. prayer (39).

*ordaindu vt. pay (35).

*ordez cj., pp. instead of (19).

*ordu n. 1. hour (1): *bete among hour. 2. o'clock: *bata one o'clock, *biak two o'clock (1). 3. time (of day). 4. time (at which something happens etc.); *berez at the same time (36). 5. *van cj. when, at the time when. 6. *van adlj. then, at that time: (3): *ko adlj.; * tik, *danik from then on, since then (26).

*orsu n. dough (25).

*orsu n. (syn. of ordu 1, 2.) (1).

*oro dt., pron. all, every, everything, everyone (40).

*orotu vt. u. Last. remember (32).

*orri n. 1. leaf. 2. sheet (of paper); leaflet; form (8).

orrirale n. page (36).

*osaba n. uncle (7).

*osasun n. health (35).

*osin n. nettle (35).
oso adj. whole; complete (15).

*rik adv. completely, entirely (35). —adv. very (2, 28).

ospatu vt. celebrate (7).

*ospere n. fame, renown (26).

ostalari n. hotel-keeper, inn-keeper (28).

ostatu n. hotel, inn (4).

oste pp.; adv. 1. van etc. behind (20). 2. vrai cj. (syn. of hechيج cj.).

ostegun n. Thursday (7).

ostikada n. kick (37).

*ostirai(e) n. Friday (7).

*ote mp. perhaps (see 0.34).

otoi trn. please! (31).

otsoi n. February (9).

otson n. wolf.

P

*pagatu vt. (syn. of ordaindu) (10).

poke bake.

*paket n. packet; package (7).

*paper* n. paper (9).

paraje n. place, spot (35).

pare n. pair; couple (21).

parka n. park (36).

parte n. 1. part. 2. *hartu vt.; take part, participate (23).

partida n. match, game (36).

osos pasatu.

*pasaporte n. passport (28).

*pasa(tu) vi. 1. (syn. of iragan) (18). 2. (syn. of gertatu 1.). — vt. (syn. of iragan).

*paseatu vi. go for a stroll, go for a walk; go for a ride, etc. (17).

*patata n. potato (7).

*patxaran n. patxaran, pacharan (a liqueur made with sloe berries) (9).

*pe pp. van etc. under, below (19).

pelota n. 1. ball. 2. handball,

"jai alai," "pelota" (36).

pelotari n. "jai alai" player (36).

pena n. sorrow, grief (39).

*pentsatu vt. think (14).

pentsu n. fodder (35).

*ertosna n. person (10).

*peseta n. peseta (7).

*pozeta (c) a =peseta.

*pila bat dt. a lot of, piles (of) (21).

pintatu vt. paint (36).

*pi̇sko =pixka.

pixka n. little bit; a bat dt.

a little, a bit (4); ska, *maka adv. little by little, gradually, slowly (6).

*piztu vi. come on (a light, etc.).

light up; start up, begin. — vt. turn on, put on, light up (34).

*plater n. plate, dish (14).

plaza n. plaza, square; marketplace; village or town center (6).

*pobre adj. poor (26).

poliki adv. slowly (13).

*polit n. politician (2).

politika n. politics (36).

*politiko adj. political.

*polizia n. 1. policeman. 2. police lice (28).

portu n. port; harbor (36).

*poxpolu n. match (15).

*poz n. 1. joy (27). 2. *ik adv. happy, content; happily (10).

*pozasun n. (syn. of poz) (38).

*pozu vi. be glad, be happy (8).

prehistoriko adj. prehistoric (34).

*preza n. hurry, haste (32).— ukān vt. be in a hurry.

*preza *ik adv. in a hurry; hurriedly, quickly, fast (35).

*presentatu vt. 1. (syn. of aurkezu) (36). 2. introduce (some-
preso n. prisoner, captive; person in prison (36).
prost adv. captive; in prison, in jail (28).
prestatu vt. prepare, get something ready. —vt. prepare, get ready (35).
proziatu vt. esteem, hold in esteem (40).
prozzo n. price (26).
printze n. prince (40).
probintzia n. province (6).
problema n. problem (10).
projektu n. project (23).
proposamen n. proposal, proposition (36).
publikatu n. publish (39).
puska n. piece, part (35).
puskatu vt. break; break down.
—vt. break (19).
R
rugby n. rugby (36).
S
sagar n. apple.
sagardo n. cider (10).
sagardotegi n. cider house, establishment where cider is made and sold (10).
smatu vt. w. lessen, try, attempt (19).
sakabanatu vt. disperse, spread about (36).
salbamendu n. salvation (31).
saldia n. clear soup, broth (14).
saldia vt. sell (6).
saltzailen n. seller, vendor (21).
semar adj. quite, rather, pretty (see u. 32).
santu adj. holy, hallowed, sacred, blessed (13).
sarde n. pitchfork (37).
sardeska n. (table) fork.
sari n. prize; reward (36).
sarrera n. 1. entry; entrance. 2. ticket (of admission) (33).
sarri adv. 1. often (16). 2. soon (29).
sartu vt. go in, come in, enter (8). —vt. put in, insert, introduce.
saskibalo n. basketball (35).
segidau adv. (syn. of berchala) (33).
segitu vt(d). (syn. of jarraitu) (31).
segurik adv. certainly (31).
segurti adv. surely, no doubt (32).
seguro +seguru.
segur(u) adj. sure. —adv. sure, surely (16).
sei dt. six (1).
seinale n. signal; sign; mark. —adj. designated (39).
seokatu n., adj. secret (39).
sekula adv. (syn. of inoi) (31).
sekulako adj. fantastic, great (35).
sekulon +sekula.
semaforo n. traffic light (20).
seme n. son (21).
senar n. husband (22).
sentitu +sentitu.
semeno adj. strong, vigorous (36).
sentimentu n. feeling, sentiment (39).
sentititu vt., vt. Peal (18).
serio(3) adj. serious (32).
seriotasun n. seriousness (32).
sinadura n. signature (36).
sinetsi vt(s). believe (31).
so adv. 1. (syn. of begira i.) (36). 2. +egin vt(c). look (at).
sobra dt. adv. (syn. of gehi-egei) (28).
soinu n. sound (37).
soldadu n. soldier (28).
solomo n. loin steak (14).
sorgin n. witch (31).
*voina n. wealth (32).
*tisuna n. friendship (33).
*teluko n. telephone (9).
*cure n. cure (5).
*sbeto n. sooth (16).
*sbeto adj. soothing. —vt. soothe, comfort; —n. salve, balm (21).
*taberna n. bar (2).
*tabernari n. barman, barmaid, bartender (27).
*taberna -taberna.
*trailer n. 1. workshop. 2. car repair shop, garage (20).
*taberna n. group (24).
*tenta n. tent (48).
*tar see -ar.
*tasun der. suf. forming abstract nouns (see U.34).
*teatro n. theater (31).
*telisukatu n. roof (37).
*telobista n. television (9).
*teletiano n. television (9).
*tenedore n. (syn. of sardeska) (34).
*tenis n. tennis (36).
*tenere n. time (of day); time (when) (29).
*tenetatu n. tempt; lead (someone) on (39).
*terreno n. ground, terrain (35).
*tipi adj. (syn. of tskik) (31).
*tiplua n. onion (7).
*toka n. a certain game (36).
*tokatu v.id. 1. be one's turn, e.g. not my turn; 2. win, fall to. 3. behave (39).
*toki n. place (3).
*tomate n. tomato (7).
*tomelada n. ton (35).
*tonto adj. dumb, stupid. —n. fool (21).
*tontor n. 1. protuberance. 2. summit, top (9).
*tori n. here, here you are (spoken when giving or offering somebody something) (4).
*tornu n. turn, chance (40).
*traktore n. tractor (37).
*traza n. (syn. of antz) (39).
*tren n. train (17).
*tripa n. belly (37).
*tristatu, tristetu vt. become sad. —vt. sadden (32).
*triste adj., adv. sad (25).
*tristura n. sadness (39).
*tsu 1. der. suf. forming adjectives. 2. suf. expressing vague-ness used with adjectives and adverbs (see U.36).
*txipl +tipl.
*turismo n. tourism, tourist trade (8).
*txokur +zakur.
*txalo n. applause (38).
*txantxan n. joke: txantxetan adv. joking, jokingly (14).
*txar adj. bad (3).
*txaranga n. brass band that plays in the streets etc. especially on festive occasions (36).
*txarto adv. (syn. of gaizki) (18).
*txerri +zerri
*txiki adj. small, little (2).
*txintxo +zintxo.
*txo oln. suf. (see U.19).
*txu oln. suf. (see U.19).
*txukun adj. neat, tidy (30).
*txuketa n. chop (5).
*txaille der. suf. forming agent nouns from verbs (see U.31).
-tzat postpositional suf. for (see U.10, U.34).

U

*uda n. summer (32).

*udaberti n. spring (32).

udal n. 1. municipality. 2. town council, municipal corporation (35).

*udaletxe n. town hall, city hall (49).

*udazken n. autumn, fall (32).

ugazaba n. master; owner; boss (37).

ukan vt. (ps. OUT) 1. have. 2. be, e.g. olta Amerkteton out. my father is in Amerika. 3. aux. verb in comp. tenses (8).

uleratu vt. understand (9).

ume n. child (1).

umegai n. fetus (35).

umetzak n. childhood (38).

umezurtz n. orphan (26).

umoretsa adj. temperament. (38).

ume n. moment (32).

unibertsitate n. university (21).

u m. water (7).

urdin adj. blue (10).

urre n. gold (25).

urri n. October (9). -adj. (syn. of oskas).

urrun ad. far (30).

urrundu vt. go far away, move away, leave (31).

urruti ad. (syn. of urrun) (10).

urtarril n. January (9).

urte n. year (6): "bete a year.

urtero ad. every year (37).

usain n. smell (36).

usatu vt. (syn. of erabili) (32).

uste n. 1. opinion, belief. 2. "ukan vt. think, believe (4).

ustel adj. rotten (31).


*uztai n. July (9).

X

xahatu vt. spend (31).

xar -txar.

xarmant adj. charming (32).

xede n. objective, goal, purpose (36).

xurgatu vt. suck (37).

Z

*zabal adj. 1. wide, broad (32).

2. *ik ad. open (16).

*zabaldu vt., vt. 1. widen, broaden. 2. spread, spread out (25).

3. (syn. of ireki).

zahagi n. bottle (made of) leather, wineskin (37).

*zahar adj. old (2).

*zail adj. hard, difficult (15).

*zai(n) ad. waiting, e.g. zure n hogo, I'm waiting for you (7).

*zaindu vt. look after, protect, watch (34).

zaku n. sack (37).

*zakur n. dog (17).

*zaldi n. horse (25).

*zapata n. shoe (21).

zarata n. noise (32).

zati n. piece, part, division (37).

*zazpi dc. seven (7).

'zehar ad. across, through (8).

'zeharo ad. thoroughly, completely, totally (33).

'zein dc. which (3). -pron. (syn. of nor).

'zelai adj. flat (of terrain) (8).

—n. 1. plain. 2. field: futbol n soccer field (35).

'zelan ad. (syn. of nola) (19).

'zehbat dc. a few, some, several
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Page 354</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>(29).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>*zenbat  dt. how many, how much (1).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>zendako  adv. (syn. of zergatik) (31).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>zentru  n. center (36).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>*zor pron. what (1). —pr. dt. what, e.g. *orduton, at what time (3) : *moduz adv. how (3).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>*zerbait pron. something (9). — adv. somewhat.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>*zerbeza  n. beer (9).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>zeren  cj. because (40).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>*zergatik adv. why (15).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>zerori pron. (erg. ZEROIRIKE, dat. ZERORRI, etc.) you yourself (39).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>*zerri  n. pig (10).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>zertxobait pron. adv. a little bit (dat. of zerait).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>*zeru  n. 1. sky (10). 2. heaven.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>zure ref. pos. pron. your, your own (31).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>*zigarro  n. cigarette (11).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>zigor  n. 1. whip (37). 2. punishment (38).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>zigorutu  vt. 1. punish. 2. oppress (37).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>zinurtu  vt. wrinkle (31).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>zinez adv. really, seriously, honestly (33).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>zinto  adj. faithful, reliable, honest (37).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>zopa  n. 1. soup; arrain fish soup (5). 2. bread soaked in soup, milk, wine, etc. (37).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>*zorigaitz  n. misfortune, bad luck: *nez adv. unfortunately (30).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(30).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>*zorion  n. 1. (good) luck: *nez adv. fortunately, luckily (30). 2. happiness (27).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>*zoritxar n. (syn. of zorigaitz) (31).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>*zoro  adj. crazy (35).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>zorogarri, zoragarri  adj. delightful, splendid (35).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>zorrotz  adj. 1. sharp. 2. severe, harsh (35).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>zoroztu  vt. sharpen (10).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>*zortzi  dt. eight (1).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>zu  pron. you (2).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>*Zuberoa  pn. Zuberoa, the smallest Basque province, situated north of Navarre and east of Low Navarre, bordering on the Bearn region of Gascony to the east (6).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>zubero tar adj., n. native of Zuberoa.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>*zubi  n. bridge (19).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>zueck  pron. you (pl.) (2).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>zuhaitz  n. (syn. of arbola).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>zuhaur  pron. (syn. of zerori).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>*zulo  n. hole (35).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>*zuri  adj. white (2).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>zuritu  vt. whiten; whitewash (36). 2. convince, talk (someone) into (something).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>zutabe  n. column (36).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>*zuzen  adj. 1. straight. 2. honest. 3. correct. —adv. straight, directly (11).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>*zuzendari  n. 1. director. 2. conductor (36).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>English</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>--------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>a bot</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>able:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>not be</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>be</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>about buruz</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>above goton;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>gotonean</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>abroad ozerrion,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>kanpean</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>absolutely guztiz,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>erbobat</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>accept onortu</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>accident bstrpu</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>by</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>according to arabora;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dienez</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>account kontu</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ache mkn</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>heada, buruko mkn</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tooth, hoginetoko</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mkn</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>achieve lortu</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>across zehar, goldnol</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>address helmite</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>advantage abontall</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>advisable komenti</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>afraid:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>be</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>be</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>baldur izon</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>after ondoren, eta</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>gero, -z gero</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>afternoon, arratsalde</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>afterwards ondoren</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>again berri, berrlo</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>against konta, ourka</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>age edin</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
| ago oraln, oraln dela | a, soon, bezail, lo-
| long %/some time    | aster, eta berenola|
| apsoldi           | a, vell, gainpero|
| agree              | ascend, lgon    |
| konforme agon;     | ashamed:        |
| ados egon; konforme | be, lotta, lzon|
| jarri, ados jarri. | ask, gazдетu, galde|
| agriculture        | egin, etaundu    |
| nekozarlitzoa      | a, for/% (someone) to |
cup tozo, kikaro
cupboard ormaicu
custom ohitura
cut (v.) ebaki, moztu
damage (n.) kalte
(v.) kalte egin
depart (n.) dantza
(v.) dantzatua, dantza egin
danger arrisku
dark (n.) don
daughter alabo
day egun
~ off jol
every ~ egunero
these ~, nowate
gour egun
death hill (lk)
dear molte
death bertze
December obendu
deceive erobaki
depth sokan
delicious gozo
demonstration (protest) manifestazio
descent joltsi
deserve merezi ukon
desk (n.) oza
dialect dialecto
diagram hiztegi
the hill
different desberdin, bestelako
difficult zoll, goltz
difficulty zaitasun
have ~ kowatu

dinner (evening meal) ofort
have ~ ofaldzu

direct (adj./adv.) zuzan

(v.) zuendu
director zuendari
dirt zipper, koka
dirty zipper, lohi
disgraceful lotsago

dish plate

district eskualde
do egin
doctor mediku
dog zokur
dollar dollar
donkey asto
door ate
dough ore
down behera
downstairs behean, behera
dozens dozen
dream (n.) amets
(v.) amets egin, a
ametsaton ola izan
dress (n./v.) jauntzil
get ~ jauntzi
drink (n.) edarl
(v.) edan

drive (n.) buelta,
drive (v.) konduztu, kon
deixa/autoa eroman
driver trafer

~'s license (kondu
ztzeko) kornet
drop (n./v.) tonza
(v.) eroiti; jaltsi
dry (adj.) lehor
(v.) lehurtu
drunk (state) mozkortu
(v.-rk/-to)
get ~ mozkortu

(habitual) mozkortu
dumb (stupid) tonza
each bakolitz
~ other elkor
ear belarri
ear goltz
earlier Lehenago,
golazo
earn lebazi
earth lur
easily erraz
east ekladage
easy erraz
east jain
egg arroulzte
eight zortzi
eighty tourogi
either era
~ ... or edo ... edo

electric elektriko

element elemendu

eleven homaika
else gehiago; bestae
~(rk)
or ~ (edo) bestela
embrace besarke
empty huts(uk)
end (n.) bukara; mutur
in the ~ azken
(v.) bukare, azoitu,
fiintu
England Inglaterra
English Ingles
enjoy otsegin ukan

~ oneself ongi poso
tu
enough aski, nahika
~ to odina
enroll matrikulo tu
enrollment matrikula
tenter sortu
entrance barrera
escape this egin,


Leusi joan

escaping this
especially botez ere
exceptera eta obar
Baskadi Euskadi.
even ere
evening gau, arrats
ever inolz, sekula,
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Spanish Phrase</th>
<th>English Translation</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>fright ikara</td>
<td>frighten</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>frighten ikaratu,</td>
<td>nowadays, at the time,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tzu, baldurtu</td>
<td>in fact,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>front:</td>
<td>in fact,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>in &amp; aureen, oldi-</td>
<td>national,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nean</td>
<td>national,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fruit fruta</td>
<td>fruit,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>full bete(-rik/-ta)</td>
<td>fully,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>furthermore galn era</td>
<td>and so on,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>gain brabei</td>
<td>gain,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>game solo; portldo</td>
<td>game,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>garage garoje; tolor</td>
<td>garage,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>garden barotze</td>
<td>garden,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>gasoline gasolina</td>
<td>gasoline,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>gather bildu</td>
<td>gather,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>general (adj.) oro-</td>
<td>general (adj.),</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>kor</td>
<td>general (adj.),</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>gentleman joun</td>
<td>gentleman,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>geographical geogra-</td>
<td>geographical,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fiko</td>
<td>geographical,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>geography geografia</td>
<td>geography,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>get lortu; brilet;</td>
<td>get,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>golditutu, goratu;</td>
<td>gold,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>egin</td>
<td>go,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>☰ along konponde</td>
<td>along,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>☰ in sortu</td>
<td>in,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>☰ out otera</td>
<td>out,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>☰ out! ale! kendu!</td>
<td>out,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>☰ to (do) lortu</td>
<td>to,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>☰ up altzotu, jaki</td>
<td>up,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gipuzkoa Gipuzkoa</td>
<td>Gipuzkoa,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>native of ☰, Gipuzko-</td>
<td>native of,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>an gipuzkoor</td>
<td>Gipuzkoor,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>girl nesko, neskota,</td>
<td>girl,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>neskotilo</td>
<td>girl,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>give emon</td>
<td>give,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>☰ back litzuli</td>
<td>back,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>glad pozik</td>
<td>glad,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>be ☰ poztu</td>
<td>be,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>glass baso; kepo</td>
<td>glass,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>go Joan; jo; bilih</td>
<td>go,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>☰ away Joan, olde</td>
<td>away,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>egin</td>
<td>go,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>☰ back litzuli</td>
<td>back,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>☰ down jaitsi</td>
<td>down,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>☰ in(to) sortu.</td>
<td>in (to),</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>☰ on jarratu, segi-</td>
<td>on,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tu</td>
<td>something,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>☰ out (exit) otera,</td>
<td>out,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>lnten</td>
<td>out,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>☰ out (e.g. a light)</td>
<td>out,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>litzall</td>
<td>light,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>☰ up ligan</td>
<td>up,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>god jakin, jaungoko</td>
<td>god,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>gold urra</td>
<td>gold,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>good on: jator</td>
<td>good,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>be ☰ for komet lizan</td>
<td>for,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>goodbye odio, ogur</td>
<td>goodbye,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>goodness me! arroloo!</td>
<td>goodness,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>government gobern</td>
<td>government,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>the Basque ☰ Eusko</td>
<td>the Basque,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Jaurlaritzeta, euskal</td>
<td>Jaurlaritzeta,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>gobern</td>
<td>Euskal</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>gradually pixka(na)ko</td>
<td>gradually,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>grammar xamotiko</td>
<td>grammar,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>grandfather altzona</td>
<td>grandfather,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>grandmother omo</td>
<td>grandmother,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>great handi</td>
<td>great,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>green berde</td>
<td>green,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>greet agurtu</td>
<td>greet,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ground lur</td>
<td>ground,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>group talde; mutzoz</td>
<td>group,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>grow hazi</td>
<td>grow,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Guipuzcoa Gipuzkoa</td>
<td>Guipuzcoa,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hair lle</td>
<td>hair,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hake logotz</td>
<td>hake,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>half erdl</td>
<td>half,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hand esku</td>
<td>hand,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>on the other ☰ be-</td>
<td>on the other,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ritz; beste aletik</td>
<td>be,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>happen gertotu</td>
<td>happen,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>happily pozik</td>
<td>happily,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>happiness zorlan</td>
<td>happiness,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>happy aito; pozik,</td>
<td>happy,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>gogora</td>
<td>pozik,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>be ☰ poztu</td>
<td>be,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hard gogor; zoll</td>
<td>hard,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>harm (n.) kalte</td>
<td>harm,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(v.) kalte egin</td>
<td>harm,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>have lizan, ukon, edu-</td>
<td>have,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>kl; hortu</td>
<td>kl; hortu,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>☰ (for) breakfast/</td>
<td>(for),</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>lunch/dinner gosalku-</td>
<td>lunch/dinner,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>du/bazkaldue/zaldue</td>
<td>bazkaldue,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>☰ coffee/wine/a cigar-</td>
<td>coffee/wine,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ret kafea/ardeko/zigar-</td>
<td>kafea/ardeko,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>garro bat hortu</td>
<td>garro bat,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>☰ a walk/a ride</td>
<td>a walk/a ride,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bueko bat emon</td>
<td>bueko bat,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>☰ to behar ukon</td>
<td>to,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>head buru; naguz</td>
<td>head,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>health osasun</td>
<td>health,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>heat entsun, aditu</td>
<td>heat,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>heat (n.) bero</td>
<td>heat,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(v.) berotu</td>
<td>-berotu,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>heavy osun</td>
<td>heavy,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hello kaixo</td>
<td>hello,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>help (n.) laguntza</td>
<td>help,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(v.) lagundu</td>
<td>(v.),</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hen oiko</td>
<td>hen,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>here hemen</td>
<td>here,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>☰ is hona (hemen)</td>
<td>is,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>☰ you are tort, hortu</td>
<td>you are,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hey! odizu</td>
<td>hey,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hi! oupa, kaixo</td>
<td>hi,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hide ezkutatu, gorde</td>
<td>hide,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>high altu, goroz; gol-</td>
<td>high,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-ko, gog-</td>
<td>-ko, gog-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hill mendii; aldap</td>
<td>hill,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>historical historic</td>
<td>historical,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>History historia</td>
<td>history,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hit jo</td>
<td>hit,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hold cutsi, otzeki;</td>
<td>hold,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>eduki</td>
<td>hold,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hole zulo</td>
<td>hole,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>home etxe; etzer</td>
<td>home,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>honest zuzen, zintza</td>
<td>honest,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>honey eszi</td>
<td>honey,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hope (n.) esperantza,</td>
<td>hope,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>litaronpen</td>
<td>esperantza,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(v.) espero oke</td>
<td>espero,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>horse zoldi</td>
<td>horse,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hot bero</td>
<td>hot,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hotel ostotu</td>
<td>hotel,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>☰ owner ostolar</td>
<td>owner,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
hour ordu, oren
an % ordubete
half an % ordu erdlo
house etxe
how nota, zelen; zer
moduz
% many/much zelna
however hola ere
hundred elon
a % elon
two % berrenun
hungry:
be % gaza zioa,
gasek epan
hurry (n.) presa
be in a % presa ukon
in a % presoka,
korraka
hurt min egia, min
eman
husband senar

I ni, new
% myself neroni, nihour
idea osmo, idela
identity mortarun
% card korret
if bar-, boldin
ill etl, galsa(rkl)
immediately bersho
immigrant mailmigron
important Important
impossible ezin, ezun-
neko
it's % ezin do,
ezina do
improve hobetu
inasmuch as neurian
indeed beneton
independence Independ-
dezeta
Industrial Industrial
industry Industria
influence crogin
inform jokinoko
information informazio
inhabitant bizitagar
inn ostatu
% keeper ostolarl
inside borrarun,
barnean
instead of behorean,
ordez
instrument tresna
intend osmo ukon
intention osmo
interest (n.) interes
(v.) interesatu
interesting interes-
garr
international nazio-
-orteko
introduce (someone)
presentatu
invent asmatu
invite gontilotu
island urba
issue (question) ogra-
zo
jacket txuketo
"jai alai" pelota
% player pelotari
January urtortu
job ton
jokes txirsta
jokingly taxo
txeton
joy poz
July ustall
June ekain
just justu; barri
keep gorde
key gilotza
kill hill
kilo(gram) kilo(gram-
no)
kilometer kilometro
kind (n.) moto, era
this % (of) ho(ne)-
leg zango; hango; let-
ter
lend utzi
less gutago
often gutagotan
more or gut gora
berera
lesson ikasgol
let utzi
letter eskutitz, kor-
ta
lettuce Ltxu
level (n.) malla
library biblioteka
license kert
lie (n.) gezur
(tell lies) gezurra esan
(lies down) etzan
life bizitza, bizit
lift (v.) jaso, alt-
taxatu
light (clear) argi,
(not heavy) arin
(a match) su
traffic z semiordan
(v.) plitu
like (cj., prop.) ba-
zala, Legez, antse-
roz, bezalzo, Legesz-
ko, antzeko
this, so ho(no)-
la, ho(nc)lako
that, so halo,
hala
be, look crut-
ditu, antza eduki
what ... ho lako
(v.) gustatu, lakat
izan, atsegia, ukon,
molte ukon
limit (n.) muga
lip espoln
list zerrenda
listen entzun
liter litro
literature literatura
little txi, tipl;
gut
a txikko bat, apur-
bat
by txikko(na)ko,
apurka
live (v.) bizit lizan
living (adj.) bizit
living room egongela
local bertako
loan steak solomo
long luze
look (v.) begiratu,
so egina
v! begira!
(appear) truditu,
emun
v after zaldun
v at begiratu
v for bitatu
v like truditu, an-
tza eduki
lord jaun
lose galdu
lot:
ho asko, plitu bat,
makina bat
love (n.) moitasun,
andoio
(v.) molte ukon
low bazu, apal
luck suerte
lucky zardone(z)ko
lunch baxkari
have (for) v baz-
kaldun
machine makina, ap-
rolltu
mail (v.) postraz/ko-
rroz bidali
mein nagusi
make egin
(meal) prestatu
man glioa
manner era, modu,
giela
many asko, antzi,
holinbat, hamaika
times askotan,
hamaika aldiz
as v, so holin-
beste, holinbat
as as odina, holin-
beste, beste
not v gutu
map mapa
March mortxa
market merkatatu
marriage ezkontza
marry:
get v ezkundu
mass (ceremony) meza
master jabe, uga-
zobo, jaun
match (light) pokolulu
(game) partida
material gol, mate-
riale
matter (subject) gal,
oraio
it doesn’t v berrin
do, ez dio importik
what’s the v? zer
do? zer garatzen
do?
what’s the v with X?
ze du Xek?
May molatz
maybe balsateke, ba-
liteke; aglan, ber-
harbada
me nl, neu
mean (v.) esan nahi
ukon
meanwhile bitartean
measure (n.) neurri
offer (v.) eskaint
office butego
official ofizial
often askatan, molz, sarrl
wer gehiegoton, satzago
oil ello
okay (adv.) ongl, ondo
(int.) bolo, konforme
old zahor
omelet orraultzopil, tortilla
on, on top (of) gainneau
once bohlha
one bat
another batok bestea, etxoa
onion tapiola
only (adj.) bakar (adv.) bokarruk, ez... balzik, ez... bestelik
not ... but ez elzik
open (adv.) ire-kli(-rik/-ta), zoba-llik
(v.) irekli, zabaldu
opinion eriztu, vaste
opportunity okera
opposite aurkoko
or edo; ala
else (edo) besteloa
oral ahozko
orally ahoz
orange loronja
order (v.) agindu
(in a restaurant, etc.) eskatu
ordinary onent
organization orokunde
organize oratu, onto-
ovo
other beste
each % elkar
on the % hand be-
rriz, osteroa; bes-
ete aldeltik
the % day lehengo
egun
er otherwise bestela
ought beharkoa (nuko, etc.)
cour(s) gure; gure
out konporo, koteria;
konpon, koleon
outrageous latsagarri
outside konpon
over gainneau; gainne-
tik; bukaturik/-ta
% there hon, hantze
ove zor ukon
owner jabe, nagust
package pakete
packer pakete
page orratik
pain min
paint (v.) pintatu
pair pare
palace jaurregn
paper paper; egun-
kort
pardon:
I beg your % borkatu
parent guruso
park (n.) parka
(v.) aparkatu, (au-
tak/toa) utz
part zotti; parte; al-
do
take % parte hortu
particularly berezi-
kilt, botoz are
pass (v.) pasatu
icoren
passport pasaporte
pest (adv., prep.)
ondoan
path bide, bidetko
patriot(ic) abertzale
patxaran patxaran
pay (v.) pagaturo, ar-
dindu
peace bake
peaceful boketsu, las-
alc
"pelota" pelota
% player gelotari
pen:
(ball-point) bold-
groko, bolli
(Fountain) lumka
pencil lapitz
people jende; herri
perhaps beharbada,
oglon; ote
period oldi
permission bolzen
person partisan
peseta pesetko
photograph orgoztik,
foto
physician mediku
pick up jaso
picture koadro
piece peska, opur;
zotti
pier kol
pig zerrut
pity (n.) pene
place (n.) leku, tokl
(v.) ezorri
plane abai, hegoizkin
plant (n.) landare
(v.) landatu
plate ploter
play (v.) jolostu;
jokatu
plaza plaza
pleasant otsegín
please (int.) mose-
dez, oto, arren
plenty aski, nahikoa,
teacher lakosle
telephone telefono
television telebista
tell esan, erron;
tontato
ten haman
terrible ikaragarri,
tzugarri
test (n.) froga,
aatarketa
than balno
thank eskertu
& goodness eskerrok
on (to) esker
& you, thanks es-
kerlk asko, esker
amitz, milo esker
that (dem.) hori,
horo
(cj.) -la
&'s why horregatik
like & holo(ko)
theater teatro
movie & zine, zine-
tok
then orduan; gero;
bado
there hor, hon
right & bertan
therefore beroz, ho-
rregatik
thick look
thief lapur
thin mehe
thing gauza
think pentsatu; uste
ukan, bruditu
of gagaratu, gaga-
an ukan
third hruagarren
thirsty:
be garrat lzan, e-
garrrak egon
this hau
like & henela(ko)
thirty hogeltahomar

thousand mlo
by the & mllako
three hru
through zebar, borna
throughout zebar
throw bota
Thursday ostegun
ticket txortel, sar-
errera
zidy txukan
tie (v.) lotu
time denboroa; ordu,
tenore, garat; oldi
for the second &
bigarren aldiz
three & hru aldiz,
hru bider
some & ago ospaldi
tired neskotu(-rik/-
ta)
today gaur
together elkorrer-
kin, batera
toilet kowun
tomato tomat
yesterday bhar
the day after & etzi
tongue minib, mingin
tonight gaur gauza
too ere, ere bai;
&-egli, sobera, lar
& many/much gehiagi,
sobera, larregi
and X & bai eta X
ere
tool trezna
rooth hogin, hortz
top (adj.) golko
on & of gainean
totally goztiz
ouch (v.) ukiltu
Tourism turismo
tourist txurista
wards -rantz, alde-
ra, buruz
town herri, hiri

'hall udoletxe
in & kotean, herran
trace arrasto
traffic light sema-
foro
train tren
tranquility lasai-
tasun
translate ltzull
true arbola, zuhaltz
tremendous ikaragarri
trousers frakak, gol-
tzak
true egiazko
true salatu, ahalegin-
du
Tuesday ostegune
turn:
off ltzull
on pliztu
twenty begel
bider ever aldiz, bl
bider
two bi
hundred berrehun
ugly itsus
umbrella euritako,
aterki
unable azin
uncle osoba
under azpian, pean
understand bera, o-
ditu, konprentu,
tententu
unfortunately zort-
gaitzez, zortxarraz
unite bateu, bateratu
of States Ezeta But-
tan
unity batasun
university unbertsl-
tate
unless ezik
until atea
up gora; gotan
upstairs gora; gotan
us gu, gu
usc (v.) erabil, baliatu
useless alfer
uselessly alferrik
usual ohizko
usually gehlenetan; oh
valley horan
value balto
verb aditz
verse bertso
*—singer bertsoart
very oso, bizkia
village herri, herri-
tso, herrika
visit (n.) bisita
(v.) bisita egia
Vizcaya Bizkai
voice shots
wait itxaron, egia
wing zain
wake up esnato
walk (n.) buelta
go for a buelta
(bat) eman
(v.) lolli, Olmez
joan/etorri/lolli
wall horma, pareta
want naholukan, guro
ukan
war gorrak
warm opal, bero
watch (n.) erloju
(v.) begirotu; ikust
wing, begiro
* out! kontuz!
water ur
way bidia; era, modu
a long urrun, ur-
ruutu
in any * inola
in no * inola ez
that * horrela, hola
this * honela, hola
we gu, gu
whel ofuh
weapon arma
wear jantzi, eroman
weather egoralditi
wedding ezkondo, ez-
tel
Wednesday astoazken
week asto
a * astebete
every * astro
weekend ostebukoora
welcome ongi etorri
you're * ez horre-
gotik
well ongi, ondo, on-
tso; bada, bera
as * gainera
well-known azogun
west mendebalde
west bustr(-rtk/-to)
gat * bustr
wharf kol
what zer
where nor
non
which zein
while (cj.) bitartean
(n.) aldit
white zuri
who nor
whole oso, guzti
whose noren
why zergotik, zendo
that's * horregotik
wide zabal
wife erazte
win irubazi
wind halze
window lehqo
wine ordo
winter negu
wire hart
witch sorgin
without gabe, bork
wolf etc.
women enakume, emazte
wonderful mirogarri,
likusgarri
wood (substance) egur
(forest) baza
word hiltz, berba
work (n.) lan
(v.) lan egiaz, lanalon
notu
be wing lanalon art
Luzak
worker Langile
workshop bientgi,
tolter
world mundi
worth:
be * balto ukan,
merezi ukan
worthwhile:
be * merezi ukan
write lodatzi
writer lauzt
wrong galzki; oler
year urte
a * urtebete
every * uteo
this * aurren
todar
young haral
yes bat, bat eta
yesterday oto;
the day before *
horenegun
yet orinduka
you zu; zeuz
zeuck; hi, heu
yourself zerolat,
zuaur, zu zeu
young gazte
youngster gazte
your(s) zure; zuen;
hire; zeure; zeuen;
hure
Zuberoa Zuberoa | native of ~ zuberoar
References not found in this index may be given in the Basque-English vocabulary.

The same conventions are followed as in the body of the text: for example 5:3 means Unit 5, Grammar Paragraph 3; and 5:c means Unit 5, Language Note c. Furthermore, 35:n3 means Unit 35, note 3; 5't refers to Unit 5, Lesson 3; G33 to Grammar Summary 3.

On the whole, when there is more than one reference they are listed in the order of appearance in the text. But when the references are interrupted by the symbol +, this indicates that the references preceding the symbol are the principal ones.

ablative case 6:5 + 6:b, 19:1
absolutive case 4:1 + 19:1
activity (cases expressing) 4:1
adjectival 3:b, 7:c, 8:c, 14:1
adjunctive 3:1 + 2:a, 3:a, 3:2
adverb 4:e, 7:a, 11:a, 14:a, 14:1
affective palatalization 36:n6
affirmative sentences 5:2 + 1:d
agent 8:2, 11:1
agreement in the verb 8:c, 8:2, 10:4, 15:a, 16:1, 17:1, 18:1
ahal (con) 15:2 + 14:1, 28:1
ahal (modal particle) 34:n5
ahalik eta...en 37:n19
allative case 6:4 + 6:a
animate noun phrases 31:n3
aorist aspect 28:1, G36 + 14:2
aorist conditional 29:1
aorist potential 28:1
apposition 3:1, 28:a, 37:n1
-ar, -tar 35:n3
ari 15:1, 10:2
-arron 14:1, 36:n9
articles 11:1, 3:2
G31 + 2:a, 2:a-b, 3:1, 3:a-c, see also
Partitive Article, Proximate Article
as...as 22:2
askoz 28:a
aspects of the verb G36
ba-(conditional) see
Conditional Mode
ba-(focus) 5:2
bay 23:c
-bay (zertait etc.)
15:b
baita-(baitan etc.) 31:n3
baizik 25:b
baldin 34:n12
bat G31 + 2:b, 3:c, 3:2, 32:n2
batzuek G31 + 2:b, 3:2
behar 10:2, 14:1, 32:n8
benefactive case (-entzat) 10:a
bere 31:n6, 32:n3
berri (just) 14:1
-bete 26:a
bide (modal particle) 34:n5
bizi 15:1, 10:2
burua (reflexive) 31:n6
cases 4:1, G31
comitative case 9:3 + 9:b, 19:1
comparative 22:2 + 37:n2, 37:n10
cmparison 22:2
compound tenses 11:1, G36
compound verbs 10:2, 11:1
compounding forms 36:n15
conditional mode G37 + 19:b, 20:1
conjunctive mode G37 + 18:a, 19:a,
-ko 33:n13
-la 16:a
-lako 17:a
-la(rík) 25:a
-le 31:n17
local cases 6:5, 31:n3
clocal-genitive case 8:4, 31:n3

manner (cases expressing) 4:1, 6:4
manner adverbs 7:b
measures 7:e
modal particles 34:n5
modes of subordination G37
money 7:d

nahiukan 3:d, 10:2, 14:1
nabiz (eta) 14:1, 33:n10
-nean 19:a
negation 5:2, 7:e, 11:2
-netik 37:n4
-noz 24:a
-ník 32:n5
nominalization of adjectives 31:n20
noun-noun compounds 8:a, 36:n15
nor G31
-ntz (-rantz) 20:a
number (grammatical) 1:1
numbers (cardinal) 1¹, 2², 3³, 4⁴, 5⁵ + 31:c, 31:d

obi 14:1, 37:n18
-ok G31 + 24:b, 35:n7
omen 34:n5
omission of pronouns 1:b, 7:d-g, 1:2, 2:a, 2:1
optative 29:1
original dela 35:n1
ordinary numbers 20:c
ordinary article see
Articles
oso 28:a
ote 34:n5

palatalization 36:n6
participle 14:1
partitive article 5:b
partitive sense (cases expressing) 6:5
passive 31:n7
past habitual 22:1, 23:a, 25:d
past perfect 21:1, 23:a
periphrastic perfect 14:1
periphrastic tenses 11:1
person 1:2
personal pronouns 2:1, G31
place adverbs 1:a, 6:4-5
placenames 6¹, 31:n16
possessive adjectives 3:b, 31:n6
possessive-genitive case 8:3 + 8:b, 19:1
postpositions 19:1, 14:a, 32:n26
potential 24:1, 23:b, 25:d, see also
Aorist Potential
prepositional adjectives 3:1
present continuos 7:1 + 11:1
present habitual 11:1
present perfect 13:1
present simple 11:a, 11:1
principal parts 11:a
pronouns 2:2
proper names 1:1
proximate article G31 + 24:b, 35:n7
quantifiers 3:2
questions 5:2, 7:a-g, 1:2
question words 3:2, 3:4, 6:a-b, 7:b
-rain, -rantz see
-ini, -ntz
-rako 33:n13, see also Dative
reflexive pronouns
relative clauses 26:1 + 31:n2
repetition of words 37:n17, 37:n20
reported speech 23:a, see also Indirect
Statements, Indirect
Questions, Indirect
Commands
samur 32:n20
simple past 21:a
simple tenses 11:1, G36
state (cases expressing) 4:1
subject 8:2
subjunctive 29:1
superlative 22:2, 37:n19
supine 14:1 + 11:a, 14:2, 33:n12
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Syntax 5:2</th>
<th>Supine, Participle</th>
<th>Verbal Noun 11:2, 34:n18</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>-tar 35:n3</td>
<td>-tzaile 31:n17</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-tasun 32:n24</td>
<td>-tzako 33:n13</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-ti(ka)ko 33:n13</td>
<td>-tzat 34:n15, see so Benefactive Case</td>
<td>weather 10:e, 32:n19</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>time cases expressing 4:1, 6:4-5</td>
<td>-tzea see Verbal Noun</td>
<td>weights 7:d-e</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>time of day 1&quot;, 2&quot;, 3&quot;</td>
<td>-tzekotan 32:n7</td>
<td>wine 2:e</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>transitive-dative conjugation 18:1, 15:a</td>
<td>-tzen, -tzera, -tzeko, -tzean see Gerunds</td>
<td>word order 5:2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>transitivity 11:1</td>
<td>-tzerakoan 32:n6</td>
<td>-xe 9:d</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-tsu 35:n11</td>
<td>ukan 8:1, 16:1, 18:1, 20:1, GS2-4 + GS6, 4:g, 8:c, 10:2, 27:a</td>
<td>-z gero 9:d</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-tu 32:n23, see also</td>
<td>zer GS1 + 1:g, 3:2</td>
<td>zein 3:2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>-zko 33:n13, 34:n11</td>
<td>zebat 3:2</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
End of the second draft of
"A Basque Course"